This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

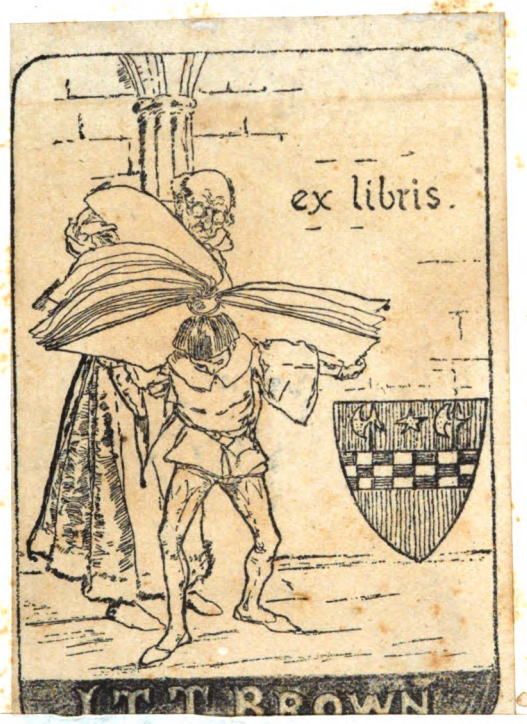
Google™ books

https://books.google.com

This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

https://books.google.com



LIBRARY OF

THE PENNSYLVANIA STATE COLLEGE

Class No. 8208

Book No. E276

NO. 8

Digitized by Google

THE PENNSYLVANIA
STATE UNIVERSITY
LIBRARIES

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Morte Arthure.

Digitized by Google

DUBLIN: WILLIAM McGEE, 18, NASSAU STREET.
EDINBURGH: T. G. STEVENSON, 22, SOUTH FREDERICK STREET.
GLASGOW: HUGH HOPKINS, ROYAL BANK PLACE.
BERLIN: ASHER & CO., UNTER DEN LINDEN, 11.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

Digitized by Google

Morte Arthure,

OR

The Death of Arthur.

EDITED FROM

ROBERT THORNTON'S MS.

IN THE LIBRARY OF LINCOLN CATHEDRAL,

BY

EDMUND BROCK.

[A New Edition, 1871.]

LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 60, PATERNOSTER ROW.

MDCCCLXV.

Digitized by Google

JOHN CHILDS AND SON, PRINTERS.

Digitized by Google

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
PREFACE	vii
ON THE METRE OF THE POEM	ix
NOTES	xiv
MORTE ARTHURE	1
INDEX OF NAMES	129
GLOSSARIAL INDEX	136

180804

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

PREFACE.

[THE present version of the *Morte Arthure* or *Death of Arthur* is mainly an account of the great war with Lucius Iberius, Emperor of Rome, and its sequel, the war with the traitor Modred, who, being left in charge of the kingdom, during Arthur's absence usurped the throne and married Queen Guinevere. In his combat with Modred, whom he slays, Arthur receives his death-wound, and shortly after dies. Among the incidents in the story not forming part of the wars, we may note the great feast at Carlisle, the king's dream of the dragon and bear, the slaughter of the great giant on Michael's Mount, and Arthur's dream of Fortune's wheel and the Nine Worthies. The love of Lancelot for the queen finds no place in this work.

Morte Arthure was probably written in the latter part of the fourteenth century, or early in the fifteenth. Of the author nothing whatever is known, not even his name. This is the more to be regretted as he must certainly be considered a poet of no mean order; the freshness of his descriptions of scenery[1], the touching pathos of some of his passages[2], and the rapid flow and thundering force of his diction in others[3], mark him out as one of the greatest writers of his time. What, beside him, are Occleve, Lydgate, Awdelay, Hylton, Hawes, Lonelich, and like poetasters? What even Chestre and Skelton?

[1] See ll. 920—932, 2506—2512.
[2] See ll. 3790—3808, 3874—3894, 3949—3971.
[3] See ll. 2204—2217, 2541—2573, 2989—3000.

Digitized by Google

The poem is printed from the Thornton MS., in the library of Lincoln Cathedral; no other copy is known. The MS. is a collection of poems and treatises on various subjects, some in English, some in Latin; a list of the contents may be found in Sir Frederic Madden's *Syr Gawayne* (Bannatyne Club, 1839), or in the *Thornton Romances*, ed. Halliwell (Camden Soc. 1844). The MS. is named after Robert Thornton, who penned a great part of it. At the end of Morte Arthure we find, "*R. Thornton dictus qui scripsit sit benedictus. Amen.*" Thornton was "a native of Oswaldkirk in Yorkshire, and Archdeacon of Bedford, in the Diocese of Lincoln, about the middle of the fifteenth century. The date of Archdeacon Thornton and his connection with Lincoln Cathedral can be ascertained pretty accurately, as among the archives of the Cathedral there is preserved an instrument or deed of considerable importance, attested by him as Archdeacon, which bears date 1439."[1]

Morte Arthure was first printed in 1847, by J. O. Halliwell, but can hardly be said to have been published, since the impression was limited to 75 copies. In 1865 it was edited by the Rev. George G. Perry, for the Early English Text Society. The present edition appears instead of a reprint of Mr Perry's, but differs from it in several respects; the text has been carefully read throughout with the MS. at Lincoln, and corrections made, where needful; the side-notes are greatly altered, often replaced with new; a new Glossary has been written, and an index of names and some notes added.

I am greatly indebted to the Rev. W. W. Skeat for much valuable help, especially with the Glossary, also for kindly revising his paper on the metre of the poem.

E. B.

[1] From Mr Perry's Preface, p. vii.

Digitized by Google

ON THE METRE OF THE POEM.

THE metre in which the "Morte Arthure" is written may best be understood by comparing it with "Piers Plowman," the accentuation and *swing* of the verse being much better marked in the last-mentioned poem. The principles which govern this peculiar metre may thus be more readily discerned, and, when once understood, may easily be applied to the present poem.

For a similar reason, it will be the simplest method to consider, first of all, a few lines (of "Piers Plowman") where the metre is most strongly marked, and, afterwards, some where it is, apparently, less regular.

It should first, however, be observed that each complete line in an alliterative poem consists generally of two *sections*, which were separated in old manuscripts by a dot, called the *metrical point* or *pause*, and which may conveniently be denoted by an inverted full stop, thus :—

"Schelde vs ffro schamesdede · and synfulle werkes;"

or else by printing the lines thus :—

"Schelde vs ffro schamesdede,
And synfulle werkes."

In reading aloud a pause may conveniently be made between the sections.

The two sections form, however, but one complete line; and, as the metrical point is more necessary when the poem is to be sung or recited than when it is merely to be read, it has not been thought necessary to insert it in this edition, since the reader, when he has

Digitized by Google

once caught the rhythm of the verse, may always be tolerably sure as to where it must occur.

To begin, then; consider the line—

"Ac Lucifer lowest · lith of hem allë."
Piers Plowman (ed Skeat), B. i. 124.

If we use an asterisk to denote a strongly-accented[1] (or *loud*) syllable, the figure 1 to denote a *single* unaccented syllable, the figure 2 to mean *two* unaccented syllables immediately succeeding each other, and so on; we may represent the above line by the scheme,

1 * 2 * 1 : * 2 * 1;

and this may be taken as a convenient type of alliterative lines, from which the scansion of very many others may be readily deduced. Some, however, as will be shewn presently, must be referred to a type somewhat different.

Now, we here observe (1) that each section contains two strong accents; (2) that, of the strongly-accented syllables, three begin with a common letter, which has been called the *rime-letter;* and (3) of these three, two occur in the first section, and one in the second. Such is the usual and normal arrangement. The *rime-letters* may be either consonants or vowels, and may consist of *single* letters, or of such combinations as *sc*, *bl*, *tr*, etc. If vowels, it is sufficient that they *are* so; they need not be the *same* vowels, and, in practice, are generally *different*.

Again, the last strongly-accented syllable in the line does *not* begin with the rime-letter. This also is the usual and more correct arrangement.

Having once this typical form to refer to, it is easy to enumerate most of the changes which may arise. Let us now take the line,

"Here[2] messe and here matynes · and many of here oures."
Piers Plowman, B. Prol. 97.

---

[1] I use the term *strongly*-accented advisedly, all accents not being equal. Thus, in the line—

"On the oát-grass and the swórd-grass, and the búlrush in the póol,"

the syllables marked are *strongly*-accented.

[2] "*Hire* [or *here* = their] is a monosyllable."—*Guest on English Rhythms;* ed. 1838, p. 34.

Digitized by Google

We have here the arrangement

1 * 2 * 1 : 1 * 3 * 1

which shews (1) that an unaccented syllable may be introduced at the beginning of the second section; and (2) that the number of intermediate unaccented syllables may be readily increased to *three*.

Now herein lies the peculiar freedom and elasticity of alliterative verse; we shall soon find by observation that, under certain circumstances, as many as *four* short unaccented syllables (even if they contain among them one that *is* accented *slightly*) may be inserted at pleasure between the emphatic syllables without destroying the rhythm; for it is one addressed to the *ear* only, and not to the *eye*. The chief point which the poet has to take care of is that when he introduces a larger number of unaccented syllables, they should be capable of rapid enunciation, lest the verse seem clogged and unmusical. An example may be seen in the lines,

"Fáyteden for here fóde · foúzten attë álë;"
Piers Plowman B. Prol. 42.

which may be denoted by

* 4 * 1 : * 3 * 1

It would take up too much space to explain here the true method of scanning the lines by division into feet; it may suffice to say that the *general effect* of the metre is *dactylic*, supposing the term *dactyl* to be capable of application to an *English* foot, which, to speak strictly, it is not. Indeed, the nomenclature of English prosody is in sore need of alteration. Neither is there space to explain, and to account for, the curious variations which may further be made in the alliterative metre. The view here given is only an approximate one, which will be found useful in practice. A longer passage may exemplify it better—

"I lóked on my léft half · as þe lády me taúghte,
And was wár of a wómman · wórtheli yclóthed,
Púrfiled with pélure · þe fínest vpon érthe,
Y-croúnede with a córone · þe kýng hath non bétter;
Fétislich hir fýngres · were frétted with gólde wyre."
Piers Plowman, B. ii. 7.

Digitized by Google

Analysis :

1	*	3	*	1	:	2	*	2	*	1
2	*	2	*	1	:		*	3	*	1
	*	3	*	1	:	1	*	3	*	1
1	*	3	*	1	:	1	*	2	*	1
	*	3	*	1	:	1	*	2	*	1

One variation, however, found oftenest in the first section, is too important to be passed over. It is that we sometimes find in a section a *third* strongly-accented syllable, thus giving to the line a rather unwieldy length; as in,

"The móste mýschief on mólde · is moúntyng wel fáste."
Piers Plowman, B. Prol. 67.

This third accent is often very awkwardly placed, as in the first line of "Morte Arthure,"

"Now grétt glórious Gódde · thurgh gráce of hym seluene."

Other noticeable deviations from the strict type may be briefly indicated.

(1) The syllable beginning with the rime-letter is sometimes unemphatic; as in "Morte Arthure," l. 59,

"In Glamórgane with glée · thare gládchipe was éuere."

(2) Sometimes there are but *two* rime-letters, as in l. 95,

"At prýme of the dáye · in páyne of ȝour lývys."

(3) Sometimes there is *no* alliteration, as in l. 70. (4) Sometimes there are *four* rime-letters, as l. 32, where all belong to accented syllables,

"Scáthylle Scóttlande by skýlle · he skýftys as hym lýkys;"

or as in l. 35, where one belongs to an unaccented syllable,

"Hólaund and Hénawde · they hélde of hyme bóthen."

It will now be sufficient, perhaps, to indicate what is probably the correct accentuation of the first fourteen lines, as this will enable the reader to perceive in them a certain vigorous *swing* (well suited for the ballad-reciter), which will suggest the scansion of most other lines, though there is always somewhat of difficulty in it, from the fact that we have now-a-days changed the accentuation of many words, and cannot be quite certain about the final *e*'s.

Digitized by Google

"Now grétt glórious Gódde · thurgh gráce of hym séluene,
And the précyous práyere · of hys prýs módyr
Schélde vs ffro schámesdede · and sýnfulle wérkes,
And gýffe vs gráce to gýe · and góuerne vs hére
In this wréchyde wérlde · thorowe vért[u]ous lýwynge
That we may káyre til hys coúrte · the kýngdome of hévyne,
Whene oure sáules schalle párte · and súndyre ffra the bódy
Ewyre to bélde and to býde · in blýsse wyth hyme séluene;
And wýsse me to wérpe owte · some wórde at this týme,
That nothyre vóyde be ne váyne · bot wýrchip tille hyme sélvyne;
Plésande and prófitabille · to the pópule that theme héres.
Ȝe that líste has to lýth · or lúffes for to héré
Off élders of álde tyme · and of theire áwke dédys,
Hów they were léle in theire láwe · and lóuede Gód Almýghty," etc.

The accentuation of the last two lines is a little doubtful. There may have been an accent on the second *of* in l. 13, owing to its position and the fact of its beginning with a rime-letter; while in l. 14 we have the rather unusual number of six accents, unless *how* was slurred over.

After all, the best way of perceiving the rhythm is to read over some fifty lines several times till they seem quite familiar, and then to read them over once more *out loud*, with strong emphasis on the verbs, substantives, and adjectives, and with a natural and free pronunciation.

One peculiarity in this poem should be particularly noticed, viz. that the same rime-letter is often continued throughout several successive lines. There is a remarkable instance of this in the passage beginning with l. 1844, where we have in succession 4 lines founded on *s*, 2 on hard *c*, 2 on *f*, 6 on *s*, 6 on *b*, 4 on hard *c*, 2 on vowels, 2 on *s*, 2 on *ch*, 2 on *f*, and 2 on *r*. Other striking examples are 7 lines on vowels, 571—577, 8 on *s*, 3310—3317, 9 on *j* or soft *g*, 2889—2897, 10 on *f*, 3300—3309, and 11 on *f*, 2755—2765. Similar instances are rare in Piers the Plowman, though we find 5 successive lines founded upon *p* in the B-text, Pass. xiv. 190—194.

For further remarks, see the Essay on Alliterative Verse in the third volume of the Percy Folio MS., ed. Hales and Furnivall, and the introduction to Piers the Plowman, Text A. pp. xxii and xxx.

Digitized by Google

NOTES.

Lines 212—215. Precious stones were supposed to keep off poison. Compare the following:—"Þe earn deð in his neste enne deorewurðe ȝimston þet hette achate. Vor non attri þinc ne mei þene ston neihen, ne þeo hwule þet he is in his neste hermen his briddes. Þes deorewurðe ston, þet is Iesu Crist, ase ston treowe *and* ful of alle mihten, ouer alle ȝimstones. He is þe achate þet atter of sunne ne neihede neuere. Do hine iðine neste, þet is, iðine heorte. Þenc hwuch pinen he þolede on his flesche wiðuten, *and* hu swete he was iheorted, *and* hu softe wiðinnen; *and* so þu schalt driue ut euerich atter of þine heorte, *and* bitternesse of þine bodie. . . . . Þes ston, ase ich er seide, avleieð attri þinges. Habbe þu þesne ston wiðine þine heorte, þet is Godes nest, ne þer-tu nout dreden þe attrie neddre of helle. Þine briddes, þet beoð þine gode werkes, beoð al sker of his atter."—*The Ancren Riwle*, ed. Morton, p. 134—136. Compare also Piers the Plowman (ed. Skeat, Clarendon Press Series), note to Pass. ii. l. 14.

450. *Watlyng-strette*, "the Roman road leading from Dover to Cardigan. Leland describes it thus: Secunda via principalis dicitur *Watelingstreate*, tendens ab euro-austro in Zephyrum Septentrionalem. Incipit enim a Dovaria, tendens per medium Cantiæ, juxta London, per S. Albanum, Dunstaplum, Stratfordiam, Towcestriam, Litleburne, per montem Gilberti juxta Salopiam, deinde per Stratton, et per medium Walliæ, usque Cardigan. Itin. vol. vi. p. 120, *edit. Oxon.* 1744."—Bosworth's Anglo-Saxon Dictionary, under Wǽtlinga stræt.

793. *Brathelle* is purposely omitted from the Glossary, because it ought to have been printed *brayelle*, as it stands in the MS. It seems to mean the fur of the bear's belly. Compare the following:—

"Brayeul: m. The parts, or feathers, about the Haukes fundament, called by our Faulconers the brayle in a short-wingd, and, the pannell in a long-wingd, Hauke."—*Cotgrave.*

"The *brayle*, or pannell of a Hawke. *Le brayer d'un oiseau, le brayeul.*"—*Sherwood.*

"Braiel, *brayette:* Partie de la culotte qui tenoit lieu de celle qu'on appelle à présent le pont."—*Roquefort.*

Digitized by Google

"Braioel, *braoel:* Le haut de la culotte."—*Roquefort.*

966. *Thow saynned the vnsekyrly.* Thou blessedst thyself vnsafely, i. e. you did not cross yourself in a proper manner, so as to ensure your safety; otherwise you would not be here, in this perilous place. If the sign of the cross was not made in the right way, it was considered of no avail.

1195. Read *with* [*the*] *conquerour.*

1270. *Or many lyghte salle lawe.* Or many shall light low, i. e. fall.

1286. "Horns of elephants full loudly blown." Our fathers were remarkably ignorant of the nature and habits of foreign animals.

1293. *Ewyne in the myddes.* Right in the middle.

1315. *That no mysse serues.* Who deserve no ill.

1364. Fretted in *salle.* Read *sable.*

1414. *Bretons.* This is probably the verb, *brittenes,* not the substantive, *Britons.*

1425. *Battailles.* Restore the reading of the MS.; it is right.

1474. *He ryghttez theire brenez.* More likely *he rittez.*

1485. The relative pronoun is omitted after *Boyce.* This is a frequent ellipsis. See line 1558, where *that* is omitted after *Henry.*

1548. *Or sone delyuerde,* i. e. soon to be delivered.

1572. The alliteration would be improved by reading *bot* [*sir*] *Ewayne.*

1588. *With mangere to lengene.* Qu. with *maugree,* ill-will.

1653. *Lythe.* The alliteration and sense require *kythe.*

1698. *Borghte.* A strange mistake for *Brute,* i. e. Brutus, the supposed founder of Britain.

1717. "Whether we retire or appear (show ourselves), arrange as you please."

1736. *Wellyde alle qwyke.* Boiled alive.

1797. *Wyrkez his ine wayfare.* Qu. ine his wayfare.

1840. *Lang ere.* The MS. reads *langere,* which may be right.

1842. *At* = that = what.

1899. *On lyfe* should be *of lyfe.*

1911. The line is incomplete; add [many].

2070. *Reuerssede it redelye.* Turned it, the eagle, over quickly.

2108. Heyghe = heythe, heath. Compare *trewghe* for *trewthe.*

2128. *Handsomere,* not more handsome, but more handy or convenient.

2189. ȝife the *werlde* happyne. Qu. welthe.

2197. This line recurs at 4155.

2245. "*Arthure!*" *askryes.* Shouts "Arthur;" but perhaps it should be simply *Arthure askryes,* Arthur shouts. Compare l. 1412.

2250. *Beblede at* should certainly be *Beblede al.*

2280. *Lyghte* strandez. This should perhaps be *lythe strandez,* as at 1517.

2295. *Heghe* = heath. See note on 2108.

Digitized by Google

2398. *I kepe noghte to layne.* I care not to concea..

2408. Turkayne (so in MS.) is certainly a mistake for *Tuskayne*, Tuscany. Correct the sidenote accordingly.

2506. Insert [*of*] after *myste*, or else read *mysty*.

2519. *With birenne ony borne.* This is corrupt; no doubt the right reading is, *With-outene eny berne.*

2565. *A let.* "Towards the close of the thirteenth century and not long after the commencement of the reign of Edward I., a new mode of protecting the neck was invented, which consisted of small plates of steel placed on the shoulders, sometimes called, from their resemblance to little standards, *Gonfanons*. They are likewise mentioned by the name of *ailettes*, or little wings, in that curious document of the sixth year of this monarch, relative to a tournament in Windsor Park, given in the XVIIIth volume of the *Archaeologia;* and in the *Statuta armorum in Torniamentis*, a few years after, by that of shoulder plates. . . . . They continued in fashion till the middle of the reign of Edward III. . . . . Their shape was . . . varied; they were square, round, pentagonal, and shieldlike; sometimes plain, but generally ornamented with the family arms, or the cross of St. George."—Meyrick, in the *Archaeologia*, vol. xix, pp. 137, 138.

2577. It is well known that in early times barbers practised bloodletting; they would therefore, of course, know how to stanch blood.

2578. *Blyne schalle he neuer.* He shall never cease [to bleed].

2586. *Surgyone in Salarne.* Compare l. 4311 and *William of Palerne*, ed. Skeat, ll. 964 and 1033.

2616. *Cyrus witrye* should be *cyrqwitrye*. The letter *q* is raised a little and looks very much like the usual contraction for *us*. Cyrqwitrye = surquidry, arrogance, pride.

2675. This line is misplaced; it ought to follow line 2677.

2771. *Breste* seems to be a mistake for *brethe*, breath.

2934. *ffy a debles* seems to be meant for French. Fie, (go) to the devil.

3061. *Idene the.* The alliteration, at first sight, would seem to be on the *d* of this *idene* and of *dout;* but there is no reason why it may not be on the *i* of *idene* and the *e* of *elles*. *Idene*, if not a miswriting, may be the same as *ipenli*, frequently, in the following lines:—

"Þai þat war fild wit enst and hete
Þat *ipenli* þair hertes ete,
Þar wormes sal þam underwrote
In bale wituten hope and bote,
And for-þi þai her war wont to li
In þair stincand licheri,
Ne wald noght here bot þair delices
Þat drogh þam until oþer vices
Þai sal haf *ipen* stinc iwiss
Þat þai sal never mar mis."—*Cursor Mundi*, as quoted by Dr Morris in the preface to *Hampole's Pricke of Conscience*, pp. x, xi.

Digitized by Google

The may be the verb *thee*, to thrive; it was most likely mistaken for the article by the scribe, who wrote it with *y*. The meaning of the line would be, "He shall frequently thrive full well, fear nought else." This accords with the statement, l. 3056, that the king spoke to the duchess "myldly with fulle meke wordes."

3257. The word *With* clearly belongs to the line before. *With bruchez*, &c.

3282. *The two eyne.* This is clearly an error for "the tone eye" = (the) one eye. "One eye of the man was brighter than silver, the other was yellower than the yolk of an egg."

3439. *Nynne of the nobileste namede in erthe.* These were the Nine Worthies. The list agrees with that given in *Reliquiæ Antiquæ*, vol. i. p. 287.

Saraceni. Judæi.
Ector, Alex., Julius; David, Josue, Machabæus;
Cristiani.
Artur cum Carolo, Galfridum linquere nolo:
Isti sunt ter tres trini fidei meliores.

See Shakespere, *Love's Labour Lost*, Act 5, sc. 2.

3937. *Guchede.* I can make nothing of this word, the plain reading of the MS., unless it = gutted = *goutté*, dropped or spotted. At line 3759, we read that this king of Gothland "bare of gowles fulle gaye with gowces of syluere." *Gowces* I suppose to be miswritten for *gowtes*, drops, spots.

Digitized by Google

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

adj. = adjective.
adv. = adverb.
A.S. = Anglo-Saxon.
b. = back.
col. = column.
comp. = comparative form.
Comp. = compare.
conj. = conjunction.
ed. = edited by.
E. E. T. S. = Early English Text Society.
Fr. = French.
fut. = future.
gen. = genitive case.
Germ. = German.
Her. = Heraldry.
imp. = imperative.
impers. v. = impersonal verb.
ind. = indicative.
inf. = infinitive.
int. = interjection.
i. p. = imperfect participle.
l. = line.
Lat. = Latin.
ll. = lines.
M.Goth. = Mœso-Gothic.
O.E. = Old English.
O.Fr. = Old French.
O.N. = Old Norse.
p. = page.
pl. = plural.
2 *pl.* = second person plural.
pp. = pages.
p.p. = past or passive participle.
prep. = preposition.
pres. = present.
pret. = preterite.
Prompt. Parv. = Promptorium Parvulorum.
pron. = pronoun.
Qu. = Query.
ref. = reflexive.
s. = substantive.
1 *s.* = first person singular.
2 *s.* = second person singular.
3 *s.* = third person singular
Sc. = Scotch.
sg. = singular.
Span. = Spanish.
subj. = subjunctive.
superl. = superlative form.
tom. = tomo.
v. = verb.
vol. = volume.

The following works are indicated in the Index by their authors' names :—

Bosworth's Anglo-Saxon and English Dictionary.
Brockett's Glossary of North Country Words.
Burguy's Glossary to his *Grammaire de la Langue d'Oïl.*
Ducange's Glossarium Mediæ et Infimæ Latinitatis, ed. 1840.
Halliwell's Dictionary of Archaic and Provincial Words.
Jamieson's Etymological Dictionary of the Scottish Language.
Roquefort's Glossaire de la Langue Romane.
Stratmann's Dictionary of the Old English Language.
Verelius's Index linguæ veteris Scytho-Scandicæ sive Gothicæ, 1691.

Digitized by Google

CORRECTIONS.

Page 2, sidenotes, for *Tours* read *Touraine.*

„ 2 „ „ *Aniana* read *Aniane.*

„ 2 „ „ *Naverne* read *Navarre.*

„ 3 „ for the 2nd *Caerleon* read *Carlisle.*

„ 7 „ „ *hams* read *shoulders.*

„ 7 „ „ *bustards* read *bitterns.*

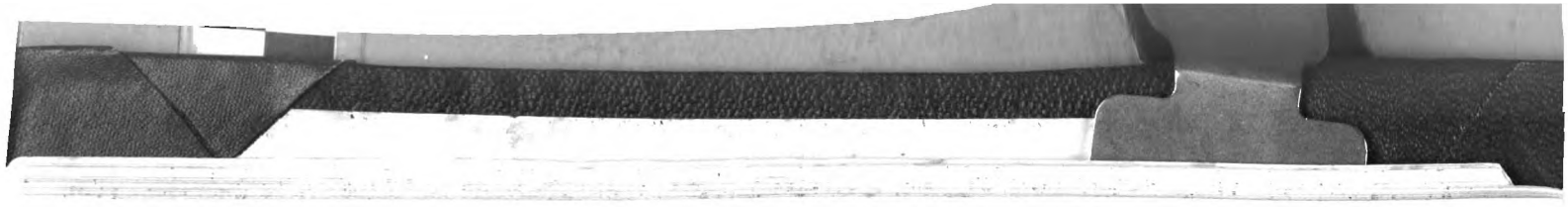
„ 28, line 913, *for* grayuez *read* graynez.

„ 33, sidenotes, for *smoke* read *foam.*

„ 78, strike out the footnote.

„ 134, col. 1, line 23, for *Apulia* read *Poland.*

Digitized by Google



Digitized by Google

Morte Arthure.

Here begynnes **Morte Arthure. In nomine Patris** *et* **Filij** *et* **Spirituc Sancti. Amen pur charite. Amen.** [leaf 53]

Now grett glorious Godde, thurgh grace of hym seluene,
And the precyous prayere of hys prys modyr,
Schelde vs ffro schamesdede and synfulle werkes,
And gyffe vs grace to gye, and gouerne vs here,
In this wrechyde werlde thorowe vertous lywynge,
That we may kayre til hys courte, the kyngdome of hevyne,
Whene oure saules schalle parte and sundyre ffra the body,
Ewyre to belde and to byde in blysse wyth hyme seluene; 8
And wysse me to werpe owte some worde at this tyme,
That nothyre voyde be ne vayne, bot wyrchip tille hyme selvyne,
Plesande *and* profitabille to the popule *that* theme heres.
3e that liste has to lyth, or luffes for to here, 12
Off elders of alde tyme and of theire awke dedys,
How they were lele in theire lawe, and louede God Almyghty,
Herkynes me heyndly and holdys 3ow stylle,
And I salle telle 3ow a tale, *that* trewe es and nobylle, 16
Off the ryealle renkys of the Rownnde Table,
That chefe ware of cheualrye and cheftans nobylle,
Bathe ware in thire werkes and wyse mene of armes,
Doughty in theire doyngs, and dredde ay schame, 20

The poet prays for grace,

and for power to write something profitable.

Ye that list to hear of elders of old time,

hearken to a tale of the Round Table.

These knights were noble, wise, and brave,

Digitized by Google

kind, and courteous, and worshipful.

Kynde mene and courtays, and couthe of courte thewes;
How they whanne wyth were wyrchippis many,

They slew Lucius, lord of Rome, and won his kingdom.

Sloughe Lucyus *the* lythyre, that lorde was of Rome,
And conqueryd that kyngryke thorowe craftys of armes;

Hear now the story.

Herkenes now hedyrwarde, and herys this storye.

When King Arthur had won many kingdoms and countries,

Qwene that the kynge Arthur by conqueste hade wonnyne
Castelles and kyngdoms, and contreez many,
And he had couerede the coroune of the kyth ryche,
Of alle that Vter in erthe aughte in his tyme,

Argyle, Orkney, and the isles,

Orgayle and Orkenay, and alle this owte-iles,
Irelande vttirly, as Occyane rynnys;

Ireland and Scotland, Wales, Flanders, and France,

Scathylle Scottlande by skylle he skyftys as hym lykys,
And Wales of were he wane at hys wille,
Bathe fflaundrez and ffraunce fre til hym seluyne;

had made tributary Holland and Hainault, Burgundy and Brabant, Brittany, Guienne, Gothland and Greece, he occupied Bayonne and Bordeaux, Tours and Toulouse.

Holaund and Henawde they helde of hyme bothen,
Burgoyne and Brabane, and Bretayne the lesse,
Gyane and Gothelande, *and* Grece the ryche;
Bayone and Burdeux he beldytt fulle faire,
Turoyne and Tholus *with* toures fulle hye;

He was prince of Poictiers and Provence, of Valence and Vienne, of Erugia and Aniana, of Naverne and Norway and Normandy.

[leaf 53, back]
Off Peyters and of Prouynce he was prynce holdyne,
Of Valence *and* Vyenne, off value so noble,
Of Eruge *and* Anyone, thos erledoms ryche;
By conqueste fulle cruelle *the*y knewe hym fore lorde,
Of Nauerne and Norwaye, *and* Normaundye eke,

Of Germany, of Austria, and many other lands.

Of Almayne, of Estriche, and *other* ynowe;

He conquered all Denmark with his sword.

Danmarke he dryssede alle by drede of hym seluyne,
ffra Swynne vnto Swetherwyke, *with* his swerde[1] kene!

Then he dubbed his knights and gave them lands.

Qwenne he thes dedes had done, he doubbyd hys knyghtez,
Dyuysyde dowcherys and delte in dyuerse remmes;
Mad of his cosyns kyngys ennoyntede,

Created kings anointed.

In kyth there they couaitte crounes to bere.
Whene he thys[2] rewmes hade redyne *and* rewlyde the popule,

Then rested the hero, and held the Round Table.

Then rystede that ryalle and helde *the* Rounde Tabylle;
Suggeourns *that* sesone to solace hyme seluene,

After solacing himself in Bri-

In Bretayne *the* braddere, as hym beste lykes;

[1] MS. swrede. [2] *Or* thes.

Sythyne wente in-to Wales *with* his wyes alle, — tain, he goes into Wales,
Sweys in-to Swaldye *with* his snelle houndes, — to hunt the hart with his swift hounds,
For to hunt at *the* hartes in thas hye lanndes,
In Glamorgane *with* glee, thare gladchipe was eu*er*e. — and in Glamorgan founds Caerleon upon Usk.
And thare a citee he sette, be assentte of his lordys,
That Caerlyone was callid, *with* curius walles,
On the riche reuare *that* rynnys so faire,
There he myghte semble his sorte to see whenne hym lykyde;
Thane aftyre at Carlelele a Cristynmese he haldes, — At Caerleon he holds high festival at Christmastide with his lords and bishops,
This ilke kyde conquero*ur*, *and* helde hym for lorde,
Wyth dukez *and* dusperes of dyuers rewmes,
Erles *and* ercheuesqes, and o*ther* ynowe,
Byschopes *and* bachelers, *and* banerettes nobille,
That bowes to his banere, buske whene hym lykys:
Bot on the Cristynmesdaye, whene they were alle semblyde,
That comlyche *con*quero*ur* co*m*maundez hym seluyne
That ylke a lorde sulde lenge, and no lefe take, — and bids none depart from the feast till ten days are expired.
To the tende day fully ware takyne to *the* ende.
Thus one ryalle araye he helde his Rounde Table,
With semblant *and* solace *and* selcouthe metes;
Whas neuer sy*ch*e[1] noblay, in no manys tyme, — Never was so noble a feast known.
Mad in mydwynter *in tha* weste marchys!

Bot on the newȝere daye, at *the* none euyne, — But on New Year's day, as the knights were feasting,
As the bolde at the borde was of brede seruyde,
So come in sodanly a senato*ur* of Rome, — there came in suddenly a Senator of Rome, [leaf 54] attended by sixteen knights.
Wyth sextene knyghtes in a soyte, sewande hym one.
He saluȝed the souerayne *and* the sale aftyr, — He salutes King Arthur and his knights,
Ilke a kynge aftyre kynge, and mad his enclines;
Gaynour in hir degré he grette as hym lykyde, — and Guinevere the Queen.
And syne agayne to *the* gome he gaffe vp his nedys:
"Sir Lucius Iberius, the Emperour of Rome, — Then, in the name of Sir Lucius Iberius, the Emperor of Rome,
Saluz the as sugett, vndyre his sele ryche;
It es credens, *sir* kynge, *with* cruelle wordez,
Trow it for no trufles, his targe es to schewe!
Now in this newȝers daye *with* notaries sygne,

[1] *swyche* struck out, and *syche* written instead.

Digitized by Google

he summons Arthur to appear at Rome on Lammas day,

I make the somouns *in* sale to sue for *thi* landys,
That on Lam*m*esse daye thare be no lette ffoun*d*en*e*, 92
That thow bee redy at Rome w*ith* alle thi Rounde Table,
Appere *in* his p*re*sens w*ith* thy price knyghtez,
At pryme of the daye, in payne of ȝ*our* lyvys,
In *th*e kydde Capytoile before *th*e kyng selvyn*e*, 96
Whene he and his senato*urs* bez sette as them lykes,

to answer why he occupies his lands instead of paying homage to him,

To ansuere anely why thow ocupyes the lanndez,
That awe homage of alde till*e* hym *and* his eldyrs;
Why thow has redyn*e* and raymede, *and* raunsound *th*e pople, 100
And kyllyde doun*e* his cosyns, kyngys ennoynttyde;
Thare schall*e* thow gyffe rekkynynge for all*e* thy Round Table,

and how he dare rebel against him.

Why thow arte rebell*e* to Rome, and rentez them*e* wytholdez!
ȝiff thow theis somou*n*s wythsytte, he sendes thie thies wordes, 104

But if Arthur will not come, the Emperor will invade his land and take him captive,

He sall*e* the seke ou*er* *th*e see wyt̄ sextin*e* kynges,
Bryne Bretayn*e* *th*e brade, and bryttyne thy knyghtys,
And bryng*e* the bouxsomly as a beste w*ith* brethe whare hym lykes,
That thow ne schall*e* rowte ne ryste vndyr the heuene ryche, 108
*Th*ofe thow for reddo*ur* of Rome ryne to *th*e erthe!

and destroy him wherever he may fly.

ffor if thow flee in-to Fraunce or ffreselannd ow*ther*,
*Th*ou sall*e* be fechede w*ith* force, and ou*er*sette fore eu*er*!

The Register of Rome declares that Arthur's father paid tribute, which was won by Julius Cæsar and his gentle knights.

Thy fadyr mad fewtee, we fynde in oure rollez, 112
In the regestre of Rome, who so ryghte lukez:
W*ith*-owttyn*e* more trouflyng*e* the trebute we aske,
That Iuli*us* Cesar wan*e* wyt̄ his ientill*e* knyghttes!"

Then did King Arthur look with ferocious glance on the Senator.

THe kyng*e* blyschit on*e* the beryn*e* w*ith* his brode eg̃n*e*,
That fulle brymly for bret̄ brynte as the gledys;
Keste colo*urs* as kyng*e* w*ith* crouell*e* lates, 118

[leaf 54, back]

Luked as a lyon*e*, and on his lyppe bytes!

So terrible was his face that the Romans quailed before him.

The Romaynes for radnesse ruschte to *th*e erthe,
ffore ferdnesse of hys face, as they fey were;

Digitized by Google

Cowchide as kenetez be-fore *the* kynge seluyne,
Be-cause of his contenaunce confusede theme semede!
Thene couerd vp a knyghte, *and* criede ful lowde,[1]
"Kynge corounede of kynd, curtays and noble,
Misdoo no messangere for menske of *thi* seluyne,
Sen we are in thy mañrede, and mercy *the* besekes;
We lenge *with sir* Lucius, that lorde es of Rome,
That es *the* meruelyousteste mane *that* on molde lengez;
It es lefulle tille vs his likynge tille wyrche;[2]
We come at his commaundment; haue vs excusede."
Then carpys *the* conquerour crewelle wordez,—
"Haa! crauaunde knyghte! a cowarde *the* semez!
*Th*are [is] some segge in this sale, and he ware sare greuede,
Thow durste noghte for[3] alle Lumberdye luke one hym ones."
"Sir," sais *the* senatour, "so Crist mott me helpe,
The voute of thi vesage has woundyde vs alle!
Thow arte *the* lordlyeste lede *that* euer I one lukyde;
By lukynge, *with*-owttyne lesse, a lyone the semys!"
"Thow has me somonde," quod *the* kynge, "*and* said what *the* lykes;[4]
ffore sake of thy soueraynge I suffre the *the* more;
Sen I corouñde in kyth wyth crysume enoyntede,
Was neuer creature to me *that* carpede so large!
Bot I salle tak concelle at kynges enoyntede,
Off dukes *and* duspers and doctours noble,
Offe peres of *the* parlement, prelates *and* other,
Off *the* richeste renkys of *the* Rounde Table;
*Th*us schalle I take avisemente of valiant beryns,
Wyrke aftyre the wytte of my wyes knyghttes:
To warpe wordez in waste no wyrchipe it were,
Ne wilfully in *th*is wrethe to wrekene my seluene.
ffor-*thi* salle *th*ow lenge here, *and* lugge wyth *thise* lordes,

Then one of them humbly entreats mercy.

Upon which Arthur upbraids him as a coward.

But the Senator excuses him on the ground that Arthur's visage is very terrible.

The King tells him that he will take counsel of his dukes, doctors, peers, and knights,

while the Romans stay a week

[1] *hyghe* struck out, and *lowde* written instead.
[2] *schewe* struck out, and *wyrche* written instead.
[3] MS. fulle. [4] *Likyde* struck out, and *lykes* written instead.

Digitized by Google

to refresh themselves.

This seuenyghte in solace, to suggour*ne* 3our horses,
To see whatte lyfe *tha*t wee leede in thees lawe lannde
ffor by *the* realtee of Rome, *tha*t recheste was euere,

Sir Cayous is bid to entertain the lords,

He commande *sir* Cayous, "take kepe to thoos lordez,
To styghtylle *tha* steryne mene as theire statte askys
That they bee herberde in haste in thoos heghe chambr

[leaf 55]

Sythine sittandly in sale seruyde ther-aftyr;

and their horses.

That they fynd na fawte of fude to thiere horsez,
Nowthire weyne, ne waxe, ne welthe in *th*is erthe;

He was not to spare, but to feast them liberally.

Spare for no spycerye, bot spende what *the* lykys,
That there be largesce one lofte, and no lake founde
If *tho*u my wyrchipe wayte, wy, be my trouthe,
*Th*ou salle haue gersoms fulle grett, *tha*t gayne salle
euere!"

Then were they quickly harboured within the high walls.

Now er they herberde in hey, *and* in oste holdene,
Hastyly wyth hende mene *with*-in thees heghe wall

In chambyrs *with* chympnes *the*y chaungene *the*ire wed

In chambers with chimneys they changed their weeds.

And sythyne the chauncelere *the*me fecchede *with* c
ualrye[1] noble.

The Senator sat at the King's table, and was served like himself,

Sone *the* senato*ur* was sett, as hyme wele semyde,
At *the* kyngez ownne borde; twa knyghtes hym serue
Singulere sothely, as Arthure hym seluyne,
Richely on *the* ryghte hannde at the Rounde Table;

for the Romans are of the most royal blood on earth.

Be resoune *tha*t *the* Romaynes whare so ryche holde
As of *the* realeste blode *tha*t reynede in erthe.
There come in at *the* fyrste course, be-for *the* kynge selue

Boars'-heads there were served upon silver by numerous gaily-dressed attendants.

Bareheuedys *tha*t ware bryghte, burnyste *with* sylue
Alle *with* taghte mene and towne in togers fulle rych

Venison, fatted and wild, with choice birds,

Of saunke realle in suyte, sexty at ones;
ffleschꝫ fluriste of fermysone *with* frumentee noble,
Ther-to wylde to wale, and wynlyche bryddes,[2]

peacocks and plovers upon golden plates,

Pacokes and plouers in platers of golde,
Pygges of porke despyne, *tha*t pasturede neuer;

great swans in silver chargers,

Sythene herons in hedoyne, hyled fulle faire;
Grett swannes fulle swythe in silueryne chargeours,

[1] MS. *chelualrye*.
[2] *bredes* struck out, and *bryddes* written instead.

Digitized by Google

Tartes of Turky, taste whame *theme* lykys ; — tarts of turkey,
Gumbaldes graythely, fulle gracious to taste ;
Seyne bowes of wylde bores *with the* braune lechyde, — hams and brawn in slices,
Bernakes and bot*ures* in baterde dysches, 189 — geese and bustards.
*Th*areby braunchers in brede, bettyr was neu*er*,
W*ith* brestez of barowes, *that* bryghte ware to schewe ;
Seyne come *ther* sewes sere, w*ith* solace *ther*-after, 192 — Then came 'sewes sere,'
Ownde of azure alle ou*er and* ardant *th*em semyde,
Of ilke a leche *th*e lowe laun*s*chide fulle hye,
That alle ledes myghte lyke *that* lukyde *th*eme apone ;
*Th*ane cranes *and* curlues craftyly rosted, 196 — then cranes and curlews craftily roasted,
Connygez in cretoyne colourede fulle faire,
ffesauntez enflureschit in flammande silu*er*, — pheasants upon flashing silver,
W*ith* darielles endordide, and daynteez ynewe ; — 'dariels' and many other dainties.
*Th*ane clarett and Creette, clergyally rennene, 200 — Wine caused to [leaf 55, back] run skilfully in silver conduits.
With condethes fulle curio*us* alle of clene siluyre ;
Osay a[n]d algarde, and o*ther* ynewe,
Rynisch wyne and Rochelle, richere was neu*er* ;
Vernage of Venyce ver*t*uouse and Crete ; 204 — Rare sorts served in cups of fine gold.
In faucetez of fyne golde, fonode who so lykes ;
The kyngez cope-borde was closed in siluer, — The King's cupboard was glorious with plate.
In grete goblettez ouergylte glorious of hewe ;
There was a cheeffe buttlere, a cheualere noble, 208
Sir Cayo*us th*e curtaise, *that* of *th*e cowpe seruede ; — The chief butler was Sir Cayous,
Sexty cowpes of suyte fore *th*e kyng seluyne,
Crafty *and* curious, coruene fulle faire, — who served the wine in goblets decked with precious stones,
In eu*er*-ilk a p*ar*ty pyghte w*ith* p*re*cyous stones, 212
That nane enpoysone sulde goo p*re*uely *ther*-vndyre, — which hinder the deadly effects of poison.
Bot *th*e bryght golde for brethe sulde briste al to peces,
Or ells *th*e venyme sulde voyde thurghe vertue of *th*e stones ;
And the conquero*ur* hymseluene, so clenly arayede, 216
In colo*urs* of clene golde cleede, wyth his knyghttys, — Arthur was clad in cloth of gold with his crown on; the doughtiest knight that dwelt on earth.
Drissid w*ith* his dyademe one his deesse ryche,
ffore he was demyde *th*e doughtyeste *that* duellyde in erthe.
Thane *th*e conquero*ur* kyndly carpede to *th*ose lordes, — Then he spake courteous words to those lords.
Rehetede *th*e Romaynes w*ith* realle speche, 221

Digitized by Google

"Sirs, be of good cheer, we give you the best our barren country affords, which indeed is but poor."

"Sirs, bez knyghtly of contenaunce, *and* comfurthes
3*our* seluyne,
We knowe noghte in *th*is cou*n*tré of curious metez;
In thees barayne landez, bredes none o*ther*,
ffore-thy wythowttyne feynynge, enforce 3ow *the*[1] more
To feede 3ow *with* syche feble as 3e be-fore fynde."

"Sir," says the Senator, "Rome itself can show nothing equal to this luxurious feast."

"Sir," sais *the* senato*ur*, "so Criste motte me helpe!
There ry*n*gnede neue*r* syche realtee w*ith*-in Rome walles!
There ne es p*r*elatte, ne pape, ne prynce in *th*is erthe,
That he ne[2] myghte be wele payede of *th*ees pryce metes!"

Then they washed and withdrew to the chamber.

Aftyre theyre welthe *the*y wesche, *and* went vn-to chambyre,
*Th*is ilke kydde conquero*ur* w*ith* knyghtes ynewe;
Sir Gaywayne *the* worthye Dame Wayno*ur* he ledys;
Sir Owghtreth on *the* to*ther* syde, of Turry was lorde.

Sir Gawain leads Guinevere.

Spiced drinks were served to all.

Thane spyces vn-sparyly *th*ay spendyde there-aftyre,
Maluesye *and* muskadelle, *th*ase me*r*uelyous drynkes,
Raykede fulle rathely in rossete cowpes,
Tille alle *the* riche on rawe, Romaynes *and* o*ther*.

Certain lords were assigned to attend upon the Senator.

Bot the sou*er*ai*n*gne sothely, for solauce of hym seluene,
Assi*n*gnyde to *the* senato*ur* certaygne lordes,
To lede to his leueré, whene he leue askes,
W*ith* myrthe *and* w*ith* melodye of mynstralsy noble.

Arthur goes to council in the Giant's tower,

Thane *the* conquero*ur* to concelle cayres there-aftyre,
Wyth lordes of his lygeaunce *th*at to hym selfe langys;

with his lords, justices, judges, and gentle knights.

To *the* geauntes toure iolily he wendes,
Wyth justicez *and* iūggez, and gentille knyghtes.

[leaf 56]

First speaks Sir Cador of Cornwall.

Sir Cador of Cornewayle to *the* kynge carppes,
Lughe one hyme luffly w*ith* lykande lates,—
"I thanke Gode of *th*at thraa *th*at vs *th*us thretys!
3ow moste be traylede, I trowe, bot 3ife 3e trett bettyre:

The letters of Sir Lucius, he says, lighten his heart.

The lettres of sir Lucius lyghttys myne herte!
We hafe as losels liffyde many longe daye,
Wyth delyttes in this lande w*ith* lordchipez many,

They had too long lived a life of inglorious peace.

And forelytenede the loos *th*at we are layttede:
I was abaischite, be oure Lorde, of oure beste bernes,

[1] MS. *the* 3ow. [2] MS. ne he.

Digitized by Google

ffore gret dule of deffuse of dedez of armes!
Now wakkenyse *the* were! wyrchipide be Cryste!
And we salle wynne it ag[a]yne be wyghtnesse *and* strenghe!"
"Sir Cadour," q*uod the* kynge, "thy concelle es noble,
Bot *th*ou arte a m*e*ruailo*us* mane w*ith* thi mery wordez!
ffor thow countez no caas, ne castes no forthire,
Bot hurles furthe appone heuede, as thi herte thynkes;
I moste trette of a trew towchande *th*ise nedes,
Talke of thies tythdands *that* tenes myne herte;
*Th*ou sees *that the* emp*e*rour es angerde a lyttille;
Yt semes be his sandismene *that* he es sore greuede;
His senato*ur* has somm*o*nde[1] me, and said what hym lykyde,
Hethely in my halle, wyth heyn3o*us* wordes,
In speche disspyszede me, *and* sparede me lyttille;
I myght noghte speke for spytte, so my herte trymblyde!
He askyde me tyraun*t*ly tribute of Rome,
That tenefully tynt was in tyme of myne elders;
There alyenes, in absence of alle mene of armes,
Couerde it of comm*o*ns, as cronicles telles;
I haue title to take tribute of Rome,
Myne ancestres ware emp*e*rours, *and* aughte it *the*me seluene,
Belyne *and* Bremyne, *and* Bawdewyne the thyrde,
They ocupyede *the* empyre aughte score wynnttyrs,
Ilkane ayere aftyre o*ther*, as awlde mene telles;
Thei couerde *the* Capitoile, and keste doune *the* walles;
Hyngede of *th*eire heddys-mene by hu̅drethes at ones;
Seyne Co*n*stantyne, our kynsmane, conquerid it aftyre,
That ayere was of Ynglande, and emp*e*rour of Rome,
He *that* conquerid *the* crosse be craftez of armes,
That Criste was on crucifiede, *that* kyng es of heuene;
Thus hafe we euydens to aske *the* emp*e*rour *the* same,
That *th*us regnez at Rome, whate ryghte *th*at he claymes."

He rejoices to return again to deeds of arms.

The king praises Sir Cador for his bold words,

spoken from his heart without thought or care.

He himself is grieved at these tidings.

He has been insulted in his own hall by heinous words,

and insolently summoned to pay tribute to the Emperor of Rome,

of whom he ought rather to demand tribute.

His ancestors occupied the Empire of Rome eight score winters.

His kinsman, Constantine, afterwards subdued it—

he who gained by conquest the true Cross.

[1] *Or* somou*n*de.

Digitized by Google

Then answered King Aungers and said that Arthur ought to be supreme over all kings.

[leaf 56, back]

Than answarde kyng Aungers to Arthure hym seluyn
"Thow aughte to be ouerlynge ouer alle othe
kynges, 28
ffore wyseste, and worthyeste, and wyghteste of hannde
The knyghtlyeste of counsaile *that* euer corone bare ;
I dare saye fore Scottlande, *that* we theme schatl
lympyde, 29

The Romans had done many evil deeds in Scotland,

Whene *the* Romaynes regnede, *tha*y raunsounde ou
eldyrs,
And rade in theire ryotte, and rauyschett oure wyfes,
With-owttyne resone or ryghte refte vs oure gudes ;
And I salle make myne avowe deuotly to Criste, 2
And to *the* haly vernacle, vertuus and noble,

for which he would have revenge.

Of this grett velany I salle be vengede ones
On 3one venemus mene, wyth valiant knyghtes!
I salle the forthire of defence fosterde ynewe, 3

He promises to bring 50,000 men to aid Arthur.

ffifty thowsande mene, wyth-in two eldes,
Of my wage for to wende, whare so the lykes,
To fyghte wyth thy ffaa mene, *that* vs unfaire ledes.

The king of little Britain would have Arthur return a fierce answer.

Thane the burelyche beryne of Bretayne *the* lyttyl
Counsayles sir Arthure, and of hyme besekys
To ansuere *the* alyenes wyth austerene wordes,
To entyce the emperour to take ouere the mounttes.
He said, "I make myne avowe verreilly to Cryste,
And to *the* haly vernacle, *that* voide schalle I neue

He fears the Romans no whit.

ffor radnesse of na Romayne *that* regnes in erthe ;
Bot ay be redye in araye, and at areste ffoundene,
No more dowtte the dynte of theire derfe wapyns,
Than the dewe *that* es dannke, whene *that* it doune ffa
Ne no more schoune[1] fore *the* swape of theire sch
suerddes,
Then fore *the* faireste flour thatt on the folde grow
I salle to batelle the brynge, of brenyede knyghtes
Thyrtty thosannde be tale, thryftye in armes,

He promises to bring 30,000 knights within a month.

Wyth-in a monethe daye in-to whatte marche,
That thow wylle sothelye assygne, whene thy selfe ly

[1] *Or* schonne.

"A! A!" sais *the* Walsche kynge, "wirchipid be Criste! Now schalle we wreke fulle wele *the* wrethe of oure elders! 321
In West Walys i-wysse syche wonndyrs *thay* wroghte, *That* alle for wandrethe may wepe, *that* one *that* were thynkes.
I salle haue the avanttwarde wytterly my seluene, 324
Tylle *that* I haue venquiste *the* Vicounte of Rome, *That* wroghte me at Viterbe a velanye ones,
As I paste in pylgremage by the Pounte Tremble; 327
He was in Tuskayne *that* tyme, and tuke of oure knyghttes,
Areste theme vnryghttwyslye, and raunsounde *thame* aftyre;
I salle hym surelye ensure, *that* saghetylle salle we neuer,
Are we sadlye assemble by oure selfene ones,
And dele dynttys of dethe *with* oure derfe wapyns! 332
And I salle wagge to *that* were of wyrchipfulle knyghtes,
Of Wyghte and of Walschelande, and of *the* Weste Marches,
Twa thosande in tale, horsede one stedys,
Of *the* wyghteste wyes in alle 3one weste landys!" 336
Syre Ewane fyts Vryenee[1] *thane* egerly fraynez,
Was cosyne to *the* conquero*ur*, corageo*us* hymselfene,
"Sir, and we wyste 3o*ur* wylle, we walde wirke *ther*-aftyre; 339
3if *this* jo*ur*nee sulde halde, or be ajo*ur*nede forthyre,
To ryde one 3one Romaynes *and* ryott theire landez,
We walde schape vs there-fore to schippe whene 3ow lykys."
"Cosyne," q*uod the* conquero*ur*, "kyndly *thou* asches;
3ife my concelle accorde to conquere 3one landez, 344
By *the* kalendez of Iuny we schalle encountre ones,
Wyth fulle creuelle knyghtez, so Cryste mot me helpe!
There-to make I myne avowe devottly to Cryste,
And to *the* holy vernacle, vertuous and noble, 348
I salle at Lammesse take leue, to lenge at my large

Then Arthur exclaims Ah! ah!
Now shall we have revenge.
He himself would fight at the head of his army till he had revenged himself on the Viscount of Rome for a villany he once wrought him at Viterbo.
He would take two thousand worshipful knights.
[leaf 57]
Then spoke Sir Ewayne and said that they would all follow his command gladly.
Then said Arthur,
"We will be ready by the kalends of June,
and at Lammas will enjoy our-

[1] *Read* Vryence.

Digitized by Google

selves in Lorraine or Lombardy,

In Lorayne or Lumberdye, whethire me leue thynkys ;
Merke vn-to Meloyne, and myne doune *the* wallez,
Bathe of Petyrsande, *and* of Pys, and of *the* Pounte
Tremble, 352

sojourn six weeks in the Vale of Viterbo.

In *the* Vale of Viterbe vetaile my knyghttes,
Suggourne there sex wokes *and* solace my selfene ;

send riders to Rome and lay there a siege, unless they offer peace."

Send prekers to *the* price toune, and plaunte there my
segge,
Bot if *thay* profre me *the* pece be processe of tyme." 356

Then Sir Ewayne vows vengeance against the Emperor of Rome for occupying Arthur's heritage,

"Certys," sais *sir* Ewayne, "and I avowe aftyre,
And I *that* hathelle may see eu*er* w*ith* myne eghn,
That ocupies thine h*er*itage, *the* empyere of Rome,
I salle auntyre me anes hys egle to touche, 360
That borne es in his banere of brighte golde ryche,
And raas it frome his riche mene, and ryfe it in sondyre
Bot he be redily reschowede w*ith* riotous knyghtez ;
I salle enforsse 3owe in *the* felde w*ith* fresche mene
armes, 36

and promises 50,000 men on fair steeds.

ffyfty thosande folke apone faire stedys,
On thi ffoo mene to fooñde, there the faire thynkes,
In ffraunce or in ffriselande, feghte whene *the* lykes !"

Then Lancelot declares his satisfaction at the war.

"By oure Lorde," q*uod sir* Launcelott, "now lyghtt
myne herte ! 3
I loue Gode of *this* loue[1] *this* lordes has avowede !
Nowe may lesse mene haue leue to say whatt theme lyk
And hafe no lettyng be lawe, bot lystynnys *this*e word
I salle be at jo*ur*nee w*ith* gentille knyghtes, 3
On a jamby stede fulle jolyly gr*a*ythide,

He is ready to joust with the Emperor himself,

Or any jo*ur*nee be-gane to juste w*ith* hym selfene,
Emange alle his geauntez genyuers and o*ther*,
Stryke hym styfflye fro his stede, w*ith* strenghe of m
handys,
ffor alle *tha* steryne in stou*r*, *that* in his stale houys
Be my retenu arayede, I rekke bott a lyttille

[leaf 57, back] and to carry the war into Rome.

To make rowtte in-to Rome, w*ith* ryotous knyghtes
With-in a seuenyghte daye, w*ith* sex score helmes,

[1] *Or perhaps*, lone.

I salle be seene on the see, saile whene *the* lykes."
Thane laughes *sir* Lottez, and alle one lowde meles, — Sir Lottez laughs for joy,
"Me likez *that* *sir* Lucius lannges aftyre sorowe;
Now he wylnez *the* were, hys wanedrethe begynnys,
It es owre weredes to wreke the wrethe of oure elders!
I make myne a-vowe to Gode, and to *the* holy vernacle,
And I may se *the* Romaynes, *that* are so ryche haldene, — and hopes to see the rich Romans in their pomp,
Arayede in *the*ire riotes on a rounde felde,
I salle at *the* reuerence of *the* Rounde Table
Ryde thrughte alle *the* rowtte, rerewarde *and* *other*, — that he may cut his way through them and shed their blood.
Redy wayes to make, and renkkes fulle rowme,
Rynnande on rede blode, as my stede ruschez!
He *that* folowes my fare, and fyrste commes aftyre,
Salle fynde in my fare-waye manye ffay leuyde!"
Thane *the* conqueror kyndly comforthes *these* knyghtes,
Alowes *thaime* gretly theire lordly a-vowes,— — Then Arthur praises his knights for upholding his honour.
"Alweldande Gode wyrchipe 3ow alle!
And latte me neuere wanntte 3ow, whylls I in werlde regne;
My menske and my manhede 3e mayntene in erthe,
Myne honour alle vtterly in *other* kyngys landes;
My wele and my wyrchipe, of alle *this* werlde ryche,
3e haue knyghtly conqueryde, *that* to my coroune langes;
Hym thare be ferde for no faees, *that* swylke a folke ledes,
Bot euer ffresche for to fyghte, in felde whene hym lykes.
I acounte no kynge *that* vndyr Criste lyffes, — While they remain true to him he fears no king on earth.
Whilles I see 3owe alle sounde, I sette be no more."
Qwhene they tristily had tretyd, *thay* trumppede vp aftyre, — Then the Council breaks up.
Descendyd doune with a daunce of dukes and erles; — Music and dancing succeed,
Thane *they* semblede to sale, and sowpped als swythe,
Alle *this* semly sorte, wyth semblante fulle noble. — and they are all feasted in the hall.
Thene the roy realle rehetes thes knyghttys,
Wyth reuerence and ryotte of alle his Rounde Table,
Tille seuen dayes was gone: *the* senatour askes — After seven days the Senator demands his answer for the Emperor.
Answere to *the* emperour with austeryne wordez.
Aftyre *the* Epiphanye, whene *the* purpos was takyne

Digitized by Google

Of peris of *th*e p*ar*lement, p*re*lates and o*ther*. 416
The kyng in his concell*e*, curtaise and noblee,
Vtters *th*e alienes, and ansuers hym*e* seluen*e* :—

Then Arthur bids him greet Lucius and tell him that he shall quickly see him in his country;

"Gret wele Luci*us*, thi lorde, and layne noghte *th*ise wordes;
Ife *th*ow be lygmane[1] lele, late hym*e* wiet sone 420
I sall*e* at Lammese take leue, and loge at my large
In delitte in his lanndez, wytħ lordes ynewe,
Regne in my realtee, and ryste whene me lykes,

that he will hold his Round Table by the river Rhone,

By *th*e reyuere of Reone halde my Rounde Table, 424
ffannge the fermes in faithe[2] of all*e* *th*a faire rewmes,
ffor all*e* *th*e manace of hys myghte, *and* mawgree his egħne!

[leaf 58]

And merke sythen*e* ou*er* the mounttez in-to his mayne londez, 427

and mine down the walls of Milan,

To Meloyne the meruaylo*us*, and myn*e* doun*e* the walles;
In Lorrayne ne in Lumberdye lefe schall*e* I nowthire
Nokyn*e* lede appon*e* liffe, *that* *th*are his lawes ȝemes;

ravage Tuscany with his knights,

And t*ur*ne in-to Tuschayne, whene me tyme thynkys,
Ryde all*e* *th*as rowme landes wytħ ryoto*us* knyghttes;
Byde hy[m] make reschewes fore menske of hym*e* seluen*e*,
And mette me fore his manhede in *th*ase mayne landes!

he will be found in France on the first of February,

I sall*e* be foundyn*e* in Fraunce, fraiste whene hym lykes,
The fyrste daye of Feu*er*ȝere, in thas faire marches! 436
Are I be fechyde wytħ force, or forfette my landes,
*Th*e flo*ur* of his faire folke full*e* fay sall*e* be leuyde!
I sall*e* hym sekyrly ensure, vndyre my seele ryche,

and before seven winters are gone besiege Rome,

To seege *th*e cetee of Rome wytħ-in seuen*e* wyntyre, 440
And that so sekerly ensege apon*e* sere halfes,

and many a senator shall rue his wrath.

That many a senato*ur* sall*e* syghe for sake of me one!
My som*m*ons er certified*e* and *th*ow arte full*e* se*r*uyde

The messenger may depart as soon as he pleases.

Of cuñdit and credense, kayre wh*er*e the lykes: 444
I sall*e* thi jo*ur*naye engyste, enjoyne them*e* my seluen*e*,
ffro this place to *th*e porte, there *th*ou sall*e* passe ou*er*;

He must travel to Sandwich in seven days,

Seuen*e* dayes to Sandewyche, I sette at the large,
Sexty myle on a daye, *th*e som*m*e es bott lyttill*e*! 448

[1] *Or* leygmane. [2] *Or* fatthe.

Digitized by Google

Thowe moste spede at the spurs, and spare noghte thi fole,
Thow weyndez by Watlyng-strette, and by no waye elles : going by Watling-street,
Thare thow nyghttes one nyghte, nedez moste thou lenge, stopping at night wherever he may chance to be,
Be it foreste or felde, found thou no forthire ; 452
Bynde thy blonke by a buske with thy brydille euene, tying his horse to a bush by the bridle.
Lugge thi selfe vndyre lynde, as the leefe thynkes,
There awes none alyenes to ayere appone nyghttys,
With syche a rebawdous rowtte to ryot thy seluene. 456
Thy lycence es lemete in presence of lordys,
Be now lathe or lette, ryghte as the thynkes,
For bothe thi lyffe and thi lyme lygges ther-appone,
Thofe sir Lucius had laide the lordchipe of Rome ; 460
ffor be thow foundene a fute with-owte the flode merkes, If after undern of the eighth day he is found in the country, he shall be hanged up for dogs to gnaw.
Aftyr the aughtende day, whene vndroune es rungene,
Thou salle be heuedede in hye, *and* with horsse drawene,
And seyne heyly be hangede, houndes to gnawene ! 464
The rente ne rede golde, that vn-to Rome langes,
Salle noghte redily, renke, raunsone thyne one !"
"Sir," sais the senatour, "so Crist mot me helpe ! Then the Senator declares that if he could only get well away once, he would never again go on such an errand.
Might I with wirchipe wyne awaye ones, 468
I sulde neuer fore emperour, that on erthe lenges,
Efte vnto Arthure ayere one syche nedys ;
Bot I am sengilly here, with sex sum of knyghtes ;
I be-seke 3ow, sir, that we may sounde passe : 472 He prays that his retinue may be protected on their way.
If any vnlawefulle lede lette vs by the waye,
With-in thy lycence, lorde, thy loosse es enpeyrede."
"Care noghte," quod the kynge, "thy coundyte es [leaf 58, back]
knawene
ffro Carlelele to the coste, there thy cogge lengges ; 476 Then Arthur tells him that if his coffers were crammed full of silver he would be safe with his passport.
Thoghe thy cofers ware fulle, cramede with syluer,
Thow myghte be sekyre of my sele sexty myle forthire."
They enclined to the kynge, and coungé thay askede,
Cayers owtt of Carelele, catchez one theire horsez ; 480
Sir Cadore the curtayes kende theme the wayes,
To Catrike theme cunvayede, *and* to Crist theme
bekennyde.
So they spede at the spoures, they sprangene theire horses, Then the Romans depart with all speed,

Digitized by Google

Hyres *th*eme hakenayes hastyly *th*ere-aftyre;
and never rest till they reach Sandwich by the time prescribed.
So fore reddo*ur* *th*ey redene, and risted theme neue*r*,
Bot ȝif they luggede vndire lynd, whills *th*eme lyghte failede;
Bot eue*re* *th*e senato*ur* for-sothe soghte at *th*e gayneste.
Never were they so glad of any thing as of the sound of the sea and Sandwich bells.
By *th*e seuende day was gone *th*e cetee *th*ai rechide;
Of alle *th*e glee vndire Gode so glade ware *th*ey neue*r*e,
As of *th*e sounde of *th*e see and Sandwyche belles!
Wythowttyne more stownntynge they schippide *th*eire horsez,
Wery to *th*e wane see *th*ey went alle att ones;
With *th*e mene of *th*e walle they weyde vp *th*eire ankyrs,
They cross the sea to Flanders,
And fleede at *th*e fore flude, in Flaundrez *th*ey rowede,
And thorughe Flaundres *th*ey founde, as *th*eme faire thoghte,[1]
Tille Akyne in Almayne, in Arthur landes;
and over Mount St Gothard into Lombardy,
Gosse by *th*e Mount Goddarde fulle greuous wayes,
And so in-to Lu*m*berddye, lykande to schewe;
through Tuscany to Rome.
They turne thurghe Tuskayne, *with* towres fulle heghe,
In pris appairelles theme in *precious* wedez;
The Sonondaye in suters *th*ay suggo*ur*ne *th*eire horsez,
And sekes *th*e Seyntez of Rome, be assente of knyghtes;
Then the Senator seeks an audience with the Emperor Lucius,
Sythyne prekes to *th*e pales *with* portes so ryche,
*Th*are sir Lucius lenges *with* lordes enowe;
Lowttes to hym lufly, and lettres hym bedes
Of credence enclosyde, *with* knyghtlyche wordez.
who asks eagerly for Arthur's answer, and on what ground he resists the power of Rome.
Thene *th*e emperour was egree, and enkerly fraynes,
*Th*e answere of Arthure he askes hyme sone,
How he arayes *th*e rewme, *and* rewlys *th*e pople;
ȝif he be rebelle to Rome, whate ryghte *that* he claymes:
His ambassador ought to have seized his sceptre and sat above him. Arthur, he says, ought himself to have served the Senator.
"Thow sulde his ceptre haue sesede, *and* syttyne aboune,
ffore reue*r*ence and realtee of Rome *th*e noble:
By sertes *th*ow was my sandes, *and* senato*ur* of Rome,
He sulde fore solempnitee hafe se*r*uede *th*e hym seluene."

[1] *likyde* struck out, and *thoghte* written instead by the same hand.

Digitized by Google

"That wille he neuer for no waye[1] of alle *th*is werlde ryche,
Bot who may wynne hym of werre, by wyghtnesse of handes;
Many fey schalle be fyrste appone *th*e felde leuyde,
Are he appere in this place, profre whene *th*e likes.
I saye the, sir, Arthure es thyne enmye fore euer,
And ettelles to bee ouerlynge of *th*e empyre of Rome,
That alle his ancestres aughte, bot Vtere hym selfe.
Thy nedes this newe ȝere, I notifiede my selfene,
Be-fore *that* noble of name *and* neynesome of kynges;[2]
In the moste reale place of *th*e Rounde Table,
I somounde hyme solempnylye, one-seeande his knyghtez;
Sene I was formyde in faythe so ferde was I neuere,
In alle *th*e placez ther I passede of pryncez in erthe!
I wolde fore-sake alle my suyte of segnourry of Rome,
Or I efte to *that* soueraygne whare sente one suyche nedes!
He may be chosyne cheftayne, cheefe of alle other,
Bathe be chaunceź of armes and cheuallrye noble,
ffor whyeseste, *and* worthyeste, and wyghteste of hanndez:
Of alle the wyes *th*ate I watte in this werlde ryche,
The knyghtlyeste creatoure in Cristyndome haldene,
Of kynge or of conquerour, crownede in erthe,
Of countenaunce, of corage, of crewelle lates,
The comlyeste of knyghtehode *that* vndyre Cryste lyffes!
He maye be spokene in dyspens, despysere of syluere,
That no more of golde gyffes *th*ane of grette stones,
No more of wyne *th*ane of watyre, *th*at of *th*e welle rynnys,
Ne of welthe of *th*is werlde bot wyrchipe allone.
Syche contenaunce was neuer knowene in no kythe ryche,
As was with *that* connquerour in his courte haldene;
I countede at this Crystynmesse, of kyngez enoynttede,
Hole tene at his table, *that* tyme with hyme selfene;
He wylle werraye i-wysse, be ware ȝif *th*e lykes,
Wage many wyghtemene, and wache thy marches,

Then answers the Senator, that Arthur is too great to do that for any one.

He claims no less than the Empire of Rome.

[leaf 59]

He tells the Emperor how he had delivered his message, and that he was never so frightened since he was born.

Arthur is worthy to be king of men for his wisdom and valour.

He is the most famous knight in Christendom.

To him gold and silver are as nothing,

and wine no more than water.

Ten kings anointed feast at his table.

[1] ? wye. [2] Substituted for *knyghtez*.

Digitized by Google

Good need is there of zealous preparation,

That they be redye in araye, and at areste foundyne;
ffor ȝife he reche vn-to Rome, he raunsouns it for euere!
Irede thow dresce the ther-fore, and drawe no lytte langere,
Be sekyre of thi sowdeours, and sende to the mowntes;
Be the quartere of this ȝere, and hym quarte stannde,
He wylle wyghtlye in a qwhyle one his wayes hye." 553

and that soldiers should be dispatched to the mountains forthwith.

"By Easter," says the Emperor, "I undertake to be in Germany with an army,

"Bee Estyre," sais the emperour, "I ettylle my selfene,
To hostaye in Almayne with armede knyghtez;
Sende freklye in-to Fraunce, that flour es of rewmes,
ffande to fette that freke, and forfette his landez; 557

and will send many giants and mighty men to meet him in the mountains.

ffor I salle sette kepers, fulle couaunde and noble,
Many geaunte of geene, justers fulle gude,
To mete hym in the mountes, and martyre hys knyghtes,
Stryke theme doune in strates, and struye theme fore euere,
There salle appone Godarde a garette be rerede, 562

A watch-tower shall be reared on Mount St. Gothard, with a beacon ready to light,

That schalle be garneschte and kepyde with gude mene of armes,
And a bekyne abouenn to brynne whene theme lykys,
That nane enmye with hoste salle entre the mountes;
There schalle one Mounte Bernarde be beyldede anothere,
Buschede with banerettes and bachelers noble: 567

and another on Mount St. Bernard.

He shall not be suffered to enter Pavia."

In at the portes of Pavye schalle no prynce passe,
Thurghe the perelous places, for my pris knyghtes."

Then Lucius sends letters into the East,

Thane sir Lucius lordlyche lettres he sendys
Onone in-to the Oryente, with austeryne knyghtez,
Tille Ambyganye and Orcage, and Alysaundyre eke, 572
To Inde and to Ermonye, as Ewfrates rynnys,
To Asye, and to Affrike, and Ewrope the large,
To Irritayne, and Elamet, and alle thase owte ilez;
To Arraby and Egipt, tille erles and other, 576
That any erthe ocupyes in thase este marches

to demand aid of all the kings and lords.

Of Damaske and Damyat, and dukes and erles;
ffor drede of his daungere they dresside theme sone;
Of Crete and of Capados the honourable kyngys 580
Come at his commandmente, clenly at ones;
To Tartary and Turky, whene tythynngez es comene,
They turne in by Thebay, terauntez fulle hugge,

Quickly they all come, for fear of his might.

Digitized by Google

The flo*ur* of *th*e faire folke, of Amazonnes landes ;
Alle thate ffaillez on *th*e felde be forfette fore eu*er*e ! — All that fail are to forfeit their lands.
Of Babyloyn*e* and Baldake the burlyche knyghtes,
Bayo*us* w*ith* *th*eire baronage bydez no langere ;
Of P*er*ce, and of Pamphile, and Pret*er* Iohne landes,
Iche prynce w*ith* his powere appertlyche graythede ;
The Sowdane of Surrye assemblez his knyghtes,
ffra Nylus to Nazarethe, nommers fulle huge ;
To Garyere *and* to Galelé *th*ey gedyre alle at ones ;
The Sowdanes that ware sekyre sowdeours to Rome, — From all the East they come sailing across the Greek Sea in their mighty ships armed for war,
They gadyrede ou*er*e *th*e Grekkes See w*ith* greuo*us* wapyns,
In theire grete galays, wyt̄ glet*er*ande scheldez ;
The kynge of Cyprys on*e* *th*e see *th*e Sowdane habydes,
W*ith* alle *th*e realles of Roodes, arayede w*ith* hym*e* one ;
They sailede w*ith* a syde wynde oure *th*e salte strandez :
Sodanly *th*e Sarezenes, as them*e* selfe lykede,
Craftyly at Cornett the kynges are aryefede, — and assembled at Corneto, sixty miles from Rome.
ffra *th*e cet̄é of Rome sexti myle large.
Be that the Grekes ware graythede, a fulle gret nombyre, — There were of Greeks a vast number, and men of Italy, with Saracens from many lands.
The myghtyeste of Macedone, w*ith* men*e* of *th*a marches,
Pulle and Pruyslande presses w*ith* *other*,
The lege-men*e* of Lettow w*ith* legyons ynewe :
Thus they semble in sortes, su*m*mes fulle huge,
Sowdanes and Sarezenes owt of sere landes,
The Sowdane of Surry and sextene kynges,
At the cetee of Rome assemblede at ones.
Thane yschewes *th*e emp*er*o*ur* armede at ryghtys, — Then goes forth the emperor with his knights,
Arayede w*ith* his Romaynes appon*e* ryche stedys ;
Sexty geauntes be-fore, engenderide w*ith* fendez, — headed by sixty giants.
W*ith* weches and warlaws to wacchen*e* his tentys, — Witches and warlocks watch his tents.
Ay-ware whare he wendes, wyntrez and ȝeres.
Myghte no blonkes them*e* bere, thos bustou*s* churlles, — [leaf 60] No horse might carry those churls.
Bot coue*r*de camellez of tou*r*se, enclosyde in maylez ; — They ride upon camels bearing towers.
He ayerez oute w*ith* alyenez, ostes fulle huge,
Ewyne in-to Almayne, *th*at Arthure hade wonnyne ;
Rydes in by *th*e ryuere, and ryottez hym*e* seluene, — The emperor marches into Germany.
And ayerez w*ith* a huge wylle alle *th*as hye landez ;

Digitized by Google

Alle Westwale of werre he wynnys as hym lykes,
Drawes in by Danuby, and dubbez hys knyghtez;
In the contré of Colome [1] castelles enseggez,
And suggeournez that sesone wyth Sarazenes ynewe.

Meanwhile Arthur commands his knights to gather their forces, and to be ready to meet him.

At the vtas of Hillary, Syr Arthure hym seluene
In his kydde councelle commande the lordes,—
"Kayere to 3our cuntrez, and semble 3our knyghtes,
And kepys me at Constantyne clenlyche arayede;
Byddez me at Bareflete apone tha blythe stremes,
Baldly with-in borde with 3owre beste beryns;
I schalle menskfully 3owe mete in thos faire marches."

The fleet assembles at Sandwich.

He sendez furthe sodaynly sergeantes of armes,
To alle hys mariners on rawe, to areste hym schippys;
Wyth-in sextene dayes hys fleet whas assemblede,
At Sandwyche on the see, saile whene hym lykes.

He holds a parliament at York,

In the palez of 3orke a parlement he haldez,
With alle the perez of the rewme, prelates and other;
And aftyre the prechynge in presence of lordes,
The kyng in his concelle carpys thes wordes,—
"I am in purpos to passe perilous wayes,
To kaire with my kene mene, to conquere 3one landes,
To owttraye myne enmy, 3if auenture it schewe,
That ocupyes myne heritage, the empyre of Rome.

and appoints as viceroy Sir Mordred, his nephew.

I sett 3ow here a soueraynge, ascente 3if 3owe lykys,
That es me sybb, my syster sone, Sir Mordrede hym seluene,
Salle be my leuetenaunte, with lordchipez ynewe,
Of alle my lele lege-mene, that my landez 3emes."
He carpes tille his cosyne thane, in counsaile hym seluene,—
"I make the kepare, sir knyghte, of kyngrykes manye,
Wardayne wyrchipfulle, to weilde al my landes,
That I haue wonnene of werre, in alle this werlde ryche;

He bids him take care of Queen Guinever,

I wylle that Waynour, my weife, in wyrchipe be holdene,
That hire wannte noo wele, ne welthe that hire lykes;
Luke my kydde castells be clenlyche arayede,

and of his castles and forests.

There cho maye suggourne hire selfe, wyth semlyche berynes.

[1] *Or* Coloine.

Digitized by Google

ffannde my fforestez be ffrythede, o frenchepe for euere,
That nane werreye my wylde, botte Waynour hir seluene, — The queen alone is allowed to hunt in his absence.
And that in the sesone whene grees es assignyde,
That cho take hir solauce in certayne tymms.
Chauncelere and chambyrleyne chaunge as the lykes,
Audytours and offycers ordayne thy seluene,— — All officers are to be completely under his command.
Bathe jureez, and juggez, and justicez of landes,
Luke thow justyfye theme wele that injurye wyrkes : [leaf 60, back]
If me be destaynede to dye at Dryghtyns wylle,
I charge the my sektour, cheffe of alle other, — Arthur makes Mordred his executor.
To mynystre my mobles, fore mede of my saule,
To mendynantez[1] and mysese in myschefe fallene :
Take here my testament of tresoure fulle huge,
As I trayste appone the, be-traye thowe me neuer ! — He bids him be faithful to his trust,
As thow wille answere be-fore the austeryne jugge,
That alle this werlde wynly wysse as hyme lykes,
Luke that my laste wylle be lelely perfournede !
Thow has clenly the cure that to my coroune langez,
Of alle my werdez wele, and my weyffe eke ;
Luke thowe kepe the so clere, there be no cause fondene,
Whene I to contré come, if Cryste wille it thole ;
And thow haue grace gudly to gouerne thy seluene,
I salle coroune the, knyghte, kyng with my handez." — and promises to crown him king if he remain so.
Than sir Modrede fulle myldly meles hym seluene,
Knelyd to the conquerour, and carpes thise wordez,—
"I be-seke 30w, sir, as my sybbe lorde, — But Mordred desires to be excused,
That 3e wille for charyté cheese 30w a-nother ;
ffor if 3e putte me in this plytte, 30wre pople es dyssauyde ;
To presente a prynce astate my powere es symple.
Whene other of werre wysse are wyrchipide here-aftyre,
Thane may I for-sothe be sette bott at lyttille.
To passe in 30ur presance my purpos es takyne, — and would rather go to the war.
And alle my purueaunce apperte fore my pris knyghtez."
"Thowe arte my neuewe fulle nere, my nurrree of olde, — But Arthur bids him, as his nearest of kin, to undertake the office.
That I haue chastyede and chosene, a childe of my chambyre ;

[1] MS. mendyna*u*antez.

Digitized by Google

ffor the sybredyne of me, fore-sake noghte *th*is offyce
That thow ne wyrk my wille, thow watte whatte[1] it menes."

Nowe he takez hys leue, and lengez no langere,
At lordez, at lege-mene, *that* leues hyme by-hyndene.
Then Arthur takes leave of his queen.
And seyne *that* worthilyche wy went vn-to chambyre,
ffor to comfurthe *th*e qwene, *that* in care lenges;
Waynour waykly wepande hym kyssiz,
Talkez to hym tenderly *with* teres ynewe,—
Guinever laments his departure,
"I may wery the wye, thatt this werre mouede,
That warnes me wyrchippe of my wedde lorde;
Alle my lykynge of lyfe owte of lande wendez,
And I in langour am lefte, leue ȝe for euere!
and would rather die in his arms.
Whyne myghte I, dere lufe, dye in ȝour armes,
Are I *th*is destanye of dule sulde drye by myne one!"
But Arthur bids her not to grieve,
"Grefe *th*e noghte, Gaynour, fore Goddes lufe of hewene,
Ne gruche noghte my ganggynge, it salle to gude turne!
Thy wonrydez and thy wepynge woundez myne herte,
I may noghte wit of *th*is woo, for alle *th*is werlde ryche;
I haue made a kepare, a knyghte of thyne awene,
and tells her that he has made Mordred, a knight of her own, his deputy.
Ouerlynge of Ynglande vndyre thy seluene,
And that es sir Mordrede, *that thow* has mekylle prayysede,
Salle be thy dictour, my dere, to doo whatte the lykes."
[leaf 61]
Then he kisses the ladies, and takes leave of them.
Thane he takes hys leue at ladys in chambyre,
Kysside them kyndlyche, and to Criste be-tœches;
But Guinever swoons when he asks for his sword.
And then cho swounes fulle swythe, whe[n] he hys swerde aschede,
Twys in a swounyng, swelte as cho walde!
The king then departs hastily with his knights.
He pressed to his palfray, in presance of lordes,
Prekys of the palez *with* his prys knyghtes,
Wyth a realle rowte of *th*e Rounde Table;
Soughte to-warde Sandwyche, cho sees hyme no more!
Thare the grete ware gederyde, wyth galyarde knyghtes,
At Sandwich all the lords and their followers assemble.
Garneschit one *th*e grene felde and graythelyche arayede;
Dukkes and duzseperez daynttehely rydes,
Erlez of Ynglande *with* archers ynewe:

[1] MS. whatte watte.

Digitized by Google

Schirreues scharply schiftys the comouns,
Rewlys be-fore *the* ryche of the Rounde Table,
Assi*n*gnez ilke a contree to certayne lordes,
In the southe on*e* *th*e see banke saile whene *th*eme lykes.
Thane bargez theme buskez, and to *th*e bannke rowes,
Bryngez blonkez on*e* bourde, and burlyche helmes;
Trussez in tristly trappyde stedes,
Tentez,[1] and othire toylez, and targez fulle ryche,
Cabanes, *and* clathe-sekkes, and coferez fulle noble,
Hukes, and haknays, and horsez of armez;
Thus they stowe in*e* the stuffe of fulle steryn*e* knyghtez.
Qwen*e* alle was schyppede that scholde, they schounte no lengere,
Bot ventelde theme tyte, as *th*e tyde rynnez;
Coggez and crayers *th*an crossez *th*aire mastez,
At the co*m*mandment of *th*e kynge, vncouerde at ones.
Wyghtly on*e* *th*e wale *th*ay wye vp *th*aire ankers,
By wytt of *th*e watyre-men*e* of *th*e wale ythez,
ffrekes on*e* *th*e forestayne fakene *th*eire coblez,
In floynes, and fercostez, and Flemesche schyppes,
Tytt saillez to *th*e toppe, and *tur*nez *th*e lufe,
Standez appon*e* stere-bourde, sterynly *th*ay songen*e*,
The pryce schippez of the porte prouen*e* theire depnesse,
And fondez wyth fulle saile ower *th*e fawe ythez;
Holly *with*-owttyne harme *th*ay hale in bottes,
Schipe-men*e* scharply schotene *th*aire portez,
Launchez lede apon*e* lufe, lacchen*e* *ther* depez,
Lukkes to *th*e lade-sterne, whene *th*e lyghte faillez;
Castez coursez be crafte, whene *th*e clowde rysez,
With *th*e nedylle and *th*e stone one *th*e nyghte tydez;
ffor drede of *th*e derke nyghte *th*ay drecchede a lyttille,
And alle *th*e steryne of *th*e streme strekyne at onez.
The kynge was in a gret cogge, *with* knyghtez fulle many,
In a cabane enclosede, clenlyche arayede;
With-in on a ryche bedde rystys a littylle,
And *with* *th*e swoghe of *th*e see in swefnynge he felle.

Horses, arms, tents, and other things are shipped.

Then the ships at the word of command cross their yards,
weigh their anchors;
the well-skilled sailors hoist the sails and steer the vessels.

Then they haul in the boats, shut the ports, heave the lead, look well to the guiding star, and skilfully shape their course with the needle and the stone.

After a little delay on account of darkness, they all sail at once.

The king is in a large vessel with many knights.

Resting himself in his cabin, he falls asleep,

[1] *Or* teinttez.

Digitized by Google

and dreams of a dreadful dragon.

Hym dremyd of a dragone, dredfulle to be-holde,
Come dryfande ouer the depe to drenschene hys pople,
[leaf 61, back] Ewene walkande owte of the weste landez,
Wanderande vnworthyly ouere the wale ythez;
Bothe his hede and hys hals ware halely alle ouer
Oundyde of azure, enamelde fulle faire:

His head and neck are blue;

His shoulders covered with silver scales;

His scoulders ware schalyde alle in clene syluere,
Schreede ouer alle the schrympe with schrinkande poyntez;

his belly and wings of various hues;

Hys wombe and hys wenges of wondyrfulle hewes,
In meruaylous maylys he mountede fulle hye;
Whayme that he towchede he was tynt for euer!

his feet are black, and out of his mouth comes fire.

Hys feete ware floreschede alle in fyne sabylle,
And syche a vennymous flayre flowe fro his lyppez,
That the flode of the flawez alle one fyre semyde!

Then comes against the dragon a fierce black bear,

with huge paws and perilous claws,

Thane come of the Oryente, ewyne hyme agaynez,
A blake bustous bere abwene in the clowdes,
With yche a pawe as a poste, and paumes fulle huge,
With pykes fulle perilous, alle plyande thame semyde,

mis-shapen legs, and foaming lips.

Lothene and lothely, lokkes and other,
Alle with lutterde legges, lokerde vnfaire,
ffiltyrde vnfrely, wyth fomannde lyppez,
The foulleste of fegure that fourmede was euer!
He baltyrde, he bleryde, he braundyschte ther-after;

He prepares to fight, roaring and raging for the strife.

To bataile he bounnez hym with bustous clowez:
He romede, he rarede, that roggede alle the erthe!
So ruydly he rappyd at to ryot hym seluene!

Then the dragon assails him, fighting like a falcon with beak and claws.

Thane the dragone on dreghe dressede hyme a-3aynez,
And with hys duttez hym drafe one dreghe by the walkyne:
He fares as a fawcone, frekly he strykez;
Bothe with feete and with fyre he feghttys at ones!
The bere in the bataile the bygger hym semyde,

The bear bites him with baleful teeth, and causes the blood to flow.

And byttes hyme boldlye wyth balefulle tuskez;
Syche buffetez he hym rechez with hys brode klokes,
Hys brest and his brathelle whas blodye alle ouer!
He rawmpyde so ruydly that alle the erthe ryfez,
Rynnande one reede blode as rayne of the heuene!

He had killed the dragon but for

He hade weryede the worme by wyghtnesse of strenghte,

Digitized by Google

Ne ware it fore *the* wylde fyre *that* he hyme wyth̄ defendez. — the fire which he breathes.
Thane wandyrs *the* worme awaye to hys heghttez,
Commes glydande fro *the* clowddez, and cowpez fulle — Then the dragon flies aloft, and comes swooping down,
euene ; 799
Towchez hym wyth̄ his talounez, and terez hys rigge,
Be-twyx *the* taile and the toppe tene fote large ! — tearing a vast rent in the back of the bear,
Thus he brittenyde the bere, and broghte hyme olyfe,
Lette hyme falle in the flode, fleete whare hyme lykes : — and lets him drop into the water.
So they brynge *the* bolde kyng bynne *the* schippe-burde,
*Th*at nere he bristez for bale, one bede whare he lyggez.
Thane waknez *the* wyese kynge, wery fore-*tra*uaillede, — Then Arthur awaking is [leaf 62] troubled at the dream, and sends for his two philosophers, men very learned in the seven sciences.
Takes hyme two phylozophirs, that folowede hyme euer,
In the seuyne scyence the suteleste fondene, 808
The cony[n]geste of clergye vndyre Criste knowene ;
He tolde *the*me of hys tourmente, *that* tyme *th*at he slepede,
"Drechede *with* a dragone, and syche a derfe beste,
Has mad me fulle wery ; ȝe telle me my swefene, 812
Ore I mone swelte as swythe, as wysse me oure Lorde !"
"Sir," saide *the*y sone thane, thies sagge philosopherse, — These wise men tell him that by the dragon is meant himself.
"The dragone *that th*ow dremyde of, so dredfulle to schewe,
That come dryfande ouer *the* deepe, to drynchene thy pople,
Sothely and certayne thy seluene it es, 817
That thus saillez ouer *the* see *with* thy sekyre knyghtez:
The colurez *th*at ware castyne appone his clere wengez,
May be thy kyngrykez alle, that thow has ryghte wonnyne ;
And the tachesesede taile, *with* tonges so huge, 821
Be-takyns *th*is faire folke, that in thy fleet wendez.
The bere that bryttenede was abowene in *the* clowdez, — The bear signifies the tyrants who torment his people, or else some giant whom Arthur is destined to overthrow in battle.
Be-takyns the tyrauntez *th*at tourmentez thy pople ;
Or elles *with* somme gyaunt some journee salle happyne,
In syngulere batelle by ȝoure selfe one ;
And *th*ow salle hafe *the* victorye thurghe helpe of oure Lorde,
As *th*ow in thy visione was opynly schewede ! 828
Of this dredfulle dreme ne drede the no more, — Arthur is exhorted to be of good courage.
Ne kare noghte, *sir* conqueror, bot comforth thy seluene ;

Digitized by Google

And thise *th*at saillez ou*er* *th*e see, w*ith* thy sekyre knyghtez."

W*ith* trumppez then*e* trystly, they trisen*e* vpe *th*aire saillez,

They speed on their way, and arrive on the coast of Normandy.

And rowes ou*er* the ryche see, this rowtte all*e* at onez;
The comely coste of Normandye they cachen*e* full*e* euen*e*,

At Barflete they find a fleet of friends,

And blythely at Barflete theis bold*e* are arryfede,
And fyndys a flete there of frendez ynewe,

the flower of fifteen realms.

The floure and *th*e faire folke of fyftene rewmez;
ffore kyngez and capytaynez kepyde hym*e* fayre,
As he at Carelele co*mm*aundyde at Cristymesse hym seluen*e*.

When they had disembarked and pitched their tents, a Templar comes to the king,

Be they had taken*e* the lande, and tentez vpe rerede,
Comez[1] a templere tyte, and towchide to *th*e kynge—

and tells him of a ferocious giant who feeds upon men and children,

"Here es a teraunt be-syde that to*ur*mentez thi pople,
A grett geaunte of geen*e*, engenderde of fendez;
He has fretyn*e* of folke mo than*e* fyfe hondreth̄e,
And als fele fawntekyns of freeborne childyre!
This has bene his sustynaunce all*e* this seuen*e* wyntt*er*es,
And ȝitt es that sotte noghte sadde, so wele hym*e* it lykez!
In *th*e contree of Co*n*stantyne no kynde has he leuede,
W*ith*-owttyne kydd castelles enclosid wyth walles,
That he ne has clenly dystroyede all*e* the knaue childyre,
And them*e* caryede to *th*e cragge, and clenly deworyde!

and who had that day captured the [leaf 62, back] Duchess of Brittany, and carried her to the mountain.

The duchez of Bretayne to daye has he takyn*e*,
Be-side Reynes as scho rade with̄ hire ryche knyghttes;
Ledd hyre to *th*e moun*t*ayne, thare *th*at lede lengez,
To lye by that lady, aye whyls hir lyfe lastez.
We folowede o ferrom*e* moo then*e* fyfe hundrethe,
Of beryns, and of burgeys, and bachelers noble,
Bot he cou*er*de the cragge; cho cryede so lowde,
The care of *th*at creato*ur*e cou*er* salle I neu*er*!

She was the flower of all France, and the fairest lady on earth,

Scho was flo*ur* of alle Fraunce, or of fyfe rewmes,
And one of the fayreste that fo*ur*mede was eu*er*e,
The gentileste jowelle a-juggede w*ith* lordes,
ffro Geen*e* vn-to Geron*e*, by Ihes*u* of heuen*e*!

[1] *Or* Co*mm*ez.

Digitized by Google

Scho was thy wyfes cosyne, knowe it if *th*e lykez, 864 — cousin of Arthur's queen.
Comene of *th*e rycheste, that re*n*gnez in erthe :
As thow arte ryghtwise kynge rewe on thy pople,
And fande for to venge theme, that thus are rebuykyde !"
"Allas !" sais *sir* Arthure, "so lange haue I lyffede, — Then Sir Arthur bitterly laments her fate,
Hade I wytene of this, wele had me chefede ; 869
Me es noghte fallene faire, bot me es foule happynede,
That thus this faire ladye this fende has dystroyede !
I had leuere thane alle Fraunce, this fyftene wynter,
I hade bene be-fore thate freke, a furlange of waye, 873 — and wishes he had been there to aid her.
Whene he that ladye had laghte and ledde to *th*e montez:
I hadde lefte my lyfe are cho hade harme lymppyde !
Bot walde *th*ow kene me to *th*e crage, thare *th*at kene lengez, — He desires to know where the giant lives,
I walde cayre to *that* coste, and carpe wythe hyme seluene,
To trette *with* that tyraunt fore tresone of lo̅des,[1]
And take trewe for a tyme, tille it may tyde bettyre."
"Sire, see 3e 3one farlande, *with* 3one two fyrez, 880 — and is directed by the Templar how to find his abode,
*Th*ar filsnez[2] *th*at fende, fraiste whene the lykes,
Appone the creste of the cragge, by a colde welle,
That enclosez *th*e clyfe *with th*e clere strandez,
Ther may thow fynde folke fay wyth-owttyne nowmer, — where there are many captives,
Mo florenez in faythe thane Fraunce es in aftyre ; 885
And more tresour vn-trewely that traytour has getyne, — and vast treasure stored up.
Thane in Troye was, as I trowe, *that* tyme *that* it was wonne."
Thane romyez the ryche kynge for rewthe of *th*e pople, — Then Arthur is greatly excited.
Raykez ryghte to a tente, and restez no lengere ! 889
He welterys, he wristeles, he wryngez hys handez !
Thare was no wy of *th*is werlde, *th*at wyste whatt he menede !
He calles *sir* Cayous *that* of *th*e cowpe serfede, 892 — and bids Sir Cayous and Sir Bedevere attend him at evening,
And *sir* Bedvere *th*e bolde, *th*at bare hys brande ryche,—
"Luke 3e aftyre euensange be armyde at ryghttez,
On blonkez by 3one buscayle, by 3one blythe stremez,
ffore I wille passe in pilgremage preuely here-aftyre, — pretending that he is going on a pilgrimage.
In the tyme of suppere, whene lordez are servede, 897
ffor to sekene a saynte be 3one salte stremes, [leaf 63]

[1] *Originally* lordez. [2] *Or* filsuez.

Digitized by Google

In seynt Mighelle mount, there myraclez are schewede."

Then Arthur proceeds to dress and arm himself,

[Aftyre euesange, sir Arthure hyme se[l]fene
Wente to hys wardrope, and warpe of hys wedez,
Armede hym in a actone with orfraeez fulle ryche,
Abouen one that a jeryne of Acres owte ouer,
Abouen that a jesseraunt of jentylle maylez,
A jupone of Ierodyne jaggede in schredez;
He brayedez one a bacenett burneschte of sylver,
The beste that was in Basille, wyth bordurs ryche;
The creste and the coronalle, enclosed so faire
Wyth clasppis of clere golde, couched wyth stones;
The vesare, the aventaile, enarmede so faire,
Voyde with-owttyne vice, with wyndowes of sylver;
His gloues gaylyche gilte, and grauene at the hemmez,
With grayuez and gobelets, glorious of hewe;
He bracez a brade schelde, and his brande aschez,

and mounting a brown steed, rides to the spot where his knights await him.

Bounede hyme a broune stede, and one the bente houys;
He sterte tille his sterepe and stridez one lofte,
Streynez hyme stowttly, and sterys hyme faire,
Brochez the baye stede, and to the buske rydez,
And there hys knyghtes hyme kepede fulle clenlyche arayede.]

Thane they roode by that ryuer, that rynnyd so swythe,

There is a grove by the side of the river full of game and decked with flowers.

Thare the ryndez ouerrechez with realle bowghez;
The roo and the rayne-dere reklesse thare ronnene,
In ranez and in rosers to ryotte thame seluene;
The frithez ware floresch̄te with̄ flourez fulle many,
Wyth̄ fawcouns and fesantez of ferlyche hewez;

Here all birds abound,

Alle the feulez thare fleschez, that flyez with wengez,
ffore thare galede the gowke one greuez fulle lowde,
Wyth̄ alkyne gladchipe thay gladdene theme seluene:

and nightingales make sweet music.

Of the nyghtgale notez the noisez was swette,
They threpide wyth̄ the throstilles, thre hundreth̄ at ones!
That whate swowynge of watyre, and syngynge of byrdez,
It myghte salue hyme of sore, that sounde was neuere!
Thane ferkez this folke, and one fotte lyghttez,

Here they leave their horses, and

ffestenez theire faire stedez o ferrome by-tweñe;

And thene the kynge kenely comandyde hys knyghtez — the king bids his knights to await his return.
ffor to byde *with* theire blonkez, and bowne no forthyre,—
" ffore I wille seke this seynte by my selfe one,
And melle *with* this mayster mane, *that* this monte ȝemez;
And seyne salle ȝe offyre, aythyre aftyre *other*,
Menskfully at Saynt Mighelle fulle myghtty *with* Criste!"

The kyng coueris *the* cragge wyth cloughes fulle hye, — The king alone ascends the [leaf 63, back] mountain,
To the creste of the clyffe he clymbez one lofte;
Keste vpe hys vmbrere, and kenly he lukes,
Caughte of *the* colde wynde to comforthe hym seluene;
Two fyrez he fyndez fflawmande fulle hye,
The fourtedele a furlange be-twene *thus* he walkes;
The waye by *the* welle strandez he wandyrde hyme one,
To wette of *the* warlawe, whare *that* he lengez;
He ferkez to *the* fyrste fyre, and euene there he fyndez — and going to a fire which he sees he finds a woeful widow wringing her hands.
A wery wafulle wedowe, wryngande hire handez,
And gretande on a graue grysely teres,
Now merkyde one molde, sene myddaye it semede:
He saluȝede *that* sorowfulle *with* sittande wordez,
And fraynez aftyre the fende fairely there-aftyre. — He asks her concerning the giant.
Thane this wafulle wyfe vñ-wynly hym gretez,
Couerde vp on hire kneesse, and clappyde hire handez;
Said, " carefulle caremane, thow carpez to lowde! — She answers with terror, and warns him that he cannot hope to contend with so terrible a monster.
May ȝone warlawe wyt, he worows vs alle!
Weryd worthe *the* wyghte ay, that *the* thy wytt refede,
That mase the to wayfe here in *this*e wylde lakes!
I warne *the* fore wyrchipe, *thou* wylnez aftyr sorowe!
Whedyre buskes *thou* berne? vnblysside *thow* semes!
Wenez thow to brittene hyme *with* thy brande ryche?
Ware thow wyghttere thane Wade or Wawayne owthire,
Thow wynnys no wyrchipe, I warne the be-fore!
Thow saynned the vnsekyrly to seke to *these* mountez,
Siche sex ware to symple to semble *with* hyme one;
ffor and thow see hyme *with* syghte, the seruez no herte,
To sayne the sekerly, so semez hym huge!

Thow arte frely and faire, and in thy fyrste flourez,
Bot thow arte fay be my faythe, and *that* me for-thynkkys!

Digitized by Google

Fifty such as Arthur he could fell with his fist.

Ware syche fyfty one a felde, or one a faire erthe,
The freke walde with hys fyste felle 3ow at ones!

The poor duchess has been ravished and murdered by him, and the doleful widow, her foster-mother, has buried her,

Loo! here the duchez dere,—to daye was cho takyne,—
Depe doluene and dede, dyked in moldez;
He hade morthirede this mylde be myddaye war rongene,
With-owttyne mercy one molde, I not watte it ment:
He has forsede hir and fylede, and cho es fay leuede;
He slewe hir vn-slely, and slitt hir to the nauylle!
And here haue I bawmede hir, and beryede ther-aftyr;
ffor bale of the botelesse, blythe be I neuer!
Of alle the frendez cho hade, there folowede none aftyre,
Bot I, hir foster modyr of fyftene wynter!

and will remain there till death to bewail her.

To ferke of this farlande, fande salle I neuer,
Bot here be foundene on felde, tille I be fay leuede!"

[leaf 64]

Then Arthur says that he comes from the great King Arthur on a mission to treat with the giant.

Thane answers sir Arthure to that alde wyf;
"I am comyne fra the conquerour, curtaise and gentille,
As one of the hathelest of Arthur knyghtez,
Messenger to this myx, for mendemente of the pople,
To mele with this maister mane, that here this mounte 3emez;
To trete with this tyraunt for tresour of landez,
And take trew for a tyme, to bettyr may worthe."

The old wife tells him that he cares nothing for laws or treaties; that he regards not gold or treasure;

"3a, thire wordis are bot waste," quod this wif thane,
"ffor bothe landez and lythes ffulle lyttille by he settes;
Of rentez ne of rede golde rekkez he neuer,
ffor he wille lenge owt of lawe, as hym selfe thynkes,
With-owtene licence of lede, as lorde in his awene;

only he has a famous kirtle covered with hair,

Bot he has a kyrtille one, kepide for hyme seluene,
That was sponene in Spayne with specyalle byrdez,

which is bordered with the beards of mighty kings.

And sythyne garnescht in Grece fulle graythly to-gedirs;
It es hydede alle with hare hally al ouere,
And bordyrde with the berdez of burlyche kyngez,
Crispid and kombide, that kempis may knawe
Iche kynge by his colour, in kythe there he lengez;

The tribute of fifteen realms is sent to him on each Easter-eve.

Here the fermez he fangez of fyftene rewmez,
ffor ilke Esterne ewyne, how-euer that it falle,
They send it hyme sothely for saughte of the pople,

Digitized by Google

Sekerly at *th*at sesone *with* certayne knyghtez,
And he has aschede Arthure alle *th*is seuene wynntter.
ffor-thy hurdez he here, to owttraye hys pople,
Tille *th*e Bretones kynge haue burneschte his lyppys,
And sent his berde to that bolde wyt̄ his beste berynes;
Bot thowe hafe broghte *th*at berde, bowne the no forthire,
ffor it es butelesse bale, thowe biddez oghte elles;
ffor he has more tresour to take whene hyme lykez,
Thane euere aughte Arthure, or any of hys elders;
If thowe hafe broghte *th*e berde, he bese more blythe
Thane *th*owe gafe hym Burgoyne, or Bretayne *th*e more;
Bot luke nowe for charitee, *th*ow chasty thy lyppes,
That the no wordez eschape, whate so be-tydez;
Luke *th*i presante be priste, and presse hym bott lytille,
ffor he es at his sowper, he wille be sone greuyde.
And *th*ow my concelle doo, *th*ow dosse of thy clothes,
And knele in thy kyrtylle, and calle hym thy lorde.
He sowppes alle *th*is sesone *with* seuene knaue childre,
Choppid in a chargour of chalke whytt sylu*er*,
With pekille *and* powdyre of precious spycez,
And pyment fulle plenteuous of Portyngale wynes;
Thre balefulle birdez his brochez *th*ey turne,
*Th*at byddez his bedgatt, his byddynge to wyrche;
Siche foure scholde be fay *with*-in foure hourez,
Are his fylt̄ ware fillede, that his flesc̄ ȝernes."

"ȝa, I haue broghte *th*e berde," quod he, "the bettyre me lykez;
ffor-thi wille I boune me, and bere it my seluene;
Bot, lefe, walde *th*ow lere me whare *th*at lede lengez,
I salle alowe *th*e and I liffe, oure Lorde so me helpe!"
"fferke fast to *th*e fyre," quod cho, "that flawmez so hye;
Thare fillis *th*at fende hyme, fraist whene the lykez;
Bot thow moste seke more southe, sydlyn̄gs a lyttille,
ffor he wille hafe sent hym selfe sex myle large."

To *th*e sowre of *th*e reke he soghte at *th*e gayneste,
Sayned hyme sekerly *with* certeyne wordez,
And sydlyn̄gs of *th*e segge the syghte had he rechide,

He has long wished for the beard of Arthur.

If he has brought the beard, the giant will be blithe.

But he must approach him with due caution,

and had better doff his clothes and kneel to him.

He sups at this season on seven male children chopped in a charger of chalk-white silver.

Three wretched women turn his spits for him.

[leaf 64, back]

"Yes," says Arthur, "I have indeed brought this beard; but show me where I shall find him."

Then she directs him to approach the great fire.

Digitized by Google

Arthur goes to the fire, and finds the giant lying extended with his back to the fire, picking the thigh of a man.

How vn-semly *th*at sott satt sowpande hym one;
He lay lenand one lange, lugande vn-faire,
*Th*e thee of a manns lymme lyfte vp by *th*e haunche;
His bakke, and his bewschers, and his brode lendez,
He bekez by *th*e bale-fyre, and breklesse hyme semede;

Roasts of the flesh of men and cattle are spitted together.

*Th*are ware rostez fulle ruyde, and rewfulle bredez,
Beerynes and bestaile brochede to-geders;
Cowlefulle cramede of crysmede childyre,
Sum as brede brochede, and bierdez *th*ame tournede.

Then Arthur's heart bleeds for the woes inflicted by this wretch. He fastens on his shield and brandishes his bright sword,

And *th*ane this comlych̄ kynge, by-cause of his pople,
His herte bledez for bale, one bent ware he standez!
Thane he dressede one his schelde, schuntes no lengere,
Braundesche his bryghte swerde by *th*e bryghte hiltez,
Raykez to-warde *th*e renke reghte *with* a ruyde wille,

and right boldly addresses the giant.

And hyely hailsez *th*at hulke *with* hawtayne wordez,—
"Now, alle-weldand Gode, *th*at wyrscheppez vs alle,
Giff the sorowe and syte, sotte, there thow lygges,

He upbraids him with his vile crimes and his unclean meat.

ffor the fulsomeste freke that fourmede was euere!
ffoully thow fedys the, *th*e fende haue thi saule!
Here es cury vn-clene, carle, be my trowthe,
Caffe of creatours alle, thow curssede wriche!

For his horrible murders of Christian children,

Be-cause that *th*ow killide has *th*ise cresmede childyre,
Thow has marters made, and broghte oute of lyfe,
*Th*at here are brochede one bente, and brittenede *with* thi handez,

he would now take vengeance on him, by the aid of St Michael.

I salle merke *th*e thy mede, as *th*ou has myche serfede,
Thurgh̄e myghte of seynt Mighelle, *th*at *th*is monte ȝemes!
And for this faire ladye, *th*at *th*ow has fey leuyde,
And *th*us forcede one foulde, for fylth̄ of *th*i selfene!
Dresse the now, dogge-sone, the deuelle haue *th*i saule!
ffor *th*ow salle dye this day, thurghe dynt of my handez!"

Then the giant stared with amazement, and gnashed his teeth with fury.

Thane glopnede *th*e glotone and glorede vn-faire;
He grennede as a grewhounde, *with* grysly tuskes;
He gapede, he groned faste, *with* grucchande latez,
ffor grefe of *th*e gude kynge, *th*at hyme *with* grame gretez!
His fax and his foretoppe was filterede to-geders,

Digitized by Google

And owte of his face fome ane halfe fote large ; — Out of his mouth came smoke.
His frount and his forheuede, alle was it ouer, — His forehead was like the fell of a frog.
As the felle of a froske, and fraknede it semede,
Huke-nebbyde as a hawke, and a hore berde, — He was hook-nosed like a [leaf 65] hawk, with hair up to his eyes, and beetle brows.
And herede to the hole eyghne with hyngande browes ;
Harske as a hunde-fisch, hardly who so lukez,
So was the hyde of that hulke hally al ouer ! — His skin was hard as that of a dog-fish ; his ears huge and ugly ; his eyes horrible and burning.
Erne had he fulle huge, and vgly to schewe,
With eghne fulle horreble, and ardauunt for sothe ;
fflatt-mowthede as a fluke, with fleryande lyppys, — Flat-mouthed, with grinning lips, and jaws like a bear.
And the flesche in his fortethe fowly as a bere.
His berde was brothy and blake, that tille his brest rechede, — A black beard reached to his breast, with mighty bristles.
Grassede as a mereswyne with corkes fulle huge,
And alle falterde the flesche in his foule lippys, — The flesh of his lips was in uneven folds, each fold, like an outlaw, twisted itself out.
Ilke wrethe as a wolfe-heuede, it wraythe owtt at ones !
Bullenekkyde was that bierne, and brade in the scholders, — He was bull-necked and broad in the shoulders ; breasted like a boar, with huge bristles ; his arms like an oak ; his limbs and flanks loathly ; shovel-footed and scaly, with unshapely shanks ;
Brok-brestede as a brawne, with brustils fulle large,
Ruyd armes as an ake with rusclede sydes,
Lyme and leskes fulle lothyne, leue ȝe for sothe :
Schouelle-fotede was that schalke, and schaylande hyme semyde,
With schankez vn-schaply, schowande to-gedyrs ;
Thykke theese as a thursse, and thikkere in the hanche, — of gigantic thickness in his haunches.
Greesse growene as a galte, fulle grylych he lukez !
Who the lenghe of the lede lelly accountes,
ffro the face to the fote, was fyfe fadome lange ! — In height, full five fathoms.
Thane stertez he vp sturdely one two styffe schankez, — Up starts this fell giant, and seizing an iron club, aims a blow at Arthur.
And sone he caughte hyme a clubb alle of clene yryne !
He walde hafe kyllede the kynge with his kene wapene,
Bot thurghe the crafte of Cryste ȝit the carle failede ;
The creest and the coronalle, the claspes of syluer,
Clenly with his clubb he crasschede doune at onez !
The kynge castes vp his schelde, and couers hym faire, — The king catches it on his shield, and returns the blow with his sword right upon the forehead.
And with his burlyche brande a box he hyme reches ;
ffulle butt in the frunt the fromonde he hittez,

Digitized by Google

The bright blade pierces to the brain.
The giant wipes his face with his hands, and strikes fiercely at the king.
Arthur draws back,

That the burnyscht blade to *the* brayne ry*nn*nez;
He feyede his fysnamye *with* his foule hondez,
And frappez faste at hys face fersely *ther*-aftyre!
The kyng chaungez his fote, eschewes a lyttille, 1116
Ne had he eschapede *th*at choppe, cheuede had euylle;
He folowes in fersly, and festenesse a dynte

and then drives his sword into the giant's haunch.

Hye vpe one *the* hanche, *with* his harde wapyne,
That he hillid *the* swerde halfe a fote large; 1120
The hott blode of *the* hulke vn-to *the* hilte rynnez,
Ewyne in-to jumette the gyaunt he hyttez,
Iust to *the* genitales,[1] and jaggede *th*ame in sondre!

The monster roars and strikes at random.
So mighty is his stroke, that it penetrates a sword's length into the ground.
The king nearly swoons at the noise of the blow, but quickly strikes him with his sword.
His entrails and blood gush out.

Thane he romyede and rarede, and ruydly he strykez
ffulle egerly at Arthure, and one the erthe hittez 1125
A swerde lenghe *with*-in *the* swarthe, he swappez at ones,
That nere swounes *the* kynge for swoughe of his dynttez!
Bot 3it the kynge swe*per*ly fulle swythe he by-swenkez,
Swappez in *with* the swerde *th*at it *the* swange brystedde;
Bothe *the* guttez and the gorre guschez owte at ones,
*Th*at alle englaymez *the* gresse, one grou*n*de *ther* he standez! 1131

[leaf 65, back]
Then throwing away his club, the giant seizes Arthur in his arms.

Thane he castez the clubb, and the kynge hentez,
On *the* creeste of *the* cragg he caughte hyme in armez,
And enclosez hyme clenly, to cruschene hys rybbez;
So harde haldez he *th*at hende, *th*at nere his herte brystez!

The baleful birds pray for the success of Arthur.

*Th*ane *the* balefulle bierdez bownez to *the* erthe, 1136
Kneland and cryande, and clappide *th*eire handez,—
"Criste comforthe 3one knyghte, and kepe hym fro sorowe,
And latte neue*r* 3one fende felle hyme olyfe!"

They have a fearful wrestling match, and fall from the top of the cliff down to the shore.

3itt es *the* warlow so wyghte, he welters hyme vndere,
Wrothely *th*ai wrythyne and wrystille to-gederz, 1141
Welters and walowes ou*er* *with*-in *th*ase buskez,
Tumbellez and tu*rn*es faste, and terez *th*aire wedez,
Vn-tenderly fro *the* toppe *th*ai tiltine to-gederz; 1144
Whilome Arthure ou*er*, and o*ther*-while vndyre,
ffro *the* heghe of *the* hylle vn-to *the* harde roche;

[1] MS. genitates.

Digitized by Google

They feyne neuer are they falle at the flode merkes;
Bot Arthur with ane anlace egerly smyttez,
And hittez euer in the hulke vp to the hiltez.
The theeffe at the dede-thrawe so throly hyme thryngez,
That three rybbys in his syde he thrystez in sundere!
Thene sir Kayous the kene vn-to the kynge styrtez,—
Said, "allas! we are lorne, my lorde es confundede,
Ouer-fallene with a fende! vs es fulle hapnede!
We mone be forfetede in faith, and flemyde for euer!"
Thay hafe vp hys hawberke thane, and handilez ther-vndyre,
His hyde and his haunche eke, one heghte to the schuldrez,
His flawnke and his feletez, and his faire sydez,
Bothe his bakke and his breste, and his bryghte armez.
Thay ware fayne that they fande no flesche entamede,
And for that journee made joye, thir gentille knyghttez.
"Now, certez," saise Sir Bedwere, "it semez, be my Lorde!
He sekez seyntez bot seldene, the sorere he grypes,
That thus clekys this corsaunt owte of thir heghe clyffez,
To carye forthe siche a carle at close hym in siluere;
Be Myghelle, of syche a makk I hafe myche wondyre
That euer owre soueraygne Lorde suffers hyme in heuene;
And alle seyntez be syche, that seruez oure Lorde,
I salle neuer no seynt bee, be my fadyre sawle!"
Thane bouredez the bolde kynge at Bedvere wordez,—
"This seynt haue I soghte, so helpe me owre Lorde!
ffor-thy brayd owtte thi brande, and broche hyme to the herte;
Be sekere of this sergeaunt, he has me sore greuede!
I faghte noghte wyth syche a freke this fyftene wyntyrs,
Bot in the montez of Araby I mett syche another;
He was the forcyere be ferre that had I nere fundene,
Ne had my fortune bene faire, fey had I leuede!
Onone stryke of his heuede, and stake it there-aftyre,
Gife it to thy sqwyere, fore he es wele horsede;

Arthur stabs the giant,

who in his death-struggle breaks three of Arthur's ribs.

His knights find him lying exhausted.

They examine him and find no wound.

Sir Bedever speaks facetiously of this saint whom Arthur had sought.

If all saints are like him no saint would he be.

Arthur bids him stab the monster to the heart, to make sure of him, for only once before had he met with such a terrible foe.

He bids them cut off his head,

Digitized by Google

and bear it first to Sir Hoel, [leaf 66]

Bere it to sir Howelle, that es in harde bandez,
And byd hyme herte hym wele, his enmy es destruede!

then to Barflete, and set it on the barbican.

Syne bere it to Bareflete, and brace it in yryne,
And sett it on the barbycane, biernes to schewe.

His sword and shield and the giant's club are to be fetched from the hill.

My brande and my brode schelde apone the bent lyggez,
On the creeste of the cragge, thare fyrste we encontrede,
And the clubb thar-by, alle of clene irene,
That many Cristene has kyllyde in Constantyne landez;
fferke to the farlande, and fetche me that wapene,
And late founde tille oure flete, in flode thare it lengez.

They may take what treasure they will; all Arthur desires is the kirtle and the club.

If thow wylle any tresour, take whate the lykez;
Haue I the kyrtylle and the clubb, I coueite noghte elles!"

Now they caire to the cragge, thise comlyche knyghtez,
And broghte hyme the brade schelde, and his bryghte wapene,

The affair was kept a secret till break of day.

The clubb and the cotte alls, Syr Kayous hym seluene,
And kayres with conquerour, the kyngez to schewe;
That in couerte the kynge helde closse to hym seluene,
Whilles clene day fro the clowde clymbyd on lofte.

Be that to courte was comene clamour fulle huge,
And be-fore the comlyche kynge they knelyd alle at ones,—

Then the people kneel before Arthur, and thank and praise him for slaying the giant.

"Welcome, oure liege lorde, to lang has thow duellyde!
Gouernour vndyr Gode, graytheste and noble,
To whame grace es graunted, and gyffene at his wille!
Now thy comly come has comforthede vs alle!
Thow has in thy realtee reuengyde thy pople!
Thurghe helpe of thy hande, thyne enmyse are struyede,
That has thy renkes ouer-ronne, and refte theme theire childyre!
Whas neuer rewme owte of araye so redyly releuede!"

Thane the conquerour cristenly carpez to his pople,

Arthur ascribes all to God.

"Thankes Gode," quod he, "of this grace, and no gome elles,
ffor it was neuer manns dede, bot myghte of Hym selfene,
Or myracle of hys modyre, that mylde es tille alle!"

He bids his followers distribute

He somond than the schippemene scharpely ther-aftyre,

Digitized by Google

To schake furthe *with the* schyre mene to schifte *the* gudez; — the giant's treasure among the clergy and people.
" Alle *the* myche tresour *that* traytour had wonnene,
To comouns of the contré, clergye and *other*,
Luke it be done and delte to my dere pople,
That none pleyne of theire parte, o peyne of 3*our* lyfez."
He comande hys cosyne, *with* knyghtlyche wordez,
To make a kyrke on *the* cragg, ther the corse lengez, — A church and convent are to be built on the cliff.
And a couent there-in, Criste for to serfe,
In mynde of *that* martyre, *that* in *the* monte rystez.

Qwen Sir Arthur the kynge had kylled *the* gyaunt, — When the giant is slain, Arthur moves from Barflete to Castle Blanc.
Than blythely fro Bareflete he buskes one *the* morne,
With his batelle one brede, by *tha* blythe stremes;
To-warde Castelle Blanke he chesez hym the waye,
Thurghe a faire champayne, vndyr schalke hyllis;
The kyng fraystez a furth ouer the fresche strandez,
ffoundez with his faire folke ouer as hym lykez: — [leaf 66, back]
ffurthe stepes that steryne, and strekez his tentis
One a strenghe by a streme, in *thas* straytt landez.
Onone aftyre myddaye, in the mene while,
Thare comez two messangers of tha fere marchez, — Then come two messengers from the Marshal of France, who acquaint Arthur
ffra *the* marschalle of Fraunce, and menskfully hym gretes,
Be-soghte hyme of sucour, and saide hyme *this*e wordez,—
" Sir, thi marschalle, *thi* mynistre, thy mercy be-sekez,
Of thy mekille magestee, fore mendement of thi pople,
Of *this*e marchez-mene, that thus are myskaryede, — with the mischief which the Emperor Lucius is working in France,
And thus merrede amange, maugree theire eghne;
I witter *the* *the* emperour es entirde in-to Fraunce,
With ostes of enmyse, orrible and huge;
Brynnez in Burgoyne thy burghes so ryche,
And brittenes thi baronage, that bieldez *thare*-in;
He encrochez kenely by craftez of armez,
Countrese and castelles *that* to thy coroun lañgez; — seizing castles,
Confoundez thy comouns, clergy and *other*; — confounding the commons,
Bot thow comfurth theme, *sir* kynge, couer salle they neuer!
He fellez forestez fele, forrayse thi landez, — felling forests,

Digitized by Google

ffrysthez no fraunchez, bot fraisez the pople;
taking goods, *Thus* he fellez thi folke, and fangez theire gudez!
ffremedly the Franche tunge fey es be-lefede.
He drawes in-to douce Fraunce, as Duche-men tellez,
Dresside with his dragouns, dredfulle to schewe;
Alle to dede they dyghte with dynttys of swerddez,
killing dukes and douze-peers. Dukez and dusperes, that dreches thare-ine;
ffor-thy the lordez of the lande, ladys and other,
Prayes the for Petyr luffe, the apostylle of Rome,
Sen thow arte presant in place, that thow wille profy make
Therefore they desire Arthur's help. To that perilous prynce, be processe of tyme.
He ayers by 3one hilles, 3one heghe holtez vndyr,
Hufes thare with hale strenghe of haythene kyngez;
Helpe nowe for His lufe, that heghe in heuene sittez,
And talke tristly to theme, that thus vs destroyes!"
He sends some of his knights to the emperor, The kynge biddis sir Boice, "buske the be-lyfe!
Take with the sir Berille, and Bedwere the ryche,
Sir Gawayne and sir Gryme, these galyarde knyghtez
And graythe 3owe to 3one grene wode, and gose ou ther nedes;
Saise to syr Lucius, to vn-lordly he wyrkez,
Thus letherly agaynes law to lede my pople;
I lette hyme or oghte lange, 3if me the lyffe happene,
Or many lyghte salle lawe, that hyme ouere lande folow
Comande hym kenely wyth crewelle wordez,
to bid him depart out of his kingdom, or meet him in battle. Cayre owte of my kyngryke with his kydd knyghtez
In caase that he wille noghte, that cursede wreche,
[leaf 67] Come for his curtaisie, and countere me ones!
Thane salle we rekkene fulle rathe, whatt ryghte that claymes,
Thus to ryot this rewme and raunsone the pople!
Thare salle it derely be delte with dynttez of handez
The Dryghttene at Domesdaye dele as hyme lykes!"
The knights go on their errand glittering in gold upon great steeds. Now thei graythe theme to goo, theis galyarde knyghtt
Alle gleterande in golde, appone grete stedes,
To-warde the grene wode, that with growndene wapy

Digitized by Google

To grete wele the grett lorde, that wolde be grefede sone.
Thise hende houez on a hille by *the* holte eynes,
Be-helde *the* howsynge fulle hye of hathene kynges— They see the luxurious camp of the heathen kings,
They herde in theire herbergage hundrethez fulle many,
Hornez of olyfantez fulle helych̄ blawene—
Palaisez proudliche pyghte, *th*at palyd ware ryche,
Of palle and of p*ur*pure, wyth̄ p*re*cyous stones; 1288
Pensels and pomelle of ryche prynce armez,
Pighte in *the* playne mede, *the* pople to schewe.
And thane the Romayns so ryche had arayede their tentez, and the rich tents of the Romans.
On rawe by *the* ryuere, vndyr *the* round hillez, 1292
The emp*erour* for hono*ur* ewyne in the myddes,
Wyth egles al ou*er* ennelled so faire:
And saw hyme and *the* sowdane, and senato*urs* many, The Roman emperor and the sultan are going to banquet together.
Seke to-warde a sale *with* sextene kyngez, 1296
Syland softely in, swettly by theme selfene,
To sowpe withe *th*at sou*er*aygne, ffulle selcouthe metez.
Nowe they wende ou*er* the watyre, *th*ise wyrchipfulle knyghttez,
Thurghe *the* wode to *the* wone, there the wyese rystez;
Reght as *th*ey hade weschene, and went to *the* table, The knights present themselves.
Sir Wawayne *the* worthethy vn-wynly he spekes,— Sir Gawaine delivers the message,
"The myghte *and* *the* maiestee, *th*at menskes vs alle,
That was merked and made thurghe *the* myghte of Hym seluene, 1304
Gyffe 3ow sytte in 3o*ur* sette, Sowdane and o*ther*,
That here are semblede in sale, vn-sawghte mott 3e worthe!
And *the* fals heretyke, *th*at emp*erour* hym callez,
That ocupyes in erroure the empyre of Rome, 1308
Sir Arthure herytage, *th*at hono*ur*able kynge,
That alle his auncestres aughte bot Vtere hyme one,
That ilke cursynge *th*at Cayme kaghte for his brothyre, and upbraids with haughty words the Roman emperor;
Cleffe one *the*, cukewalde, *with* crouñe ther thow lengez,
ffor the vnlordlyeste lede *th*at I on lukede eu*er*! 1313
My lorde me*r*uailles hym mekylle, mane, be my trouthe,

Digitized by Google

Why thow morthires his mene, *th*at no mysse serues,
Comou*n*s of *th*e cou*n*tré, clergye and o*ther*,
*Th*at are noghte coupable *th*er-in, ne knawes noght in armez.
ffor-thi the comelyche kynge, curtays and noble,
bids him depart, or do battle with [leaf 67, back] the king.
Comandez *th*e kenely to kaire of his landes,
Ore elles for thy knyghthede encontre hyme ones;
Sen *th*ow couettes the corouñe, latte it be declarede!
I hafe dyschargide me here, chalange whoo lykez,
Be-fore alle thy cheualrye, cheftaynes and o*ther*.
Then he asks for an answer.
Schape vs an ansuere, and schunte *th*ow no lengere,
*Th*at we may schifte at *th*e schorte, and schewe to my lorde."
The emperor replies,
The emp*erour* ansuerde wyth̄ austeryne wordez,
"3e are w*ith* myne enmy, sir Arthure hyme seluene!
It es none hono*ur* to me to owttray hys knyghttez,
*Th*oghe 3e bee iro*us* mene, *th*at ayres one his nedez;
Bot say to thy sou*er*aygne, I send hyme thes wordez,
Ne ware it for reu*er*ence of my ryche table,
threatening the knights for their audacity.
*Th*ou sulde repent fulle rathe of *th*i ruyde wordez!
Siche a rebawde as *th*owe rebuke any lordez,
Wyth theire retenuz arrayede, fulle realle *and* noble!
He will stay in Arthur's land as long as he pleases,
Here wille I sugg*our*ne, whilles me lefe thynkes,
And sythene seke in by Sayne w*ith* solace *ther*-aftere;
Ensegge all *th*a cetese be *th*e salte strandez,
and destroy his cities and castles.
And seyne ryde in by Rone, *th*at rynnez so faire,
And of alle his ryche castelles rusche doune *th*e wallez;
I salle noghte lefe in Paresche, by processe of tyme,
His parte of a pechelyne, proue whene hyme lykes!"
Whereupon Sir Gawaine desires himself to fight with him,
"Now, certez," sais sir Wawayne, "myche wondyre haue I,
*Th*at syche an alfyne as thow dare speke syche wordez!
I had leu*er* thene alle Fraunce, that heuede es of rewmes,
but Sir Gayous, uncle to the Roman emperor, answers and charges the British knights with being braggarts,
ffyghte w*ith* the faythefully one felde be oure one."
Thane answers sir Gayo*us* fulle gobbede wordes,—
Was eme to *th*e emp*erour*, and erle hyme selfene,—
"Euere ware *th*es Bretou*n*s braggers of olde!

Digitized by Google

Loo! how he brawles hyme for hys bryghte wedes,
As he myghte bryttyne vs alle with his brande ryche!
3itt he berkes myche boste, 3one boy there he standes!"
Thane greuyde sir Gawayne at his grett wordes, 1352
Graythes to-warde the gome with grucchande herte;
With hys stelyne brande he strykes of hys heuede,
And sterttes owtte to hys stede, and with his stale wendes!
Thurghe the wacches they wente, thes wirchipfulle knyghtez, 1356
And fyndez in theire fare-waye wondyrlyche many;
Ouer the watyre they wente by wyghtnesse of horses,
And tuke wynde as they walde by the wodde hemmes.
Thane folous frekly one fote frekkes ynewe, 1360
And of the Romayns arrayed appone ryche stedes,
Chasede thurghe a champayne oure cheualrous knyghtez,
Tille a cheefe forest, one schalke whitte horses.
Bot a freke alle in fyne golde, and fretted in salle, 1364
Come forthermaste on a fresone, in flawmande wedes;
A faire floreschte spere in fewtyre he castes,
And folowes faste one owre folke, and freschelye ascryez,
Thane sir Gawayne the gude appone a graye stede,
He gryppes hym a grete spere, and graythely hyme hittez;
Thurghe the guttez in-to the gorre he gyrdes hyme ewyne,
That the groundene stele glydez to his herte! 1371
The gome and the grette horse at the grounde lyggez,
ffulle gryselyche gronande, for grefe of his woundez.
Thane presez a preker ine, fulle proudely arayede,
That beres alle of pourpour, palyde with sylver:
Byggly on a broune stede he profers fulle large. 1376
He was a paynyme of Perse that thus hyme persuede.
Sir Boys vn-abaiste alle he buskes hyme a-gaynes,
With a bustous launce he berez hyme thurghe,
That the breme and the brade schelde appone the bente lyggez! 1380
And he bryngez furthe the blade, and bownez to his felowez.

On this Sir Gawaine rushes at him and strikes off his head.

Then the British knights fly with all speed.

The Romans give chase.

[leaf 68]
The foremost of the pursuers is slain by Sir Gawaine.

Another knight, a paynim of Persia, is thrust through by Sir Bois.

Digitized by Google

Sir Feltemour seeks to avenge Sir Gayous,

Thane *sir* Feltem*our* of myghte, a man mekylle praysed
Was mouede on*e* his manere, and manacede full*e* fast
He graythes to *sir* Gawayne graythely to wyrche, 138
ffor grefe of *sir* Gayo*us*, *th*at es on*e* grounde leuede.
Than*e sir* Gawayne was glade ; agayne hym*e* he rydez
Wyt*h* Galut*h* his gude swerde graythely hym*e* hyttez

but Sir Gawaine cleaves him asunder.

The knyghte on*e th*e co*ur*sere he cleuede in sondyre, 138
Clenlyche fro *th*e croune his corse he dyuysyde,
And *thus* he killez *th*e knyghte w*ith* his kydd wapen*e*

Then a rich man of Rome suggests a retreat.

Than a ryche man*e* of Rome relyede to his byerns,—
"It salle repent vs fulle sore and we ryde forthire !
Ȝone are bolde bosturs, *th*at syche bale wyrkez ; 139
It be-felle hym fulle foule, *th*at *th*ame so fyrste namede.

The rich Romans return,

Thane *th*e riche Romayns reto*ur*nes *th*aire brydilles
To *th*aire tentis in tene, telles theire lordez
How *sir* Marschalle de Mowne es on *th*e monte lefede
ffore-justyde at that jo*ur*nee, for his grett japez.
Bot thare chasez on*e* oure men*e* cheuallro*us* knyghtez,

but five thousand horsemen still pursue the knights,

ffyfe thosande folke appon*e* faire stedes, 140
ffaste to a foreste ou*er* a felle watyr,
That fillez fro *th*e falow see fyfty myle large.

and fall upon an ambush of Britons,

Thare ware Bretons enbuschide, and banarettez noble,
Of *th*e cheualrye cheefe of *th*e kyngez chambyre, 140
Seese them*e* chase oure men*e*, and changen*e th*eire horse
And choppe doun*e* cheftaynes, that they moste chargyd

who break out suddenly on them,

Than*e th*e enbuschement of Bretons brake owte at ones
Brothely at banere, and Bedwyne knyghtez, 140
Arrestede of *th*e Romayns, *th*at by *th*e fyrthe rydez,
Alle *th*e realeste renkes *th*at to Rome lengez ;
Thay ich̄e on *th*e enmyse and egerly strykkys,

with shouts of "Arthur."

Erles of Inglande, and "Arthure !" ascryes, 141
Thrughe brenes and bryghte scheldez, brestez they thyrle
Bretons of the boldeste with̄ theire bryghte swerdez.

[leaf 68, back]

Thare was Romayns ou*er*-redyn*e*, and ruydly wondyde

The Romans are defeated and driven back,

Arrestede as rebawdez, with̄ ryoto*us* knyghttez ! 141
The Romaynes owte of araye remouede at ones,
And rydes awaye in a rowtte, for reddoure it semys !

Digitized by Google

To *th*e senat*our* Petyr a sandes-mane es com*m*yne,
And saide, "*sir*, sekyrly, ȝ*our* seggez are supprysside!"
Than tene thowsande mene he semblede at ones,
And sett sodanly one oure seggez, by *th*e salte strandez;
Than ware Bretons abaiste, and greuede a lyttille,
Bot ȝit the banerettez bolde, and bachellers noble,
Brekes that battailles[1] *with* brestez of stedes;
Sir Boice and his bolde mene myche bale wyrkes!
The Romaynes redyes *th*ane, arrayez *th*ame better,
And al to-ruscheez oure mene withe theire ryste horsez,
Arestede of the richeste of *th*e Rounde Table,
Ou*er*-rydez oure rerewarde, and grette rewthe wyrkes!
Thane the Bretons on *th*e bente habyddez no lengere,
Bot fleede to *th*e foreste, and the feelde leuede;
Sir Beryll*e* es borne downe and *sir* Boice takene,
The beste of oure bolde mene vnblythely wondyde;
Bot ȝitt oure stale one a strenghe stotais a lyttille,
Alle to-stonayede *with th*e stokes[2] of *th*a steryne knyghtez;
Made sorowe fore theire sou*er*aygne, *th*at so *th*are was nomene,
Be-soughte Gode of socure, sende whene hym lykyde!
Than com*m*ez *sir* Idrus, armede vp at alle ryghttez,
Wyth fyue hundrethe mene appone faire stedes,
ffraynez faste at oure folke freschely *th*are-aftyre,
ȝif *ther* frendez ware ferre, *th*at one *th*e felde fou*n*dide.
Thane sais *sir* Gawayne, "so me God helpe!
We hafe bene chased to daye, and chullede as hares,
Rebuyked *with* Romaynes appone *th*eire ryche stedez,
And we lurkede vndyr lee as lowrande wreches!
I luke neu*er* one my lorde *th*e dayes of my lyfe,
And we so lytherly hyme helpe, *th*at hyme so wele lykede!"
Thane the Bretons brothely brochez theire stedez,
And boldly in batelle appone *th*e bent rydes;
Alle *th*e ferse mene be-fore frekly ascryes,
fferkand in *th*e foreste, to freschene *th*ame selfene.
The Romaynes thane redyly arrayes theme bettyre,

but the Senator Peter sends ten thousand men.

The Britons are repulsed, and fly to the forest.

Sir Beryll is borne down and Sir Boice taken,

but again they make a little stand,

grieving for the loss of their leader, and pray for succour.

Sir Idrus comes to their aid with five hundred men.

Sir Gawaine laments the check which Arthur's men had received.

The British return to the fray.

The Romans prepare themselves against them.

[1] MS. baitailles. [2] ? strokes.

Digitized by Google

One rawe on a rowm felde, reghttez theire wapyns,
By *th*e ryche reuare, and rewles *th*e pople;
And with reddo*ur* s*ir* Boice es in areste haldene. 1456
Now thei semblede vnsaughte by *th*e salte strandez;
Saddly theis sekere me*n*n settys *th*eire dynttez,
W*ith* lufly launcez one lofte they luyschene to-gedyres,
In Lorayne so lordlye on leppande stedes. 1460

A fierce battle ensues.

Thare ware gomes thurghe-girde w*ith* grundyne wapynes,
Grisely gayspande w*ith* grucchande lotes!
Grete lordes of Greke greffede so hye;
[leaf 69] Swyftly with swerdes, they swappene there-aftyre, 1464
Swappez doune ffulle swe*per*lye swelltande knyghtez,[1]
That alle swellttez one swarthe, that they ou*er*-swyngene,
So many sweys in swoghe swounande att ones!

Sir Gawaine does mighty deeds of valour.

Syr Gaweayne the gracyous fulle graythelye he wyrkkes,
The gretteste he gretez wyth gryeslye wondēs;
Wyth Galuth he gyrdez doune fulle galyarde knyghtez,
ffore greefe of *th*e grett lorde so grymlye he strykez!
He rydez furthe ryallye and redely there-aftyre, 1472
Thare this realle renke was in areste haldene;
He ryfez *th*e rannke stele, he ryghttez *th*eire brenez,
And refte theme the ryche mane, and rade to his strenghes.

The Senator Peter comes against him,

The senato*ur* Pet*er* thane p*er*sewede hyme aftyre, 1476
Thurghe *th*e presse of *th*e pople, wyth his pryce knyghttes;
Appertly fore *th*e prysonere proues his strenghes,
Wyth prekers the proudeste that to *th*e presse lengez;
Wrothely one the wrange hande s*ir* Gawayne he strykkes,
Wyth a wapene of were vnwy*n*nly hyme hittez; 1481

but in spite of him Sir Gawaine rescues Sir Boice.

The breny one *th*e bakhalfe he brystez in sondyre!
Bot ȝit he broghte forthe s*ir* Boyce, for alle *th*eire bale biernez!

Rejoiced at this the British press on more boldly.

Thane *th*e Bretones boldely braggene *th*eire tromppez,
And fore blysse of s*ir* Boyce was broghte owtte of bandez,
Boldely in batelle they bere doune knyghtes; 1486
With brandes of broune stele *th*ey brettened maylez;
*Th*ay stekede stedys in stoure w*ith* stelene wapynes,

[1] MS. knynghtez.

Digitized by Google

And alle stewede wyth̄ strenghe, *that* stode *the*me agaynes!
Sir Idrus fitz Ewayne *thane* "Arthure!" ascryeez, — Sir Idrus, with sixteen knights, attacks the senator,
Assemblez one *the* senato*ur* wyth sextene knyghttez,
Of *the* sekereste mene *that* to oure syde lengede. 1492
Sodanly in a soppe they sett in att ones,
ffoynes faste att *the* fore breste *with* flawmande swerdez,
And feghttes faste att *the* fronte freschely *th*are-aftyre;
ffelles fele on *the* felde appone *the* ferrere syde, 1496
ffey on *the* faire felde by *th*a fresche strandez.

Bot *sir* Idrus fytz Ewayne ante*r*s hyme seluene,
And ente*r*s in anly, and egyrly strykez,
Sekez to *the* senato*ur* and sesez his brydille, 1500
Vnsaughtely he saide hyme *the*se sittande wordez,—
"3elde *the*, *sir*, 3apely, 3ife *thou th*i lyfe 3ernez, — and takes him prisoner.
ffore gyftez *that thow* gyffe may, *thou* 3eme now *the* selfene;
ffore dredlez dreche *thow*, or droppe any wylez, 1504
Thow salle dy *th*is daye thorowe dyntt of my handez!"
"I ascente," q*uod the* senato*ur*, "so me Criste helpe! — The senator desires to be brought to the king.
So *that* I be safe broghte be-fore *the* kynge seluene;
Raunsone me resonabillye, as I may ou*er*-reche, 1508
Aftyre my renttez in Rome may redyly forthire."

Thane answers *sir* Idrus wit̄ austeryne wordez, — Sir Idrus answers him roughly.
"Thow salle hafe condycyone, as *the* kynge lykes,
Whene thow comes to *the* kyth̄ there the co*ur*te haldez; [leaf 69, back]
In caase his concelle bee to kepe the no langere, 1513
To be killyde at his co*m*mandment his knyghttez be-fore."
*Th*ay ledde hyme furthe in *the* rowte, and lached ofe his wedes,
Lefte hym wyth Lyonelle and Lowelle hys brothire. — He gives the senator into the charge of Sir Lionel and Sir Lowell.

O-lawe in *the* launde *th*ane, by *the* lythe strandez,
Sir Luci*us* lygge-mene[1] loste are fore eu*er*!
The senato*ur* Pet*er* es pryson*er* takyne! 1519
Of Perce and of Porte Iaffe fulle many price knyghtez,
And myche pople wyth alle p*er*ischede *th*ame selfene!
ffor presse of *the* passage, they plungede[2] at onez!
Thare myghte mene see Romaynez rewfully wondyde, — Many of the Romans are slain.

[1] *Or* legge-mene. [2] MS. *repeats* they plungede.

Digitized by Google

Ouer-redyne with renkes of the Round Table!
In the raike of the furthe they rightene theire brenys,
That rane alle one reede blode redylye alle ouer;
They raughte in the rerewarde fulle ryotous knyghtez,
ffor raunsone[1] of rede golde and realle stedys;
Radly relayes, and restez theire horsez,

The knights ride back towards the king, and send him the news of their success.

In rowtte to the ryche kynge they rade al at onez.
A knyghte cayrez be-fore, and to the kynge telles,—
"Sir, here commez thy messangerez with myrthez fro the mountez,
Thay hafe bene machede to daye with mene of the marchez,
ffore-maglede in the marras with meruailous knyghtez!
We hafe foughtene in faithe, by 3one fresche strandez,
With the frekkeste folke that to thi foo langez;

They tell him that they have slain fifty thousand men,

ffyfty thosannde one felde of ferse mene of armez,
Wyth-in a furlange of waye, fay ere by-lefede!
We hafe eschewede this chekke, thurghe chance of oure Lorde,
Of tha cheualrous mene that chargede thy pople!

and taken prisoners the chief chancellor and the senator Peter, as well as many paynims.

The cheefe chaunchelere of Rome, a cheftayne fulle noble,
Wille aske the chartyre of pesse for charitee hym selfene;
And the senatour Petire to presoner es takyne.
Of Perse and of Porte Iaffe paynymmez ynewe
Commez prekande in the presse, with thy prysse knyghttez,
With pouerte in thi presone theire paynez to drye.
I be-seke 3ow, sir, say whate 3owe lykes,
Whethire 3e suffyre theme saughte, or sone delyuerde.

Arthur may demand sixty horse-loads of silver for the senator, and for the chancellor, chariots full of gold.

3e may haue fore the senatour sextie horse chargede
Of siluer be Seterdaye, fulle sekyrly payede,
And for the cheefe chauncelere, the cheualere noble,
Charottez chokkefulle charegyde with golde;

The other prisoners may be kept until their rents are known.

The remenaunt of the Romaynez be in areste haldene,
Tille thiere renttez in Rome be rightewissly knawene.
I be-seke 3ow, sir, certyfye 3one lordez,
3if 3e wille send thame ouer the see, or kepe thame 3our selfene.

[1] MS. rauunsone.

Digitized by Google

Alle 3our sekyre mene for sothe sounde are by-leuyde, — All Arthur's men have escaped, save Sir Ewaine, who is wounded.
Saue sir Ewayne fytz Henry es in the side wonddede."
"Crist be thankyde," quod the kynge, "and hys clere [leaf 70] — The king rejoices.
modyre,
That 3owe comforthede and helpede be crafte of hyme selfene; 1560
Skilfulle skomfyture he skiftez as hym lykez, — The fate of battle, he says, is in the hands of God.
Is none so skathlye may skape, ne skewe fro his handez;
Desteny and doughtynes of dedys of armes,
Alle es demyd and delte at Dryghtynez wille! 1564
I kwne the thanke for thy come, it comfortes vs alle! — He thanks the knight for his tidings, and gives him for reward the city of Tolouse.
Sir knyghte," sais the conquerour, "so me Criste helpe!
I 3if the for thy thy3andez Tolouse the riche,
The tolle and the tachementez, tauernez and other, 1568
The towne and the tenementez with towrez so hye,
That towchez to the temporaltee, whilles my tyme lastez.
Bot say to the senatour I sende hyme thes wordez, — The senator shall not be ransomed save Sir Ewaine recovers.
Thare salle no siluer hym saue, bot Ewayne recouere;
I had leuer see hym synke one the salte strandez,
Than the seegge ware seke, that es so sore woundede;
I salle disseuere that sorte, so me Criste helpe! 1575 — The others shall be divided into different countries.
And sett theme fulle solytarie, in sere kyngez landez:
Salle he neuer sownde see his seynowres in Rome,
Ne sitt in the assemblé, in syghte wyth his feris;
ffor it comes to no kynge that conquerour es holdene, — Arthur holds that to accept ransom becomes not a king.
To comone with his captifis fore couatys of siluer: 1580
It come neuer of knyghthede, knawe it 3if hyme lyke,
To carpe of coseri, whene captyfis ere takyne;
It aughte to no presoners to prese no lordez,
Ne come in presens of pryncez, whene partyes are mouede.
Comaunde 3one constalle, the castelle that 3emes, — They are to take the senator to the constable and bid him keep him safe.
That he be clenlyche kepede, and in close haldene;
He salle haue maundement to-morne or myddaye be roungene, 1587
To what marche thay salle merke, with mangere to lengene."
Thay conuaye this captyfe with clene mene of armez,
And kend hyme to the constable, alls the kynge byddez; — The knights obey, and then

Digitized by Google

return to Arthur to give him the emperor's message.

And seyne to Arthure *the*y ayre, and egerly hym towch
The answere of *the* emp*erour*, irows of dedez.
Thane s*ir* Arthure, one erthe atheliste of o*there*,
At euene at his awene borde auantid his lordez,—

Arthur greatly commends his knights for their boldness, and promises them rewards.

"Me aughte to hono*ur* theme in erthe ou*er* alle o*th*
thyngez,
*Th*at *th*us in myne absens awnters *th*eme selfene;
I salle theme luffe whylez I lyffe, so me our Lorde help
And gyfe *th*eme landys fulle large, whare theme beste lyke
Thay salle noghte losse, one *th*is layke, ȝif me lyfe happer
*Th*at *th*us are lamede for my lufe be *th*is lythe strandez

In the morning Sir Cador and his knights are bid to take the prisoners

Bot in *th*e clere daweyng, *th*e dere kynge hym selfen
Comaundyd s*ir* Cadore w*ith* his dere knyghttes,
Sir Cleremus, sir Cleremonde, w*ith* clene mene of arme
Sir Clowdm*ur*, s*ir* Clegis, to conuaye theis lordez;
Sir Boyce and s*ir* Berelle w*ith* baners displayede,
Sir Bawdwyne, s*ir* Bryane, and s*ir* Bedwere *th*e rych
Sir Raynalde and s*ir* Richere, Rawlaunde childyre,
To ryde w*ith* *th*e Romaynes in rowtte wyth̄ theire fere

[leaf 70, back] to Paris, and to give them into the care of the provost.

"Prekez now preualye to Parys the ryche,
Wyth̄ Petir the pryssonere and his price knyghttez;
Be-teche *th*am *th*e proueste, in presens of lordez,
O payne and o perelle *th*at pendes there-too,
That they be weisely wachede and in warde holdene,
Wardede of warantizéd w*ith* wyrchipfulle knyghttez;
Wagge hyme wyghte mene, and woonde for no siluyr
I haffe warnede *th*at wy, be ware ȝife hyme lykes!"

Now bownes *th*e Bretones, als *th*e kynge byddez,
Buskez theire batelles, theire baners displayez;

The British knights depart towards Chartres.

To-wardez Chartris they chese, thes cheualrous knyghtte
And in the champayne lande fulle faire *th*ay eschewed

But the emperor had dispatched a chosen band to intercept them.

ffor *th*e emp*erour* of myghte had ordande hym selfene
Sir Vtolfe and sir Ewandyre, two honourable kyngez
Erles of *th*e Oriente, with̄ austeryne knyghttez,
Of *th*e awntrouseste mene *th*at to his oste lengede,
Sir Sextynour of Lyby and senatours many,

Digitized by Google

The kynge of Surrye hym selfe with Sarzynes ynowe,
The senatour of Sutere wyth sowmes fulle huge, 1627
Whas assygnede to that courte be sent of his peres,
Traise to-warde Troys the tresone[1] to wyrke,
To hafe be-trappede with a trayne oure trauelande knyghttez,
That hade persayfede that Peter at Parys sulde lenge,
In presonne with the prouoste, his paynez to drye. 1632
ffor-thi they buskede theme bownne with baners displayede,
In the buskayle of his waye, on blonkkes fulle hugge; They take up a position in the path of Arthur's men.
Planttez theme in the pathe with powere arrayede,
To pyke vp the presoners fro oure pryse knyghttez.
Syr Cadore of Cornewalle comaundez his peris, 1637
Sir Clegis, sir Cleremus, sir Cleremownnde the noble,
"Here es the close of Clyme with clewes so hye; Sir Cador keeps a sharp look out,
Lokez the contree be clere, the corners are large; 1640
Discoueres now sekerly skrogges and other,
That no skathelle in the skroggez skorne vs here-aftyre;
Loke ȝe skyfte it so that vs no skathe lympe,
ffor na skomfitoure in skoulkery is skomfite euer." 1644
Now they hye to the holte, thes harageous knyghttez,
To herkene of the hye mene to helpene theis lordez; and discovers the enemy, armed and mounted, waiting by the skirts of a wood.
ffyndez theme helmede hole and horsesyde on stedys,
Houande one the hye waye by the holte hemmes. 1648
With knyghttly contenaunce Sir Clegis hym selfene
Kryes to the companye, and carpes thees wordez,—
"Es there any kyde knyghte, kaysere or other, Sir Clegis challenges any knight among them to the combat.
Wille kyth for his kynge lufe craftes of armes? 1652
We are comene fro the kyng of this lythe ryche,
That knawene es for conquerour, corownde in erthe,
His ryche retenuz here alle of his Round Table,
To ryde with that realle in rowtt where hyme lykes;
We seke justynge of werre, ȝif any wille happyne, 1657
Of the jolyeste mene ajuggede be lordes;

[1] MS. the tresone the tresone.

Digitized by Google

If here be any hathelle mane, erle or other,
[leaf 71] That for the emperour lufe wille awntere hym selfene."
An earl of the Roman party upbraids Arthur and his knights. And ane erle thane in angere answeres hym sone,—
"Me angers at Arthure, and att his hathelle bierns,
That thus in his errour ocupyes theis rewmes;
And owtrayes the emperour, his erthely lorde! 1664
The araye and the ryalltez of the Rounde Table
Es wyth rankour rehersede in rewmes fulle many;
Of oure renttez of Rome syche reuelle he haldys,
He[1] salle 3ife resoune fulle rathe, 3if vs reghte happene,
That many salle repente that in his rowtte rydez, 1669
ffor the reklesse roy so rewlez hym selfene!"
Sir Clegis answers him, "A!" sais sir Clegis thane, "so me Criste helpe!
I knawe be thi carpynge a cowntere the semes!
Bot be thou auditoure, or erle, or emperour thi selfene,
Appone Arthurez by-halue I answere the sone: 1674
The renke so realle, that rewllez vs alle,
The ryotous mene and the ryche of the Rounde Table,
He has araysede his accownte, and redde alle his rollez,
and boasts that he will punish well the Romans. ffor he wylle gyfe a rekenyng that rewe salle aftyre,
That alle the ryche salle repeñte that to Rome langez,
Or the rereage be requit[2] of rentez that he claymez!
He desires three courses of war with any knights whom they will send. We crafe of 3our curtaisie three coursez of werre, 1681
And claymez of knyghthode, take kepe to 3our selfene!
3e do bott trayne vs to daye wyth trofelande wordez!
Of syche trauaylande mene trecherye me thynkes! 1684
Sende owte sadly certayne knyghttez,
Or say me sekerly sothe, for-sake 3if 3owe lykes."
The king of Syria insinuates that Sir Clegis may not be of noble ancestry. Thane sais the kynge of Surry, "Alls saue me oure Lorde!
3if thow hufe alle the daye, thou bees noghte delyuerede,
Bot thow sekerly ensure with certeyne knyghtez, 1689
That thi cote and thi breste be knawene with lordez,
Of armes of ancestrye, entyrde with londez."
Sir Clegis replies scornfully "Sir kyng," sais sir Clegys, "fulle knyghttly thow askez:
I trowe it be for cowardys thow carpes thes wordez:

[1] MS. Ne. [2] *Looks like* requiter *in MS.*

Digitized by Google

Myne armez are of ancestrye enueryde with lordez, — that his ancestors were at the siege of Troy.
And has in banere bene borne sene *sir* Brut tyme;
At the cité of Troye *that* tymme was ensegede,
Ofte seene in asawtte with certayne knyghttez,
ffro *the* Borghte broghte vs and alle oure bolde elders,
To Bretayne *the* braddere, with-in chippe-burdez."

"Sir," sais *sir* Sextenour, "saye what *the* lykez, — Sir Sextenour declares that the Romans are ready for the fray.
And we salle suffyre the, als vs beste semes;
Luke thi troumppez be trussede, and trofulle no lengere,
ffor *tho*ghe *tho*u tarye alle *the* daye, the tyddes no bettyr!
ffor there salle neuer Romayne, *that* in my rowtt rydez,
Be *with* rebawdez rebuykyde, whills I in werlde regne!"

Thane *sir* Clegis to *the* kynge a lyttille enclinede, — Sir Clegis tells Sir Cador that a vast number of the enemy are drawn up in the wood,
Kayres to *sir* Cadore, and knyghtly hym tellez,—
"We hafe foundene in 3one firthe, floreschede with leues,
The flour of *the* faireste folke *that* to *thi* foo langez,
ffifty thosandez of folke of ferse mene of armez, — [leaf 71, back]
That faire are fewteride on frounte vndyr 3one fre bowes;
They are enbuschede one blonkkes, with baners displayede,
In 3one bechene wode appone the waye sydes.
Thay hafe the furthe for-sette alle of *the* faire watyre,
That fayfully of force feghte vs byhowys;
ffor thus vs schappes to daye, schortly to telle, — and suggests a retreat.
Whedyre we schone or schewe, schyft as *the* lykes."
"Nay," q*uod* Cador, "so me Criste helpe! — Sir Cador scorns to retreat.
It ware schame *that* we scholde schone for so lytylle!
Sir Lancelott salle neuer laughe, *that* *with* *the* kyng lengez, — Never shall Sir Lancelot laugh at him.
That I sulde lette my waye for lede appone erthe;
I salle be dede and vndone ar I here dreche, — He will die before he turn back for any dog's son of them all.
ffor drede of any doggesone in 3one dyme schawes!"

Syr Cador thane knyghtly comforthes his pople, — Sir Cador exhorts his men, and tells them of the good deeds of Arthur.
And with corage kene he karpes *the*s wordes,—
"Thynk one *the* valyaunt prynce *that* vesettez vs euer,
With landez and lordcheppez, whare vs beste lykes;
That has vs ducherés delte, and dubbyde vs knyghttez,

Digitized by Google

Gifene vs gersoms and golde, and gardwynes many,
Grewhoundez and grett horse, and alkyne gamnes,
That gaynez tille any gome, that vndyre God leuez;
Thynke one riche renoune of the Rounde Table,
And late it neuer be refte vs fore Romayne in erthe;
ffeyne 3ow noghte feyntly, ne frythes no wapyns,
Bot luke 3e fyghte faythefully, frekes 3our selfene;
I walde be wellyde alle qwyke, and quarterde in sondre,
Bot I wyrke my dede, whils I in wrethe lenge."

He dubs some of them knights.

Than this doughtty duke dubbyd his knyghttez,
Ioneke and Askanere, Aladuke and other,
That ayerez were of Esexe, and alle thase este marchez;
Howelle and Hardelfe, happy in armez,
Sir Herylle and sir Herygalle, thise harageouse knyghttez.
Than the souerayne assignede certayne lordez,

To certain of them he gives the prisoner in charge.

Sir Wawayne, sir Vryelle, sir Bedwere the ryche,
Raynallde and Richeere, and Rowlandez childyre,—
"Takez kepe one this prynce with 3oure price knyghtez,

If he is defeated, they are to convey him to some castle, or to Arthur.

And 3ife we in the stour withstondene the better,
Standez here in this stede, and stirrez no forthire;
And 3if the chaunce falle that we bee ouer-charggede,
Eschewes to some castelle, and chewyse 3our selfene;
Or ryde to the riche kynge 3if 3ow roo happyne,
And bidde hym come redily to rescewe hys biernez."

The British prepare for the fight.

And than the Bretons brothely enbrassez theire scheldez,
Braydez one bacenetez, and buskes theire launcez.
Thus he fittez his folke, and to the felde rydez,
ffif hundreth̄ one a frounte fewtrede at onez!
[leaf 72] Wit̄h trompes thay trine, and trappede stedes,
Wit̄h cornettes and clarions, and clergialle notes;

The fight begins.

Schokkes in with a schakke, and schontez no langere,
There schawes ware scheene vndyr the schire eynez.
And thane the Romaynez rowtte remowes a lyttille,
Raykes with a rerewarde thas realle knyghttez;
So raply thay ryde thare, that alle the rowte ryngez,
Of ryues and rannke stele, and ryche golde maylez.

Digitized by Google

Thane schotte owtte of *th*e schawe schiltrounis many,
With scharpe wapy*nn*s of were schotande at ones:
The kynge of Lebe be-fore the wawarde he ledez, — The king of Lebe leads on the enemy.
And alle his lele lige mene o laundone ascriez. 1768
Thane this cruelle kynge castis in fewtire,
Kaghte hym a cou*er*de horse, and his course haldez,
Beris to s*ir* Berille, and brathely hym hittes, — He attacks Sir Berill and slays him.
Throwghe golet and gorgere he hurtez hym ewyne!
The gome and *th*e grette horse at *th*e grounde liggez,
And gretez *gray*thely to Gode, and gyffes hym *th*e saule!
Thus es Berelle the bolde broghte owtte of lyue,
And byddez aftyre beryelle, *th*at hym beste lykez. 1776
And thane s*ir* Cador of Cornewayle es carefulle in herte, — Sir Cador is overwhelmed with grief for his loss.
Be-cause of his kynyse-mane, *th*at *th*us es myscaryede;
Vmbeclappes the cors, and kyssez hyme ofte,
Gerte kepe hym cou*er*te w*ith* his clere knyghttez. 1780
Thane laughes the Lebe kynge, and alle on lowde meles,— — The king of Lebe ridicules him.
"3one lorde es lyghttede! me lykes the bettyre!
He salle noghte dere vs to daye, the deuylle haue [his] bones!"
"3one kynge," said Cador, "karpes fulle large, 1784
Be-cause he killyd *th*is kene; Criste hafe *th*i saule!
He salle hafe corne bote, so me Criste helpe! — Sir Cador vows vengeance.
Or I kaire of *th*is coste, we salle encontre ones!
So may *th*e wynde weile turnne, I quytte hym or ewyne,
Sothely hym selfene, or summ of his ferez!" 1789
Thane s*ir* Cador *th*e kene knyghttly he wyrkez,
Cryez, "A! Cornewale," and castez in fewtere,
Girdez streke thourghe *th*e sto*ur* on a stede ryche! — He performs great deeds of valour.
Many steryne mane he steride by strenghe of hyme one! —
Whene his spere was sprongene, he spede hym fulle 3erne, — When his lance is broken he fights with his sword.
Swappede owtte w*ith* a swerde, that swykede hym neu*er*,
Wroghte wayes fulle wyde, and wounded knyghttez;
Wyrkez his ine wayfare fulle werkand sydez, 1797
And hewes of *th*e hardieste halsez in sondyre,
That alle blendez with blode thare his blanke rynnez!
So many biernez the bolde broughte owt of lyfe, 1800

Digitized by Google

Tittez tirauntez doune, and temez[1] theire sadilles,
And turnez owte of the toile, whene hym tyme thynkkez!

Then the king of Lebe ironically praises his deeds.

Thane the Lebe kynge criez fulle lowde
One sir Cador the kene, with cruelle wordez,
[leaf 72, back]
"Thowe hase wyrchipe wonne, and wondyde knyghttez!
Thowe wenes fore thi wightenez the werlde es thy nowene!
I salle wayte at thyne honnde, wy, be my trowthe!
I haue warnede the wele, be ware ȝif the lykez!"

The new-made knights, with sound of trumpets and spears in rest, rush to the fray.

Witħ cornuse and clariones theis newe made knyghttez
Lythes vn-to the crye, and castez in fewtire;
fferkes in one a ffrounte one fferaunte stedez,
ffellede at the fyrste come fyfty att ones!
Schotte thorowe the schiltrouns, and scheuerede launcez,
Laid doune in the lumppe lordly biernez!
And thus nobilly oure newe mene notez theire strenghez.
Bot new notte es onone that noyes me sore.

The king of Lebe comes against them.

The kynge of Lebe has laughte a stede that hym lykede,
And comes in lordely in lyonez of siluere,
Vmbelappez the lumpe, and lattes in sondre;
Many lede with his launce the liffe has he refede!

He makes great havoc among the new men.

Thus he chaces the childire of the kyngez chambire,
And killez in the champanyse cheualrous knyghttez!
Witħ a chasynge spere he choppes doune many!
Thare was sir Alyduke slayne, and Achinour wondyde,
Sir Origge and sir Ermyngalle hewene al to pecez!
And ther was Lewlyne laughte, and Lewlyns brothire,
Witħ lordez of Lebe, and lede to theire strenghez:

Had not Sir Clegis and Sir Clement come, the new men had gone to nought.

Ne hade sir Clegis comene, and Clemente the noble,
Oure newe mene hade gone to noghte, and many ma *other*.

Then Sir Cador puts his lance in rest, and strikes the king of Lebe fair on the helmet.

*T*hane sir Cador the kene castez in fewtire
A cruelle launce and a kene, and to the kynge rydez,
Hittez hym heghe one the helme with his harde wapene,
That alle the hotte blode of hym to his hande rynnez!

The heathen king fails to the

The hethene harageous kynge appone the hethe lyggez,

[1] *MS. repeats* and temez.

And of his hertly hurte helyde he neuer ! ground mortally wounded.
Thane sir Cador the kene cryez fulle lowde,— 1836
" Thow has corne botte, sir kynge, thare God gyfe the Sir Cador triumphs over him.
sorowe,
Thow killyde my cosyne, my kare es the lesse !
Kele the nowe in the claye, and comforthe thi selfene !
Thow skornede vs lang ere with thi skornefulle wordez,
And nowe has thow cheuede soo ; it es thyne awene
skathe !
Holde at thow hente has, it harmez bot lyttille,
ffor hethynge es hame holde, vse it who so wille."
The kyng of Surry thane es sorowfulle in herte, 1844 The king of Syria, full of grief, assembles his Saracens for vengeance.
ffor sake of this soueraygñe, that thus was supprissede ;
Semblede his Sarazenes, and senatours manye :
Vnsaughtyly they sette thane appone oure sere knyghttez ;
Sir Cador of Cornewaile he cownterez theme sone, 1848 Sir Cador and his men slay fifty thousand of them at once.
Wit̄ his kydde companye clenlyche arrayede ;
In the frount of the fyrthe, as the waye forthis,
ffyfty thosande of folke was fellide at ones !
Thare was at the assemblé certayne knyghttez, 1852 Certain knights are sorely wounded. [leaf 73]
Sore wondede sone appone sere halfes ;
The sekereste Sarzanez that to that sorte lengede,
Be-hynde the sadylles ware sette sex fotte large ;
They scherde in the schiltrone scheldyde knyghttez,
Schalkes they schotte thrughe schrenkande maylez, The fight rages furiously.
Thurghe brenys browdene brestez they thirllede,
Brasers burnyste bristez in sondyre ;
Blasons blode and blankes they hewene, 1860 The field runs blood.
Wit̄ brandez of browne stele brankkand stedez !
The Bretones brothely brittenez so many,
The bente and the brode felde alle one blode rynnys !
Be thane sir Cayous the kene a capitayne has wonnene,
Sir Clegis clynges in, and clekes another ; 1865 Sir Clegis takes prisoner the captain of Cordova.
The capitayne of Cordewa, vndire the kynge selfene,
That was keye of the kythe of alle that coste ryche,
Vtolfe and Ewandre, Ioneke had nommene, 1868
Wit̄ the erle of Affryke and other grette lordes.

Digitized by Google

Sir Cador takes the king of Syria.

The kynge of Surry the kene to *sir* Cador es ȝeldene,[1]
The synechalle of Sotere to Seg*ra*moure hym selfene.
When *the* cheualrye saw theire cheftanes were no*m*mene,
The Romans fly into the forest. To a cheefe foreste they chesene theire wayes,
And felede theme so feynte, they falle in *the* greues,
In the ferynne of *the* fyrthe, fore ferde of oure pople.
Thare myght mene see the ryche ryde in the schawes,
Arthur's men slay many of them there. To rype vpe the Romaynez ruydlyche wondyde,
Schowttes aftyre mene, harageous knyghttez,
Be hun*n*drethez they hewede doune be *the* holte eynys!
Thus oure cheualro*us* mene chasez *the* pople;
A few escape to a castelle. To a castelle they eschewede a fewe *that* eschappede.
Thane relyez *the* renkez of *the* Rounde Table,
ffor to ryotte *the* wode, *ther the* duke restez;
Arthur's knights seek for their companions who are slain. Ransakes the ryndez alle, raughte vp theire feres,
That in *the* fightynge be-fore fay ware by-leuyde.
Sir Cador bids them carry them to the king. Sir Cador garte chare theym, and cou*er*e theme faire,
Kariede theme to *the* kynge with his beste knyghttez;
He goes to Paris with the prisoners, and quickly returns to Arthur. And passez vn-to Paresche with p*re*soners hym selfene,
Be-toke theyme the p*ro*ueste, pryncez and o*ther*;
Tase a sope in the toure, and taryez no langere,
Bot to*ur*nes tytte to *the* kynge, and hym wyth tunge telles.
Then he tells him of the case that has befallen. "Syr," sais *sir* Cador, "a caas es be-fallene;
We hafe cownterede to day, in ȝone coste ryche
With kyngez and kayseres, krouelle and noble,
And knyghtes and kene men clenlych arayede!
Thay hade at ȝone foreste forsette vs *the* wayes,
At the furthe in *the* fyrthe, with ferse mene of armes;
They have fought and slain many. Thare faughtte we in faythe, and foynede with sperys,
One felde with thy foo-mene, and fellyd theme on lyfe.
[leaf 73, back] The kynge of Lebe es laide, and in *the* felde leuyde,
And manye of his lege mene *that* yare to hym langede!
Other lordez are laughte of vncouthe ledes;
We hafe lede them at lenge, to lyf whilles *the* lykez.
Divers of their best knights are taken prisoners, Sir Vtere and *sir* Ewaynedyre, theis honourable knyghttez,

[1] ? ȝoldene.

Digitized by Google

Be a nawntere of armes Ioncke has nommene,
Witħ erlez of the Oryentte, and austerene knyghttez,
Of awncestrye the beste mene that to the oste langede;
The senatour Barouns es kaughte witħ a knyghtte,
The capitayne of Cornette, that crewelle es haldene,
The syneschalle of Sutere vnsaughte wytħ thes other,
The kynge of Surry hym selfene, and Sarazenes.

the senator Barouns, the king of Syria, the seneschal of Suter.

Bot fay of ours in the felde a fourtene knyghttez,
I wille noghte feyne ne forbere, bot faythfully tellene;
Sir Berelle es one, a banerette noble,
Was killyde at the fyrste come with a kynge ryche;
Sir Alidoyke of Towelle, with his tende knyghtez,
Emange the Turkys was tynte, and in tyme fondene;
Gude sir Mawrelle of Mauncez, and Mawrene his brother,
Sir Meneduke of Mentoche, with meruailous knyghttez."

But of Arthur's knights fourteen are slain.

Sir Berill was killed at the beginning of the fray.

Thane the worthy kynge wrythes, and wepede with his eghne[1],
Karpes to his cosyne sir Cador theis wordez,—
"Sir Cador, thi corage confundez vs alle!
Kowardely thow castez owtte alle my beste knyghttez!
To putte mene in perille, it es no pryce holdene,
Bot the partyes ware puruayede, and powere arayede;
When they ware stade on a strenghe, thou sulde hafe with-stondene,
Bot ȝif thowe wolde alle my steryne stroye fore the nonys!"

Then Arthur is grieved,

and speaks to his cousin Sir Cador bitter words.

"Sir," sais sir Cador, "ȝe knowe wele ȝour selfene;
ȝe are kynge in this kythe, karpe whatte ȝow lykys!
Salle neuer vpbrayde me, that to thi burde langes,
That I sulde blyne fore theire boste, thi byddynge to wyrche;
Whene any stirttez to stale, stuffe thame the bettere,
Ore thei wille be stonayede, and stroyede in ȝone strayte londez.

Sir Cador replies with dignity.

I dide my delygens to daye, I doo me one lordez,
And in daungere of dede fore dyuerse knyghttez,
I hafe no grace to thi gree, bot syche grett wordez;

He has only done his duty,

but is ill repaid by such hard words.

[1] MS. eughne.

Digitized by Google

ȝif I heuen my herte, my hape es no bettyre."

Then Arthur retracts.

ȝofe sir Arthure ware angerde, he ansuers faire,

He acknowledges Cador has done his duty.

"Thow has doughttily donne, sir duke, with thi handez,
And has donne thy deuer with̄ my dere knyghttez;
ffor-thy thow arte demyde, with dukes and erlez,

He is one of the bravest of the brave,

ffor one of the doughtyeste that dubbede was euer!
Thare es none ischewe of vs, on this erthe sprongene;

and heir apparent to the throne.

Thow arte apparant to be ayere, are one of thi childyre;

[leaf 74]

Thow arte my sister sone, for-sake salle I neuer!"

Then he makes a noble feast in his own tent for the knights who were engaged in the fight.

Thane gerte he in his awene tente a table be sette,
And tryede in with tromppez trauaillede biernez;
Serfede them solempnely with selkouthe metez,
Swythe semly in syghte with̄ syluerene dischees.
Whene the senatours harde saye that it so happenede,

But the senators of Rome tell the emperor of the defeat of his men.

They saide to the emperour, "thi seggez are suppryssede!
Sir Arthure, thyne enmy has owterayede thi lordez,
That rode for the rescowe of ȝone riche knyghttez!
Thow dosse bot tynnez thi tyme, and turmenttez thi pople;

He has been betrayed by those he trusted most.

Thow arte be-trayede of thi mene, that moste thow on traystede.
That schalle turne the to tene and torfere for euer."

Then the emperor is very wroth.

Than the emperour irus was angerde at his herte,
ffor oure valyant biernez siche prowesche had wonnene.
With̄ kynge and with̄ kaysere to consayle they wende,
Souerayngez of Sarazenez, and senatours manye;

He assembles a council of war.

Thus he semblez fulle sone certayne lordez,
And in the assemble thane he sais them theis wordez,—

He tells them his purpose to go into Saxony,

"My herte sothely es sette, assente ȝif ȝowe lykes,
To seke in-to Sexone, with my sekyre knyghttez,
To fyghte with̄ my foo-mene, if fortune me happene,
ȝif I may fynde the freke with-in the foure haluez;

and enter into Augusta,

Or entire in-to Awguste awnters to seke,
And byde with̄ my balde mene with-in the burghe ryche;

to riot and revel till the arrival of Sir Leo and the lords of Lombardy.

Riste vs and reuelle, and ryotte oure selfene,
Lende thare in delytte in lordechippez ynewe,
To sir Leo be comene with alle his lele knyghtez,
With̄ lordez of Lumberdye, to lette hyme the wayes."

Digitized by Google

Bot owre wyese kyng es warre to wayttene his renkes,
And wyesly by *the* woddez voydez his oste;
Gerte felschene his fyrez, flawmande fulle heghe,
Trussene fulle traystely, and treunt there-aftyre.
Sethene in-to Sessoyne, he soughte at the gayneste,
And at the surs of *the* sonne disseuerez his knyghttez:
fforsette theme the cité appone sere halfez,
So-daynly on iche halfe, with̄ seuene grett stales.
Anely in the vale a vawewarde enbusches;
Sir Valyant of Vyleris, with̄ valyant knyghttez,
Be-fore *the* kyngez visage made siche avowez,
To venquyse by victorie the vescownte of Rome!
ffor-thi the kynge chargez hym, what chaunce so be-falle,
Cheftayne of *the* cheekke, *with* cheualrous knyghttez,
And sythyne meles with̄ mouthe, *that* he moste traistez;
Demenys the medylwarde menskfully hyme selfene,
ffittes his fote-mene, a‖s hym faire thynkkes;
On frounte in the fore breste, the flo*ur* of his knyghtez,
His archers on aythere halfe he ordaynede *ther*-aftyre
To schake in a sheltroñe, to schotte whene *tha*me lykez;
He arrayed in *the* rerewarde fulle rialle knyghtez,
With̄ renkkes renownnd of *the* Rounde Table,
Sir Raynalde, sir Richere, that rade was neu*er*,
The riche duke of Rowne wyt[h] ryders ynewe;
Sir Cayo*us*, sir Clegis, and clene mene of armes,
The kyng cast*es* to kepe be *tha*a clere strandes.
Sir Lott and s*ir* Launcelotte, *th*ise lordly knyghttez,
Salle lenge on his lefte hande, wyth̄ legyones ynewe,
To meue in *the* morne-while, ȝif *the* myste happynne;
Sir Cador of Cornewaile, and his kene knyghtez,
To kope at *the* karfuke, to close in *ther* o*there*:
He plantez in siche placez pryncez and erlez,
That no powere sulde passe be no pr*e*ué wayes.
Bot the emper*our* onone, *with* hono*ur*able knyghtez
And erlez, enteres the vale, awnters to seke,
And fyndez sir Arthure with̄ hostez arayede;
And at his in-come, to ekkene his sorowe,

King Arthur, getting intelligence of this, withdraws his men secretly by the woods;

takes the shortest road into Saxony;

suddenly besets the city with seven bands.

Sir Valiant makes a vow to vanquish the viscount of Rome.

The king gives him command of the vanguard;

he himself directs the centre.

He arranges the archers on either flank; [leaf 74, back]

places renowned knights for a rearguard.

Sir Lott and Sir Lancelot command a band on the left hand, which is to move in the mist of early morning. Sir Cador and his men are to keep guard over the passes.

The emperor and his knights quickly enter the vale in search of adventures. He finds Arthur's host drawn up in battle array,

Digitized by Google

Oure burlyche bolde kynge appone the bente howes,
Witħ his bataile one brede, and baners displayede.
He hade *th*e ceté for-sett appone sere halfes,
Bothe the clewez and *th*e clyfez witħ clene mene of armez!
and all the positions occupied. The mosse and *th*e marrasse, the mou*n*ttez so hye,
Witħ gret multytude of mene, to marre hym in *th*e wayes.
Whene *sir* Luci*us* sees, he sais to his lordez,
Then Sir Lucius declares with wrath that there is no way else but to fight, for fly he may not. "This traytour has treunt this tresone to wyrche!
He has the ceté forsett appone sere halfez,
Alle *th*e clewez and the cleyffez *with* clene mene of armez!
Here es no waye i-wys, ne no wytt elles,
Bot feghte witħ oure foo-mene, for flee may we neuer!
He arrays his rich Romans. Thane this ryche mane rathe arayes his byernez,
Rewlede his Romaynez, and realle knyghtez;
The viscount is in the van. Buschez in the avawmewarde the vescounte of Rome,
ffro Viterbe to Venyse, theis valyante knyghtez:
He hoists his standard, the golden dragon enamelled with eagles. Dresses vp dredfully the dragone of golde,
Witħ egles alouer, enamelede of sable;
They drink and make merry. Drawene dreghely the wyne, and drynkyne thare-aftyre,
Dukkez and dusseperez, dubbede knyghtez,
ffor dauncesynge of Duche-mene, and dynnynge of pypez,
Alle dynned fore dyne that in *th*e dale houede.
Sir Lucius exhorts them to think on the great renown of Rome—how it had conquered all Christendom, And thane *sir* Luci*us* on lowde said lordlyche wordez,
"Thynke one the myche renownne of *3our* ryche fadyrs;
And the riato*urs* of Rome, *that* regnede *with* lordez;
And the renkez ou*er*-rane alle that regnede in erthe,
[leaf 75] Encrochede alle Cristyndome be craftes of armes;
In eu*er*iche a viage the victorie was haldene;
and all the land of the Saracens, from Jaffa to the gates of Paradise. In sette alle *th*e Sarazenes witħ-in seuene wyntter,
The parte ffro the porte Iaffe to Paradyse 3atez!
Without doubt they will quickly reduce these rebels. Thoghe a rewme be rebeHe, we rekke it bot lyttille!
It es resone and righte the renke be restreynede!
Do dresse we thare-fore, and byde we no langere,
ffore dredlesse *with*-owttyne dowtte, the daye schalle be ourez!"

Digitized by Google

Whene *th*eise wordez was saide, the Walsche kynge
hym selfene
Whas warre of this wyderwyne, *th*at werrayede his
knyghttez:
Brothely in the vale *with* voyce he ascryez,— Arthur calls upon the viscount of Valence, and threatens him with vengeance.
"Viscownte of Valewnce, enuyous of dedys,
The vassallage of Viterbe to daye schalle be reuengede!
Vnuenquiste for *th*is place voyde schalle I neuer!"
Thane the vyscownte valiante, *with* a uoyse noble, The viscount boldly prepares for the fray.
Auoyeddyde the avawewarde, enuerounde his horse;
He drissede in a derfe schelde, endenttyd *with* sable,
Witħ a dragone engowschede, dredfulle to schewe, His device is a dragon devouring a dolphin.
Deuorande a dolphyne witħ dolefulle lates,
In seyne that oure soueraygne sulde be distroyede,
And alle done of dawez witħ dynttez of swerddez;[1]
ffor thare es noghte bot dede thare the dragone es raissede!
Thane the comlyche kynge castez in fewtyre, The king lays his lance in rest, and pierces him through the short ribs.
Witħ a crewelle launce cowpez fulle euene
A-bowne *th*e spayre[2] a spanne, emange *th*e schortte rybbys,
That the splent and the spleene on the spere lengez!
The blode sprente owtte and sprede as *th*e horse spryngez,
And he sproulez fulle spakely, bot spekes he no more!
And thus has *sir* Valyant haldene his a-vowez, And thus has Sir Valiant kept his vow.
And venqwyste *th*e viscownte, *th*ate victor was haldene!
Thane *sir* Ewayne *sir* Fytz Vriene ffulle enkerlye rydez Sir Ewain makes a bold attempt to reach the emperor.
Onone to the emperour his egle to towche;
Thrughe his brode bataile he buskes be-lyfe,
Braydez owt his brande *with* a blytħ chere,
Reuerssede it redelye, and awaye rydys;
fferkez in witħ the fewle in his faire handez,
And ffittez in freely one frounte *with* his feris.
Now buskez *sir* Launcelot, and braydez fulle euene Sir Lancelot slays the lord Lucius.
To *sir* Lucius the lorde, and lothelye hyme hyttez;
Thurghe pawnce *and* platez he percede the maylez,
That the prowde penselle in his pawnche lengez!
The hede haylede owtt be-hynde ane halfe fote large,

[1] MS. swreddez. [2] MS. *th*e spayre the spayere.

Digitized by Google

Thurghe hawberke and hanche, with the harde wapyne!
The stede and the steryne mane strykes to the grownde,
Strake downe a standerde, and to his stale wendez!

Sir Lott rejoices that his turn is now come.

"Me lykez wele," sais sir Loth, "3one lordez are delyuerede!
The lott lengez nowe on me, with leue of my lorde:
To day salle my name be laide, and my life aftyre,
[leaf 75, back] Bot some leppe fro the lyfe, that one 3one lawnde houez!"
Thane strekez the steryne, and streynys his brydylle,
Strykez in-to the stowre on a stede ryche,

He slays a giant,

Enjoynede with a geaunt, and jaggede hym thorowe!
Jolyly this gentille for-justede a-nother,
Wroghte wayes fulle wyde, werrayande knyghtez,
And wondes alle wathely, that in the waye stondez!
ffyghttez with alle the ffrappe a furlange of waye,

and many warriors beside.

ffelled fele appone felde with his faire wapene,
Venqwiste and has the victorie of valyaunt knyghtez,
And alle enverounde the vale, and voyde whene hym likede!

The British bowmen discharge their arrows.

Thane bowmene of Bretayne brothely ther-aftyre
Bekerde with bregaundez of ferre in tha laundez,
With flonez fleterede thay flitt fulle frescly ther frekez,
ffichene with fetheris thurghe the fyne maylez:
Siche flyttynge es foule that so the flesche derys,
That flowe o ferrome in flawnkkes of stedez;

The Dutchmen throw darts.

Dartes the Duche-mene daltene a3aynes,
With derfe dynttez of dede, dagges thurghe scheldez;
Qwarelles qwayntly swappez thorowe knyghtez,
With iryne so wekyrly, that wynche they neuer.

Many are slain by the sharp arrows.

So they scherenkene fore schotte of the scharppe arowes,
That alle the scheltrone schonte, and schoderide at ones!
Thane riche stedes rependez, and rasches one armes;
The hale howndrethe one hye appone heyghe lygges,
Bott 3itte the hathelieste on hy, haythene and other;

But the giants make a terrible charge,

Alle hoursches ouer hede harmes to wyrke.
And alle theis geauntez be-fore, engenderide with fendez,
Ioynez on sir Ienitalle, and gentille knyghtez,

Digitized by Google

With clubbez of clene stele clenkkede in helmes,
Craschede doune crestez, and craschede braynez;
Kyllede cou[r]sers and couerde stedes,
Choppode thurghe cheualers one chalke-whytte stedez.
Was neuer stele ne stede myghte stande them a-ȝaynez,
Bot stonays and strykez doune, that in the stale houys.
Tille the conquerour come with his kene knyghttez,
With crewelle contenaunce he cryede fulle lowde,—
"I wende no Bretones walde bee basschede for so lyttille,
And fore bare-legyde boyes, that one the bente houys!"
He clekys owtte Collbrande fulle clenlyche burneschte,
Graythes hyme to Golapas, that greuyde moste;
Kuttes hyme euene by the knees clenly in sondyre.
"Come downe," quod the kynge, "and karpe to thy ferys!
Thowe arte to hye by the halfe, I hete the in trouthe!
Thow salle be handsomere in hye, with the helpe of my Lorde!"
With that stelene brande he strake ofe his hede.
Sterynly in that stoure he strykes a-nother.
Thus he settez on seuene with his sekyre knyghttez:
Whylles sexty ware seruede soo, ne sessede they neuer!
And thus at the joynenyge the geauntez are distroyede,
And at that journey for-justede with gentille lordez.
Than the Romaynes, and the rennkkez of the Rounde Table,
Rewles theme in arraye, rerewarde ande other,
With wyghte wapynez of werre, thay wroghtene one helmes,
Rittez with rannke stele fulle ryalle maylez;
Bot they fitt[1] theme fayre, thes frekk byernez,
ffewters in freely one fferaunte stedes,
ffoynes fulle felly with flyschande speris,
ffretene of orfrayes feste appone scheldez.
So fele fay es in fyghte appone the felde leuyde,
That iche a furthe in the firthe of rede blode rynnys!
By that swyftely one swarthe the swett es by-leuede,

and with their steel clubs destroy many knights on white steeds.

Nothing can stand against them until Arthur comes.

He despises them,

and plucking out Colbrand, quickly cuts the giant Golapas in two at the knees,

telling him he is too high by half.

Then he strikes off his head.

[leaf 76]
He and his knights slay sixty giants.

The Romans rally and make a fierce resistance.

So many are left dead on the field, that each path in the forest runs with red blood.

[1] *Or* fut.

Digitized by Google

Swerdez swangene in two, sweltand knyghtez
Lyes wyde opyne welterande one walopande stedez;
Wondes of wale mene werkande sydys,
ffacez feteled vn-faire in filterede lakes,
Alle craysed for-trodyne with trappede stedez,
The faireste fygured folde[1] that fygurede was euer,
Alls ferre alls a furlange, a thosande at ones!

The Romans begin to retreat, and Arthur presses on them.

Be than the Romaynez ware rebuykyde a lyttille,
With-drawes theyme drerely, and dreches no lengare;
Oure prynce with his powere persewes theyme aftyre,
Prekez one[2] the proudeste with his price knyghttez.

Sir Cayous, Sir Clegis, and their men slay five hundred.

Sir Kayous, sir Clegis, with clene mene of armez,
Enconters theme at the clyffe with clene mene of armes;
ffyghttes faste in the fyrth, frythes no wapene,
ffelled at the firste come fyfe hundrethe at ones!
And when they fande theym foresett with oure fers knyghtez,
ffewe mene agayne fele mot fyche theme bettyre;
ffeghttez with alle the frappe, foynes with speres,
And faughte with the frekkeste that to Fraunce langez.

Sir Cayous rides to a king and thrusts him through with his lance,

Bot sir Kayous the kene castis in fewtyre,
Chasez one a coursere, and to a kynge rydys;
With a launce of Lettowe he thirllez his sydez,
That the lyuer and the lunggez on the launce lengez.
The schafte sc[h]odyrde and schott in the schire byerne,
And soughte thorowowte the schelde, and in the schalke rystez.

but is sorely wounded by a coward knight.

Bot Kayous at the in-come was kepyd vn-fayre
With a cowarde knyghte of the kythe ryche;
At the turnynge that tym the traytoure hym hitte
In thorowe the felettes, and in the flawnke aftyre,
That the boustous launce the bewells attamede,
That braste at the brawlynge, and brake in the myddys.
Sir Kayous knewe wele, be that kyde wounde,
That he was dede of the dynte, and done owte of lyfe.

[leaf 76, back]

[1] *Or* felde. [2] *Or* over.

Digitized by Google

Than he raykes in arraye and one rawe rydez,
One this ryall*e* his dede to reuenge;
"Kepe the, cowarde," and calles hym sone,
Cleues hym wyth̄ his clere brande clenliche in sondire!
"Hadde thow wele delte thy dynt with̄ thi handes,
I hade for-geffen*e th*e my dede, be Crist now of hewyn*e*!"
He weyndes to *th*e wyese kyng*e*, and wynly hym gretes,
"I am wathely woundide, waresche mon*e* I neu*er*!
Wirke nowe thi wirchipe, as *th*e worlde askes,
And brynge me to beryell*e*, byd I no more!
Grete wele my ladye *th*e qwene, ȝife *th*e werlde happyne,
And all*e th*e burliche birdes *th*at to hir boure lengez,
And my worthily weife, *th*at wrethide me neu*er*,
Bid hire fore hir wyrchipe wirke for my saulle!"

He goes to the king, tells him he is mortally wounded, and bids him greet well the queen, the ladies of the court, and his wife.

The kyngez confesso*ur* come, w*ith* Criste in his handes,
ffor to comforthe the knyghte, kende hym *th*e wordes.
The knyghte coueride on his knees w*ith* a kaunt herte,
And caughte his Creato*ur*e *th*at comfurthes vs alle!
Thane remmes *th*e riche kynge fore rewthe at his herte,
Rydes in-to rowte his dede to reuenge;
Presede in-to *th*e plu*m*pe, and with̄ a prynce metes,
That was ayere of Egipt in thos este marches;
Cleues hym with̄ Collbrande clenlyche in sondyre!
He broches euen*e* thorowe *th*e byerne, and *th*e sadille bristes,
And at *th*e bake of *th*e blonke *th*e bewell*es* entamede!

Then comes the king's confessor to comfort the knight.

Then Arthur, full of grief, rushes into the fray to avenge him.

He cleaves an Egyptian prince asunder.

Manly in his maly[n]coly he metes a-no*ther*,
The medill*e* of *th*at myghtty, *th*at hym myche greuede;
He merkes thurghe the maylez the myddes in sondyre,
That the myddys of *th*e mane on *th*e mou*n*te fallez,
*Th*e to*ther* halfe of *th*e haunche on *th*e horse leuyde.
Of *th*at hurte, alȝs I hope, heles he neu*er*!
He schotte thorowe *th*e schiltrou*n*s w*ith* his scharpe wapen*e*,
Schalkez he schrede thurghe, and schrenkede maylez;
Baneres he bare down*n*e, bryttenede scheldes,

Another he chops in half.

He speeds his way through the battle, cutting men in sunder, bearing down banners,

Digitized by Google

and fiercely wreaking his wrath on his foes.

Brothely with̄ browne stele his brethe he thare wrekes;
Wrothely he wryththis by wyghtnesse of strenghe,
Woundes these whydyrewyns, werrayede knyghttes,
Threppede thorowe the thykkys thryttene sythis,
Thryngez throly in the thrange, and chis euene aftyre!

Sir Gawaine goes forward and meets with the emperor.

Thane sir Gawayne the gude, with̄ wyrchipfulle knyghttez,
Wendez in the a-vawewarde be tha wodde hemmys;
Was warre of sir Lucius, one launde there he houys,
With̄ lordez and ligge mene, that to hyme selfe lengede.
Thane the emperour enkerly askes hym sonne,
"What wille thow, Gawayne, wyrke with̄ thi wapyne?
[leaf 77] I watte be thi wauerynge, thow willnez aftyre sorowe;
I salle be wrokyne on thi wrethe, fore alle thi grete wordez?"

Lucius with his long sword wounds Sir Lionel,

He laughte owtte a lange swerde, and luyschede one ffaste,
And sir Lyonelle in the launde, lordely hym strykes,
Hittes hym on the hede, that the helme bristis;
Hurttes his herne-pane an hannde-brede large!
Thus he layes one the lumppe, and lordlye theme seruede,

and many worshipful knights.

Wondide worthily wirchipfulle knyghttez!
ffighttez with Florent̄ that beste es of swerdez,
Tille the fomande blode tille his fyste rynnes!
Thane the Romayns releuyde, that are ware rebuykkyde,
And alle to-rattys oure mene with theire riste horsses;

The Romans, excited by his bravery, get the better of Arthur's men.

ffore they see thaire cheftayne be chauffede so sore,
They chasse and choppe doune oure cheualrous knyghttes!

Sir Bedwere is slain.

Sir Bedwere was borne thurghe, and his breste thyrllede,
With̄ a burlyche brannde, brode at the hiltes;
The ryalle rannke stele to his herte rynnys,
And he rusches to the erthe, rewthe es the more!

Then Arthur comes to the rescue.

Thane the conquerour tuke kepe, and come with̄ his strenghes
To reschewe the ryche mene of the Rounde Table,
To owttraye the emperour, ȝif auntire it schewe,
Ewyne to the egle, and "Arthure!" askryes.

Digitized by Google

The emperour thane egerly at Arthure he strykez,
Awkwarde on *the* vmbrere, and egerly hym hittez!
The nakyde swerde at *the* nese noyes hym sare,
The blode of [the] bolde kynge ouer *the* breste rynnys,
Beblede at *the* brode schelde and *the* bryghte mayles!
Oure bolde kynge bowes *the* blonke be *the* bryghte brydylle,
With̄ his burlyche brande a buffette hym reches,
Thourghe *the* brene and *the* breste *with* his bryghte wapyne,
O-slante doune fro *the* slote he slyttes at ones!
Thus endys *the* emperour of Arthure hondes,
And alle his austeryne oste *thare*-ofe ware affrayede!
Now they ferke to *the* fyrthe, a fewe *that* are leuede,
ffor ferdnesse of oure folke, by *the* fresche strandez!
The floure of oure ferse mene one fferant stedez
ffolowes frekly on *the* frekes, thate ffrayede was neuer.
Thane *the* kyde conqueroùr cryes fulle lowde,—
"Cosyne of Cornewaile, take kepe to *thi* selfene,
That no captayne be kepyde for none siluer,
Or sir Kayous dede be cruelly vengede!"
"Nay," sais sir Cador, "so me Cryste helpe!
Thare ne es kaysere ne kynge, *that* vndire Criste rynges,
That I ne schalle kille colde dede be crafte of my handez!"
Thare myghte mene see chiftaynes, on chalke whitte stedez,
Choppe doune in the chaas cheualrye noble;
Romaynes *the* rycheste and ryalle kynges,
Braste with̄ ranke stele theire rybbys in sondyre!
Braynes fore-brustene thurghe burneste helmes,
With brandez for-brittenede one brede in *the* laundez.
They hewede doune haythene mene with̄ hiltede swerdez,
Be hole hundrethez on hye, by *the* holte eynyes!
Thare myghte no siluer thaym saue, ne socoure theire lyues,
Sowdane, ne Sarazene, ne senatour of Rome!
Thane releuis *the* renkes of the Rounde Table,
Be *the* riche reuare that rynnys so faire;
Lugegez thaym luflye by *tha* lyghte strandez,
Alle on lawe in *the* lawnde, thas lordlyche byernes.

The emperor strikes Arthur on the visor, and wounds his nose.

Arthur gives him a buffet that cuts through his cuirass and his breast.

Sir Lucius dies, and the Romans fly.

Arthur's men pursue them.

The king bids them take vengeance for Sir Cayous.

Sir Cador declares that he will spare neither king nor kaiser.

[leaf 77, back] A fearful carnage follows.

Heathen men are hewn down by hundreds.

Digitized by Google

Arthur's men plunder the rich camp of the Romans.

Thay kaire to *the* karyage, and tuke whate them likes,
Kamelles and sekadrisses, and cofirs fulle riche,
Hekes, and hakkenays, and horses of armes,
Howsynge and herbergage of heythene kyngez;

Horses, camels, dromedaries, milk-white mules, and many marvellous beasts are captured.

They drewe owt of dromondaries dyuerse lordes,
Moyllez mylke whitte, and meruayllous bestez,
Elfaydes, and arrabys, and olyfauntez noble,
Ther are of *the* Oryent, with honourable kynges.

Bot *sir* Arthure onone ayeres *ther*-aftyre
Ewyne to *the* emperour, *with* honourable kyngis;
Laughte hym vpe fulle louelyly with lordlyche knyghttez,
And ledde hyme to *the* layere, thare the kyng lygges.
Thane harawdez heghely, at heste of the lordes,
Hunttes vpe the haythemene, that on heghte lygges,

The bodies of the emperor and the chief men of Rome are embalmed and wrapped in lead,

The Sowdane of Surry, and certayne kynges,
Sexty of *the* cheefe senatours of Rome.
Thane they bussches and bawmede *thaire* honourliche kyngis,
Sewed theme in sendelle sexti-faulde aftire,
Lappede them in lede, lesse that they schulde
Chawnge or chawffe, ȝif *thay* myghte escheffe;

enclosed in chests, and sent to Rome with their banners over them.

Closed in kystys clene vn-to Rome,
With theire baners a-bowne, theire bagis there-vndyre,
In whate countré *thay* kaire that knyghttes myghte knawe
Iche kynge be his colours, in kyth whare [he] lengede.
Onone one *the* secounde daye, sone by *the* morne,

Two senators come barefoot and kneel before the conqueror.

Twa senatours ther come, and certayne knyghttez,
Hodles fro *the* hethe, ouer *the* holte eynes,
Barefote ouer *the* bente, *with* brondes so ryche,
Bowes to *the* bolde kynge, and biddis hym *the* hiltes,
Whethire he wille hang theym or hedde, or halde theyme on lyfe;
Knelyde be-fore *the* conquerour in kyrtilles allone;
With carefulle contenaunce *thay* karpide *these* wordes,—
"Twa senatours we are, thi subgettez of Rome,
That has sauede oure lyfe by *the*ise salte strandys;
Hyd vs in *the* heghe wode, thurghe *the* helpynge of Criste;

Digitized by Google

Be-sekes the of socoure, as sou*er*aygne and lorde; 2317
Grante vs lyffe and lym*e* with̄ leberall*e* herte, [leaf 78]
ffor his luffe that thé lente this lordchipe in erthe!"
"I graunte," q*uod* [the] gude kyng*e*, "thurghe grace of my selfen*e*, 2320
I giffe ȝowe lyffe and lyme, and leue for to passe,
So ȝe doo my message menskefully at Rome,
That ilke charge *that* I ȝow ȝiffe here be-fore my cheeffe knyghttez."
"ȝis," sais the senato*ur*s, "that sall*e* we ensure, 2324
Sekerly be oure trowhes thi sayenges to fullfill*e*;
We sall*e* lett for no lede *th*at lyffes in erthe,
ffore pape, ne for potestate, ne prynce so noble,
That ne sall*e* lelely in lande thi lett*er*es pronounce, 2328
ffor duke ne for*e* dussepere, to dye in *th*e payne!"

The king grants them their lives on condition of their carrying a message for him to Rome.

Thane the banerettez of Bretayne broghte *th*em*e* to tentes;
There barbours ware bownn*e*, with̄ basyns on*e* lofte,
W*ith* warme watire[1] i-wys they wette them*e* full*e* son*e*;
They schouen*e* thes schalkes schappely ther-aftyre,
To rekken*e* theis Romaynes recreaunt and ȝolden*e*;
ffor-thy schoue they them*e* to schewe, for skomfite of Rome.

The Britons cause barbers to shave them, in token of their submission.

They coupylde *th*e kystys on kameles be-lyue, 2336
On asses and arrabyes, theis hono*ur*able kynges;
The emp*eroure* for hono*ur*e, all*e* by hym one,
Euen*e* appon*e* an*e* olyfaunte, hys egle owtt ou*er*e;
Be-kende them*e* the captyfis, the kynge dide hym*e* selfen*e*,
And all*e* by-fore his kene men*e* karpede thees wordes,—

They fasten the chests on camels.

The emperor's body, for honour, is by itself on an elephant.

"Here are the kystis," q*uod* the kyng*e*, "kaire ou*er* *th*e mownttez;
Mette full*e* monee *th*at ȝe haue mekyll*e* ȝernede,
The taxe and *th*e trebutte of tene schore wynt*er*es, 2344
That was tenefully tynte in tym*e* of oure elders.
Saye to *th*e senato*ur*e, *th*e ceté *th*at ȝemes,
That I sende hym*e* *th*e som*m*e, assaye how hym*e* likes!

Arthur charges them to say that they have brought the arrears of tribute due from him to Rome.

[1] MS. wartire.

Digitized by Google

This is the only tribute they will ever get from him.

Bott byde theme neuere be so bolde, whylles my blode regnes,
Efte for to brawlle *th*eme for my brode landez,
Ne to aske trybut ne taxe be nakyne tytle,
Bot syche tresoure as this, whilles my tyme lastez."

They hasten to Rome and summon the people to the Capitol.

Nowe they raike to Rome the redyeste wayes,
Knylles in the Capatoylle, and comowns assembles,
Souerayngez and senatours, the ceté *tha*t 3emes;
Be-kende theme the caryage, kystis and o*ther*,

They perform Arthur's message as he directed.

Alls *th*e conqueror comaunde w*ith* cruelle wordes.
"We hafe trystily trayuellede *th*is tributte to feche,

They have brought the taxes from England and Ireland, and all the west.

The taxe and *th*e trewage of fowre score wynteris,
Of I[n]glande, of Irelande and alle *th*ir owtt illes,
That Arthure in the Occedente ocupyes att ones.
He byddis 3ow neuere be so bolde, whills his blode regnes,
To brawle 3owe fore Bretayne ne his brode landes,
Ne aske hyme trebute ne taxe be nonkyns title,
Bot syche tresoure as this, whills his tyme lastis.

[leaf 78, back] They declare that they have suffered defeat and great loss,

We haffe foughttene in ffrance, and vs es foule happenede,
And alle oure myche faire folke faye are by-leuede!
Eschappide there ne cheuallrye, ne cheftaynes no*ther*,
Bott choppede downne in the chasse, syche chawnse es be-fallene!
We rede 3e store 3owe of stone, and stuffene 3our walles:

and bid the Romans beware.

3ow wakkens wandrethe and werre; be ware, 3if 3ow lykes!"

This great battle between Arthur and the Romans was fought in the calends of May.

In the kalendez of Maye this caas es be-fallene:
The roy ryalle renownde, w*ith* his Rownde Table,
One the coste of Costantyne by *th*e clere strandez,
Has *th*e Romaynes ryche rebuykede for euer!
Whene he hade foughttene in Fraunce, and the felde wonnene,
And fersely his foomene fellde owtte of lyfe,

Arthur buries his knights,

He bydes for *th*e beryenge of his bolde knyghtez,
That in batelle with brandez ware broughte owte of lyfe.

Sir Bedwere at Bayonne,

He beryes at Bayone sir Bedwere *th*e ryche;

Sir Cayous at Came.

The cors of Kayone *th*e kene at Came es be-leuefede,

Digitized by Google

Koueride *with* a crystalle clenly alle ou*er*; 2381
His fadyre *con*queride *that* kyth̄ knyghtly *with* hondes.
Seyn*e* in Burgoyne he bade to bery mo knyghttez,
Sir Berade and Bawdwyne, sir Bedwar *th*e ryche,
Gud *sir* Cador at Came, as his kynde askes.
Thane *sir* Arthure onone, in *th*e Auguste *ther*-aftyre, — In the August after Arthur enters into Germany,
Ent*er*es to Almayne wyth̄ ostez arrayed; 2387
Lengez at Lusscheburghe, to lechen*e* hys knyghttez, — and tarries at Luxemburg to heal his knights.
With̄ his lele ligge men*e*, as lorde in his awen*e*.
And on *Christo*fre daye a concell*e* he haldez, — He holds a council to devise how he may conquer all the territory that he claims.
Withe kynges and kay*s*ers, clerkkes and o*ther*,
Comandez them kenely to caste alle *th*eire wittys, 2392
How he may *con*quere by crafte the kythe *th*at he claymes.
Bot the co*n*queror*our* kene, curtais and noble,
Karpes in the concell*e* theys knyghtly wordez,— — He makes a speech in the council, saying that he much desires the possessions of the duke of Lorraine,
"Here es a knyghte in theis kleuys, enclesside with̄ hilles,
That I haue cowayte to knawe, be-cause of his wordez,
That es Lorayne *th*e lele, I kepe noghte to layne;
The lordchipe es louely, as ledes me telles. 2399
I will*e* that ducherye devyse, and dele as me lykes,
And seyn*e* dresse wyth̄ *th*e duke, if destyny suffre: — who has long been a rebel to his Round Table.
The renke rebell*e* has bene vn-to my Rownde Table,
Redy aye with̄ Romaynes, and ryotte my landes!
We sall*e* rekken*e* fulle rathe, if reson*e* so happen*e*, 2404 — Full soon will he reckon who has right to the rent.
Who has ryghte to *th*at rente, by ryche Gode of heuen*e*!
Thane wille I by Lu*m*bardye lykande to schawe, — Afterwards he will go to Lombardy and then visit the tyrants of Turkey,
Sett lawe in *th*e lande, *that* laste salle eu*er*;
The tyrauntez of T*ur*kayne tempeste a littylle, 2408
Talke with̄ *th*e temperalle, whilles my tym*e* lastez;
I gyffe my protteccioñe to alle *th*e pope landez, — but he will give protection to all the lands of the
My ryche penselle of pes my pople to schewe. [leaf 79]
It es a foly to offende oure fadyr vndire Gode, 2412 — Pope, for it is folly to offend our father under God.
Ow*ther* Pet*er* or Paule, *th*a postles of Rome.
ȝif we spare the sp*irit*uelle, we spede bot the bettire; — If we spare the goods of the spiritualty we shall speed the better.
Whills we haue for to speke, spille salle it neu*er*!"
Now they spede at *th*e spurres, *with*-owttyne speche more, 2416

Digitized by Google

To *th*e marche of Meyes, theis manliche knyghtez,
That es Lorrayne alofede, as Londone es here;
Arthur straightway leads his knights to lay siege to Metz.
Ceté[1] of *th*at seyn3owre, that sou*er*aynge es holdene.
The kyng ferkes furthe on a faire stede,
With̄ Ferrer and[2] Ferawnte, and *other* foure knyghtez;
A-bowte the ceté *th*a seuene, they soughte at *th*e nextte,
They seek a place to fix the engines.
To seke theme a sekyre place to sett withe engeynes;
Thane they beneyde in burghe bowes of vyse,
The bowmen shoot at them.
Bekyrs at *th*e bolde kynge with̄ boustouse lates,
Allblawsters at Arthure egerly schottes,
ffor to hurte hyme or his horse with̄ *th*at hard wapene.
The king, without his shield, remains close to the walls within range of the arrows.
The kynge schonte for no schotte, ne no schelde askys,
Bot schewes hym scharpely in his schene wedys;
Lenges alle at laysere, and lokes one the wallys,
Whare *th*ey ware laweste the ledes to assaille.
Sir Ferrere remonstrates with him for exposing himself to such danger.
"Sir," said *sir* fferrere, "a ffoly thowe wirkkes,
Thus nakede in thy noblaye to neghe to *th*e walles,
Sengely in thy surcotte, this ceté to reche,
And schewe *th*e *with*-ine, there to schende vs alle.
Hye vs hastylye heynne, or we mone fulle happene,
ffor hitt they the or thy horse, it harmes for euer!"
Arthur scorns him, and tells him
"Ife thow be ferde," quod the kyng, "I rede thow ryde vttere,
Lesse *that* *th*ey rywe the with̄ theire rownnd wapyne!
Thow arte bot a fawntkyne, no ferly me thynkkys!
that he would be afraid of a fly that lighted on him.
Thou wille be flayede for a flye *that* one thy flesche lyghttes!
I ame nothynge agaste, so me Gode helpe!
Thof siche gadlynges be greuede, it greues me botlyttille!
Thay wyne no wirchipe of me, bot wastys theire takle!
They salle wante or I weende, I wagene myne hevede!
Never knave will be allowed to kill a crowned king.
Salle neuer harlotte haue happe, thorowe helpe of my Lorde,
To kylle a corownde kynge with̄[3] krysome enoynttede!"
Then come the gallant troops of Arthur,
Thane come *th*e herbariours, harageous knyghtez,
The hale batelles one hye harrawnte ther-aftyre;
And oure forreours ferse, appone fele halfes,

[1] MS. Pety. [2] MS. ferrerannde. [3] MS. with with.

Come flyeande be-fore one ferawnt stedes;
fferkande in arraye theire ryall*e* knyghttez, 2452
The renkez renownde of *th*e Rownnd Table.
All*e* *th*e frekke men*e* of Fraunce folowede thare-aftyre,
ffaire fittyde on*e* frownte, and on*e* the felde houys.
Thane the schalkes scharpelye scheftys theire horsez,
To schewen*e* them semly in theire scheen*e* wedes; 2457
Buskes in batayle witħ baners displayede,
Witħ brode scheldes enbrassede, and burlyche helmys,
Witħ penou*n*s and pensell*e*s of ylke prynce armes, 2460
Appayreħde witħ perrye and p*re*cio*us* stones.
The lawnces witħ loraynes, and lemande scheldes,
Lyghtenande as *th*e leuenyng*e*, and lemand al ou*er*.
Thane the price men*e* prekes, and p*ro*ues *th*eire horsez,
Satill*e*s to *th*e ceté, appon*e* sere halfes; 2465.
Enserches the subbarbes sadly thare-aftyre,
Discou*er*is of schotte-men*e*, and skyrmys a lyttill*e*;
Skayres *th*aire skottefers, and theire skowtte-waches,
Brittenes theire barrers witħ theire bryghte wapyns;
Bett down*e* a barbycan*e*, and *th*e brygge wynnys. 2470
Ne hade the garnyson*e* bene gude at *th*e grete ȝates,
Thay hade wonn*e* that wone be theire awen*e* strenghe!
Than*e* witħ-drawes oure men*e*, and drisses them*e* bettyre,
ffor dred of *th*e drawe-brigge dasschede in sondre;
Hyes to *th*e harbergage, thare the kyng*e* houys
Witħ his batell*e* on*e* heghe, horsyde on stedys; 2476
Thane was *th*e prynce p*ur*uayede, and *th*eire places no*m*men*e*,
Pyghte pauyllyons of paħe, and plattes in seegge.
Thane lenge they lordly, as *th*em*e* leefe thoghte,
Waches in ylke warde, as to *th*e werre falles, 2480
Settes vp sodaynly certayne engynes.
One Sonondaye be *th*e Sooñe has a flethe ȝolden*e*.
The kyng*e* calles on*e* Florente, *th*at flo*ur* was of knyghttez,—
"The Fraunche-meñe enfeblesches, ne farly me thynkkys!
They are vn-fondyde folke in *th*a faire marches, 2485

and the renowned champions of the Round Table; and all the bold men of France following them.

[leaf 79, back]

They proceed in battle-array with banners and broad shields, and pennons adorned with precious stones.

The lances gleam like lightning.

They encompass the city on divers sides,

skirmish with the garrison,

and break down their defences.

But the garrison at the great gates checks them.

Arthur's men withdraw to where the king is waiting.

They pitch their tents, and prepare for a regular siege.

Arthur calls Sir Florent,

Digitized by Google

ffor theme wantes *the* flesche and fude that theme lykes.
Here are fforestez faire appone fele halues, 2487

and sends him to forage for cattle.

And thedyre feemene are flede with freliche bestes!
Thow salle foonde to *the* felle, and forraye the mountes;
Sir fforawnt and *sir* Florydas salle folowe thi brydylle;
Vs moste with some fresche mette refresche oure pople,
That are feedde in *the* fyrthe *with the* froyte of *the* erthe.

Sir Gawaine himself, the worshipful warden, shall accompany them,

Thare salle weende to *this* viage sir Gawayne hym selfene,
Wardayne fulle wyrchipfulle, and so hym wele semes;
Sir Wecharde, *sir* Waltyre, theis wyrchipfulle knyghtes,

and many other knights of renown.

With alle wyseste mene of *the* weste marches; 2496
Sir Clegis, *sir* Clarybalde, *sir* Clarymownde *the* noble,
The capytayne of[1] Cardyfe clenlyche arrayede.
Goo now, warne alle *the* wache, Gawayne and *other*,
And weendes furthe on *your* waye withowttyne moo wordes." 2500

These fresh men of arms start on their journey through woods and over hills. [leaf 80]

Now ferkes to *the* fyrthe thees fresche mene of armes,
To *the* felle so fewe, theis fresclyche byernes,
Thorowe hopes and hymlande hillys and *other*,
Holtis and hare woddes with heslyne schawes, 2504
Thorowe marasse and mosse and montes so heghe;
And in the myste mornynge one a mede falles,

They fall upon a field of grass newly mown,

Mawene and vne-made, maynoyrede bott lyttylle,
In swathes sweppene downe, fulle of swete flowres. 2508

where they bait their horses, while the birds sweetly sing.

Thare vnbrydilles theis blode, and baytes *the*ire horses,
To *the* grygynge of *the* daye, *that* byrdez[2] gane synge,
Whylles the surs of *the* sonne, *that* sonde es of Cryste,
That solaces alle synfulle, *that* syghte has in erthe. 2512

Sir Gawaine goes forth by himself to seek adventures.

Thane weendes owtt the wardayne, *sir* Gawayne hyme selfene,
AHs he *that* weysse was and wyghte,[3] wondyrs to seke;
Thane was he warre of a wye, wondyre wele armyde,
Baytand one a wattire banke by *the* wodde eynis, 2516

He sees a knight well armed,

Buskede in brenyes bryghte to be-halde,
Enbrassede a brode schelde on a blonke ryche,
With birenne ony borne, bot a boye one,

[1] MS. oo. [2] MS. *that* byrdez that byrdes [3] MS. wyghte wyghte

Houes by hym on a blonke, and his spere holdes. 2520 — and a page carrying his spear.
He bare gessenande in golde, thre grayhondes of sable,
Wit̄ chapes a cheynes of chalke whytte sylu*er*, — On his shield his coat of arms is depicted.
A charebocle in *th*e cheefe, chawngawnde of hewes,
And a cheefe ante*r*ous, chalange who lykes. 2524

Sir Gawayne glyftes on the gome w*ith* a glade wille! — Sir Gawaine beholds him with great joy, and goes across the stream towards him.
A grete spere fro his grome he grypes in hondes,
Gyrdes ewen*e* ou*er*e *th*e streme on*e* a stede ryche,
To *th*at steryn*e* in sto*ur*, one strenghe *th*are he houys!
Egerly one Inglisce "Arthure!" he askryes, 2529 — He shouts his cry, "Arthur."
The t*other* irouslye ansuers hym sone
On a launde of Lorrayne wit̄ a lowde steu*en*, — The other answers with a loud voice.
That ledes myghte lysten*e* *th*e lenghe of a myle! 2532
"Whedyr prykkes thow, pilou*ur*, *th*at profers so large?
Here pykes thowe no praye, profire whene *th*e lykes! — Then the strange knight declares that Gawaine shall be his prisoner.
Bot thow in *th*is p*er*elle[1] put of the bettire,
Thow salle be my presonere, for alle thy prowde lates!"
"Sir," sais s*ir* Gawayne, "so me Gode helpe! 2537 — Sir Gawaine treats his great words with contempt.
Siche glauerande gomes greues me bot lyttille!
Bot if thowe graythe thy gere, the wille grefe happen*e*,
Or thowe goo of *th*is greue, for alle thy grete wordes!"
Than*e* *th*eire laun*ces* they lachen*e*, thes lordlyche byernez, — Then they lay their spears in rest, and meet.
Laggen*e* w*ith* longe speres one lyarde stedes;
Cowpen*e* at awntere be kraftes of armes,
Tille bothe *th*e crowelle speres broustene att ones! 2544 — Both the spears strike fair, and wound the knights.
Thorowe scheldys *th*ey schotte, and scherde thorowe ma[i]les,
Bothe schere thorowe schoulders a schaft-monde large!
Thus worthylye *th*es wyes wondede ere bothen*e*;
Or they wreke *th*eme of wrethe a-waye wille *th*ey neu*er*!
Than they raughte in the reyne and a-gayne rydes, — Then they rein in their horses [leaf 80, back] and return to the fight with swords.
Redely theis rathe mene rusches owtte swerdez, 2550
Hittes one hellmes fulle hertelyche dynttys,
Hewes appon*e* hawberkes wit̄ fulle harde wapyns! — Fearful blows are exchanged.
ffulle stowttly *th*ey stryke, thire steryn*e* knyghttes,
Stokes at *th*e stomake wit̄ stelyn*e* poyntes, 2554

[1] MS. p*er*erelle.

Digitized by Google

ffeghttene and floresche withe flawmande swerdez,
Tille *the* flawes of fyre flawmes one theire helmes.

Sir Gawaine waxes wroth, and strikes grimly with his sword Galuth.

Thane *sir* Gawayne was greuede, and grychgide fulle sore ;
Wit̄ Galuthe his gude swerde grymlye he strykes !

He cleaves the knight's shield asunder, and lays open his side.

Clefe *the* knyghttes schelde clenliche in sondre ! 2559
Who lukes to *the* lefte syde, whene his horse launches,
Wit̄ *the* lyghte of *the* sonn̄e men myghte see his lyuere !
Thane granes *the* gome fore greefe of his wondys,

The knight strikes fiercely at Sir Gawaine.

And gyrdis at *sir* Gawayne, as he by glentis ;
And awkewarde egerly sore he hym smyttes ; 2564
An alet enamelde he oches in sondire,
Bristes *the* rerebrace wit̄ the bronde ryche,
Kerues of at *the* coutere wit̄ *the* clene egge,
Ane[n]tis *the* avawmbrace, vraylled̄e *with* siluer ! 2568

He cuts through his armour and draws blood,

Thorowe a dowble vesture of veluett ryche,
With the venymous swerde a vayne has he towchede !
That voydes so violently *that* alle his witte changede !
The vesere, the aventaile, his vesturis ryche, 2572

which flows over all his dress.

Wit̄ the valyant blode was verrede alle ouer !
Thane this tyrante tite turnes *the* brydille,
Talkes vn-tendirly, and sais, "*thow* arte towchede !

Then the knight jeers at him, and says the blood shall never be staunched.

Vs bus haue a blode-bande, or thi ble change, 2576
ffor alle *the* barbours of Bretayne salle noghte thy blode stawnche !
ffor he *that* es blemeste wit̄ *this* brade brande, blyne schalle he neuer."

Sir Gawaine despises his words,

"Ȝa," *quod sir* Gawayne, "thow greues me bot lyttille ! 2579
Thowe wenys to glopyne me wit̄ thy gret wordez !
Thow trowes *with* thy talkynge *that* my harte talmes !
Thow be-tydes tourfere or thowe hyene turne,

and bids him tell what will stop the bleeding.

Bot thow telle me tytte, and tarye no lengere,
What may staunche this blode *that* thus faste rynnes."

The knight will tell Gawaine if

"Ȝise, I say *the* sothely, and sekire *the* my trowthe,
No surgyone in Salarne salle saue *the* bettyre ;

Digitized by Google

Wit̄-thy *th*at thowe suffre me, for sake of thy Cryste, — he will allow him to have shrift and prepare himself for his end.
To schewe schortly my schrifte, and schape for myne ende."
"ȝis," q*uod sir* Gawayne, "so me God helpe! — Gawaine readily grants this.
I gyfe *th*e grace and graunt, *th*ofe *th*ou hafe grefe *ser*uede,
Wit̄-thy thowe say me sothe what thowe here sekes,
Thus sengilly and sulayne alle *th*i selfe one;
And whate laye thow leues one, layne noghte *th*e sothe,
And whate legyaun*c*e, and whare *th*ow arte lorde."
"My name es *sir* Priam*us*; a prynce es my fadyre, — The stranger knight tells him that he is Sir Priamus, son of a prince,
Praysede in his p*ar*tyes wit̄ prouede kynges;
In Rome thare he regnes he es riche haldene;
He has bene rebelle to Rome, and redene theire landes, — who rebelled against Rome, and gained a [leaf 81] kingdom.
Werreyand weisely wyntters and ȝeres,
Be witt, and be wyssdome, and be wyghte strenghe,
And be wyrchipfulle werre, his awene has he wonne.
He es of Alexandire blode, ou*er*lynge of kynges, — He is of the blood of Alexander and Hector of Troy;
The vncle of his ayele, *sir* Ector of Troye;
And here es the kynredene that I of come,
And Iudas and Iosue, *th*ise gentille knyghtes. — related also to Judas and Joshua;
I ame apparaunt his ayere, and eldeste of o*ther*;
Of Alexandere and Aufrike, and alle *th*a owte landes, — and is heir of Africa.
I am in possessione, and plenerly sessede.
In alle *th*e price cetees that to *th*e porte langes,
I salle hafe trewly the treso*ur* and the londes,
And bothe trebute and taxe whilles my tyme lastes.
I was so hawtayne of herte, whilles I at home lengede, — When at home he was so proud and overbearing,
I helde nane my hippe heghte vndire heuene ryche;
ffor-thy was I sente hedire wit̄ seuene score knyghttez, — that he was sent by his father to this war with a band of knights.
To a-saye of this werre, be sente of my fadire;
And I am for Cyr*us* witrye schamely supprisede,
And be aw[n]tire of armes owtrayede fore eu*er*e!
Now hafe I taulde the *th*e kyne that I ofe come,
Wille thow for knyghthede kene me thy name?" — He desires to know Sir Gawaine's name.
"Be Criste," q*uod sir* Gawayne, "knyghte was I neu*er*! — Sir Gawaine answers deceitfully that he is only a knave of Arthur's chamber.
Wit̄ *th*e kydde conquero*ur* a knafe of his chambyre
Has wroghte in his wardrope wynters and ȝeres,

Digitized by Google

One his longe armiour that hym beste lykid
I poyne alle his pavelyouns that to hym selt
Dyghttes his dowblettez for dukes and erles
Aketouns auenaunt fore Arthure hym selfen
That he vsede in werre alle this aughte wyn
"He made me a yeoman at Yule, and gave me great gifts." He made me 3omane at 3ole, and gafe me gr
And c.[1] pounde, and a horse, and harnayse
Gife I happe to my hele that hende for to s
I be holpene in haste, I hette the for-sothe
"If his knaves be such, his knights are noble!" exclaims Sir Priamus. Alexander and Hector will be nothing to him. "Giffe his knafes be syche, his knyghttez
There es no kynge vndire Criste may kempe wi
He wille be Alexander ayre, that alle the erl
Abillere thane euer was sir Ector of Troye.
Now fore the krisome that thou kaghte th
was crystenede,
Then Sir Gawaine tells him the truth. Whethire thowe be knyghte or knaffe, kna
sothe."
He is Sir Gawaine, cousin to the conqueror, the richest knight of all the Round Table. "My name es sir Gawayne, I graunt the for
Cosyne to the conquerour, he knawes it hyn
Kydd in his kalander a knyghte of his chan
And rollede the richeste of alle the Rounde
I ame the dussepere and duke he dubbede with
Deynttely on a daye be-fore his dere knygh
Gruche noghte, gude sir, thofe me this grac
It es the gifte of Gode, the gree es hys awe
[leaf 81, back] Then Sir Priamus says he is better pleased than if he were prince of Provence and Paris. "Petire!" sais Priamus, "now payes me be
Thane I of Provynce warre prynce, and of Par
ffore me ware leuer preuely be prykkyd to
Thane euer any prikkere had siche a pryse
Then he warns Gawaine that the duke of Lorraine with his knights is lying in the wood near. Bot here es herberde at hande, in 3one huge
Halle bataile one heyghe, take hede 3if the
The duke of Lorrayne the derfe, with his de
The doughtyest of Dolfinede, and Duche m
The lordes of Lumbardye that leders are ha
The garnysone of Godarde gaylyche arrayed
The wyese of the Westuale, wirchipfulle bie

[1] MS. o.

Digitized by Google

Of Sessoyne and Surylande Sarazenes enewe;
They are nowmerde fulle neghe, and namede in rollez,
Sexty thowsande and tene for-sothe of sekyre mene of armez; 2659
Bot ȝif thow hye fro this hethe, it harmes vs bothe,
And bot my hurtes be sone holpene, hole be I neuer!
Tak heede to this hansemane, that he no horne blawe,
Are thowe heyly in haste beese hewene al to peces;
ffor they are my retenuz to ryde whare I wylle, 2664
Es none redyare renkes regnande in erthe;
Be thow raghte with that rowtt, thow rydes no forther,
Ne thow bees neuer rawnsonede for reches in erthe!"
Sir Gawayne wente or the wathe come, whare hym beste lykede, 2668
With this wortheliche wye, that wondyd was sore;
Merkes to the mountayne there oure mene lenges,
Baytaynde theire blonkes ther on the brode mede;
Lordes lenande lowe one lemande scheldes, 2672
With lowde laghttirs one lofte for lykynge of byrdez,
Of larkes, of lynkwhyttez, that lufflyche songene,
And some was sleghte one slepe with slaughte of the pople,
That sange in the sesone in the schenne schawes,
So lawe in the lawndez so lykande notes.
Thane sir Whycher whas warre thaire wardayne was wondyde, 2678
And went to hym wepand, and wryngande his handes;
Sir Wychere, sir Walchere, theis weise mene of armes,
Had wondyre of sir Gawayne, and wente hyme a-gayns,
Mett hym in the mydwaye, and meruaile theme t[h]oghte
How he maisterede that mane, so myghtty of strenghes!
Be alle the welthe of the werlde, so woo was theme neuer!
"ffor alle oure wirchipe i-wysse awaye es in erthe!"
"Greue ȝow noghte," quod Gawayne, "for Godis luffe of heuene;
ffore this es bot gosesomere, and gyffene one erles; 2687
Thoffe my schouldire be schrede, and my schelde thyrllede,
And the wielde of myne arme werkkes a littille,

There is a mighty host well armed.

He bids him beware lest they should discover and destroy him.

Sir Gawaine goes with the wounded knight to Arthur's men,

who are baiting their horses on the broad mead and

listening to the songs of the birds.

Sir Whycher perceives that Sir Gawaine is wounded,

and wonders how he could have conquered this mighty knight.

Sir Gawaine makes light of his wounds.

Digitized by Google

His prisoner, Sir Priamus, has salves that will heal them.

This prissonere *sir* Priam*us*, *th*at has peril
Sais *th*at he has saluez salle softene vs both
Thane stirttes to his sterape sterynfulle kn

They assist him to dismount.

And he lordely lyghttes and laghte of his
And lete his burlyche blonke baite on *the*

[leaf 82]

Braydes of his bacenette and his ryche wed
Bownnes to his brode schelde and bowes to
In alle the bodye of that bolde es no blode

The knights lift Sir Priamus from his horse.

Than preses to *sir* Priamo*us* precio*us* knyg
Auyssely of his horse hentes hym in armes
His helme and his hawberke *th*ay takene o

They lay him down, and take off his weeds.

And hastily for his hurtte alle his herte ch
They laide hyme downe in the lawndez, a
his wedes,
And he lenede hym one lange, or how hym
A ffoyle of fyne golde they fande at his gyr
*Th*at es fulle of *the* flo*ur* of *the* fou*ur* welle
*Th*at flowes owte of Paradice whene *the* flo
That myche froyt of fallez, *th*at feede schal
Be it frette on his flesche, *th*are sy*n*ues are
The freke schalle be fische halle with-in fo

A knight dresses their wounds.

They vncou*er*e *th*at cors w*ith* fulle clene
With clere watire a knyghte clensis theire
Keled theyme kyndly, and comforthed *the*
And whene *the* carffes ware clene, *th*ay clede
Barelle ferrers they brochede, and broghte the

Then wine and provisions are brought to them.

Bothe brede and brawne, and bredis fulle
Whene *th*ay hade etene anone they armede
Thane tha awntrende men "*as armes!*" a
With a claryoune clere, thire knyghtez to-g

The scouts bring news of the army in the wood.

Callys to concelle, and of this case tellys :–
"Ȝondyr es a companye of clene mene of a
The keneste in contek *th*at vndir Criste le
In ȝone okene wode an oste are arrayede,
Vndir-takande mene of *th*iese owte londes
As sais vs *sir* Priamo*us*, so helpe seynt Pe

Sir Gawaine is for attacking them,

"Go, mene," q*uod* Gawayne, "and grape in

Digitized by Google

Who salle graythe to ȝone greue to ȝone gret lordes ;
ȝif we gettlesse goo home, the kyng wille be greuede,
And say we are gadlynges, agaste for a lyttille.
We are with sir Florente, as to-daye falles,
That es floure of ffraunce, for he fleede neuer ;
He was chosene and chargegide in chambire of the kynge,
Chiftayne of this journee with cheualrye noble ;
Whethire he fyghte or he flee, we salle folowe aftyre ;
ffore alle the fere of ȝone folke forsake salle I neuer !"

but refers to Sir Florent, the leader of the party.

"ffadyre," sais sir Florent, "fulle faire ȝe it telle !
Bot I ame bot a fawntkyne, vn-fraystede in armes ;
ȝif any foly be-falle, the fawte salle be owrs,
And fremdly o Fraunce be flemede for euer !
Woundes noghte ȝour wirchipe, my witte es bot symple ;
ȝe are owre wardayne i-wysse, wyrke as ȝowe lykes ;
ȝe are at the ferreste noghte passande fyve hundrethe,
And that es fully to fewe to feghte with̄ theme alle,
ffore harlottez and hansemene salle helpe bott littille ;
They wille hye theyme hyene for alle theire gret wordes !
I rede ȝe wyrke aftyre witte, as wyesse men of armes,
And warpes wylily a-waye, as wirchipfulle knyghtes."
"I grawnte," quod sir Gawayne, "so me Gode helpe !
Bot here are galyarde gomes that of the gre seruis,
The kreuelleste knyghttes of the kynges chambyre,
That kane carpe with̄ the coppe knyghtly wordes ;
We salle proue to-daye who salle the prys wyne."

Sir Florent expresses his deference to Sir Gawaine, the warden of the Knights of the Round Table,

and thinks they are too few to [leaf 82, back] fight with so many.

He is for a careful retreat.

Nowe ferriours fers vn-to the fyrthe rydez,
And fonngez a faire felde, and on fotte lyghttez ;
Prekes aftyre the pray, as pryce mene of armes.
ffloren̄t and Floridas, with̄ fyve score knyghttez,
ffolowede in the foreste, and on the way fowndys,
fflyngande a faste trott, and on the folke dryffes.
Than felewes fast to oure folke wele a fyve hundreth̄
Of freke mene to the fyrthe, appone fresche horses ;
One sir Feraunt be-fore, apone a fayre stede,
Was fosterde in Famacoste, the fende was his fadyre,

Arthur's men advance to the wood.

A band of 500 of the enemy meet them, headed by Sir Feraunt.

Digitized by Google

He flenges to *sir* Florent, and pristly he k

He calls scornfully on Sir Florent,

"Why flees thow, falls knyghte? *the* fende h
Thane *sir* fflorent was fayne, and in few
One Fawnelle of ffryselande to[1] fferaunt h
And raghte in *the* reyne on *the* stede rych
And rydes to-warde the rowte, restes he n

who with his lance in rest pierces him through the brain.

ffulle butt in *the* frounte he flysches hyme
And alle dysfegoures his face with his fell
Thurghe his bryghte bacenette his brayne has
And brustene his neke-bone, *th*at alle his br

His cousin vows vengeance for his death,

Thane his cosyne askryede, and cryede
"Thowe has killede colde dede *the* kynge of a
He has bene fraistede on felde in fyftene
He fonde neuer no freke myghte feghte w
Thow schalle dye for his dede with my de
And alle *the* doughtty for dule *th*at in ȝone

but Sir Floridas quickly disposes of him.

"ffy," sais *sir* ffloridas, "thow ffleryande
Thow wenes for to flay vs, ffloke-mowthed
Bot ffloridas with a swerde, as he by glent
Alle *the* flesche of *the* flanke he flappes in
That alle *the* filthe of *the* freke and fele o
ffoloes his fole fotte, whene he furthe ryde

Than rydes a renke to reschewe *th*at by

Sir Raynald, the renegade, proudly presses in;

*Th*at was Raynalde of *the* Rodes, and rebe
Peruertede with paynyms *th*at Cristene pe
Presses in prowdly, as *the* praye wendes,
ffore he hade in Prewsslande myche pryce
ffor-thi in presence thare he profers so larg

but Sir Richer, of the Round Table, runs him through with a spear.

Bot thane a renke, *sir* Richere of *the* Rou
One a ryalle stede rydes hym aȝaynes;
[leaf 83]
Thorowe a rownnde rede schelde he rusch
That the rosselde spere to his herte rynne
The renke relys a-bowte and rusches to *th*
Roris fulle ruydlye, bot rade he no more!

The rest of the five hundred

Now alle *th*at es fere and vnfaye of *thes*

[1] MS. te.

Digitized by Google

ffalles on *sir* fflorent, a ffyve score knyghttes,
Be-twyx a plasche and a flode, appone a flate lawnde;
Oure folke fongene theire felde, and fawghte theme agaynes.
Than was lowde appone lofte "Lorrayne!" askryede,
Whene ledys with longe speris lasschene to-gedyrs,
And "Arthure!" one oure syde, whene theyme oghte aylede.
Than *sir* fflorēt and Floridas in fewtyre *th*ey caste,
ffruschene one alle *th*e ffrape, and biernes affrayede;
ffeHis fyve at *th*e frounte thare they fyrste enteride,
And, or they ferke forthire, fele of *th*ese o*there*!
Brenyes browddene they briste, brittenede scheldes,
Bettes and beres downe the best *that th*eme byddes;
Alle *th*at rewlyde in the rowtte they rydene awaye,
So rewdly they rere theys ryalle knyghttes!
When *sir* Priamo*us*, *th*at prince, persayuede theire gamene,
He hade peté in herte *th*at he ne durste profire;
He wente to *sir* Gawayne, and sais hym *th*ese wordes,—
"Thi price mene fore thi praye putt are alle vndyre,
They are *with* Sarazenes ouer-sette, mo *th*ane seuene hundreth
Of *th*e Sowdanes knyghtes owt of sere londes;
Walde *th*ow suffire me, *sir*, for sake of thi Criste,
With a soppe of thi mene suppowelle theym ones."
"I grouche noghte," q*uod* Gawayne, "*th*e gree es *th*aire awene!
They mone hafe gwerddou*ns* fulle grett graunt of my lorde,
Bot the freke mene of Fraunce fraiste theme selfene!
ffrekes faughte noghte *th*eire fille this fyftene wynter!
I wille noghte stire *with* my stale halfe a stede lenghe,
Bot they be stedde *with* more stuffe thane one ȝone stede houys."
Thane *sir* Gawayne was warre, with-owttyne *th*e wode hemmes,

fall on Sir Florent and his men.

The one side shouts "Lorraine," the other "Arthur."

Sir Florent and Sir Floridas perform great deeds of valour.

Sir Priamus beseeches Gawaine that he may help Arthur's knights against the Saracens.

Sir Gawaine says that they have not fought their fill these fifteen winters.

He sees, outside the wood,

Digitized by Google

men of Westphalia,

Wyes of *th*e Westfale appon*e* wyght horsez,
Walopande wodely, as *th*e waye forthes,
With all*e* *th*e wapyns i-wys *th*at to *th*e werre

headed by the Earl Antele, who leads 8000 knights.

The erle Antele the olde the avawmwarde h
Ayerande on*e* ayther hande heghte thosande
His pelours and pauysers passede all*e* nomby
That eu*er* any prynce lede puruayede in erth
Than *th*e duke of Lorrayne dresesse thare
With dowbill*e* of *th*e Duche-men*e*, *th*at dou
holden*e*;
Paynymes of Pruyslande, prekkers full*e* nob
Come prekkande be-fore with *P*riamo*us* kny

The Earl is indignant that Arthur's knights should venture to resist so great a host.

Than saide the erle Antele to Algere his bro
"Me angers ernestly at Arthures knyghtez!
Thus enkerly on*e* an oste awnters *th*eme self

[leaf 83, back]

They will*e* be owttrayede anon*e*, are vndron
Thus folily on*e* a felde to fyghte with vs all
Bot they be fesede in faye, ferly me thynke
Walde they p*ur*posse take, and passe on*e* th

They had better retreat while they are able.

Prike home to theire prynce, and theire pra
They myghte lenghen*e* theire lyefe, and lossen*e*
It wolde lyghte my herte, so helpe me oure

Sir Alger, his brother, says that though they are so few they are a match for an army.

"Sir," sais *sir* Algere, "thay hafe littill*e* vs
To be owttrayede withe oste: me angers *th*e
The fayreste schall*e* be full*e* feye, *th*at in oure f
Alls fewe as they bene, are they the felde le

Sir Gawaine encourages his knights.

Thane gud Gawayne, gracious and noble,
All*e* with glorious gle he gladdis his kn
"Gloppyns noghte, gud men*e*, for glet*er*and
3ofe 3one gadlyngez be gaye on*e* 3one gret h
Banerettez of Bretayne, buskes vp 3*our* hert
Bees noghte baiste of 3one boyes, ne of *th*aire bry
We sall*e* blenke theire boste for all*e* theire b
Als bouxom*e* as birde es in bede to hir lord

"If we fight to-day, the field shall be ours."

3effe we feghte to-daye, *th*e felde schall*e* be
The fekill*e* faye sall*e* faile, and falssede be d

Digitized by Google

ȝone folk is one ffrountere, vnfraistede theyme semes;
Thay make fayth̄e and faye to *th*e fend seluene!
We salle in this viage victoures be holdene,
And avauntede with̄ voycez of valyant biernez;
Praysede with̄ pryncez in *pr*esence of lordes,
And luffede with̄ ladyes in dyu*er*se londes!
Aughte neu*er* siche hono*ur*e none of oure elders,
Vnwyne ne Absolone, ne none of thies *other*!
Whene we are moste in destresse, Marie we mene,[1]
That es oure maisters seyne, *th*at he myche traistez;
Melys of *th*at mylde qwene, that menskes vs alle;
Who so meles of *th*at mayde, myskaries he neu*er*!"
Be*th*ese wordes ware saide, they ware noghte ferre be-hynde
Bot the lenghe of a launde, and "Lorayne!" askryes.
Was neu*er* siche a justynge at jo*ur*né in erthe,
In the vale of Iosephate, as gestes vs telles,
Whene Iulyus *and* Ioatalle ware juggede to dy,
As was whene *th*e ryche mene of *th*e Rownde Table
Ruschede in-to *th*e rowte one ryalle stedes!
ffor so raythely *th*ay rusche with̄ roselde speris,
That the raskaille was rade, and rane to *th*e grefes,
And karede to *that* courte as cowardes for eu*er*!
"Pet*er*!" sais *sir* Gawayne, "this gladdez myne herte!
That ȝone gedlynges are gone, that made gret nowmbre;
I hope that thees harlottez salle harme vs bot littille,
ffore they wille hyde theme in haste with̄-in ȝone holte enis!
Thay are fewere one ffelde *th*an *th*ay were fyrste nombirde,
Be fourtty thousande in faythe, for alle theyre faire hostes."
Bot one Iolyan of Iene, a geante fulle howge,
Has jonede one *sir* Ierante, a justis of Walis;
Thorowe a jerownde schelde he jogges hym thorowe,
And a fyne gesserawnte of gentille mayles,
Ioynter and gemows, he jogges in sondyre!
One a jambe stede *th*is jurnee he makes;

Great shall be the rewards and joys of victory.

In distress let them complain to Mary the mild queen.

The enemy come upon them.

Never was there such a jousting. Even that in the valley of Jehoshaphat was not equal to it.

The rascal rout run to the groves.

Gawaine rejoices at the flight of the rabble.

[leaf 84]

A huge giant is slain by a justice of Wales.

[1] neuene *struck out, and* mene *written instead.*

Digitized by Google

Thus es *the* geante for-juste, that errawnte
And Gerarde es jocunde, and joyes hym *th*
Than the genato*ur*s of Gen*ne* enjoynes a
Sir Frederick attacks the British forayers.
And frykis on*e* *the* frowntere welle a fyve
A freke highte s*ir* ffederike, with̄ fulle fele
fferkes on*e* a frusche, and fresclyche askrye
To fyghte with̄ oure fforreours, *th*at on*e* fel
The knights of the Round Table advance and fight valiantly.
And thane the ryalle renkkes of *the* Rownd
Rade furth̄ fulle ernestly, and rydis theme
Mellis with̄ the medille-warde, bot they ware
Of siche a grett multytude was m*er*uayle to
Seyne at *the* assemblé the Sarazenes discou
The sou*er*aynge of Sessoyne, that saluede w
Gyawntis for-justede with̄ gentille knyghte
Thorowe gesserawntes of Iene jaggede to *th*
They hewe thorowe helmes hawtayne biern
*Th*at *th*e hiltede swerdes to *th*aire hertes ry
Than *the* renkes renownde of *the* Rownd T
Ryffes and ruyssches downe renayede wrec
And thus they dreuen*e* to *the* dede, dukes a
Alle *the* dreghe of *the* daye, with̄ dredfulle
Sir Priamus and his followers desert to the side of Arthur's men.
Thane s*ir* P*r*iamo*us* *the* prynce, in p*r*esen
Presez to his penowne, and pertly it he
Reuertede it redily, and a-waye rydys
To *the* ryalle rowte of *the* Rownde Table;
And heyly his retenuz raykes hym aftyre,
ffor they his reson*e* had rede on his schelde
Owte of *the* scheltrone *th*ey schede, as schep
And steris furth̄ to *the* stowre, and stode be
Seyne they sent to *the* duke, and saide hym *thi*
They upbraid the Duke of Lorraine for not having paid them their wages.
"We hafe bene thy sowdeours this sex ȝer
We for-sake *the* to-daye be serte of owre lo
We sewe to oure sou*er*aynge in sere kynges
Vs defawtes oure feez of *th*is foure wyntte*r*
Thow arte feble and false, and noghte bot f
Oure wages are werede owte, and *th*i werre

Digitized by Google

We maye *with* oure wirchipe weend whethire vs lykes!
I red *th*owe trette of a trewe, and trofle no lengere,
Or *th*ow salle tyne of thi tale ten thosande or euene."
"ffy a debles!" saide *the* duke, "the deuelle haue ȝour bones! — The Duke answers furiously.
The dawngere of ȝon doggez drede schalle I neu*er*! — [leaf 84, back]
We salle dele this daye, be dedes of armes,
My dede, and my ducherye, and my dere knyghtes!
Siche sowdeo*urs* as ȝe I sett bot att lyttille,
That sodanly in defawte for-sakes theire lorde!"
The duke in his schelde and dreches no lengere,
Drawes hym a dromedarie, with dredfulle knyghtez; — He charges Arthur's knights on a dromedary.
Graythes to *sir* Gawayne, with fulle gret nowmbyre
Of gomes of Gernaide, that greuous are holdene.
Thas fresche horsesede mene to *th*e frownt rydes,
ffelles of oure fforreo*urs* be fourtty at ones! — His men fell many of the forayers.
They hade foughttene be-fore with a fyve hundrethe;
It was no ferly, in faythe, *th*ofe they faynt waxene.
Thane *sir* Gawayne was grefede, and grypys his spere, — Sir Gawaine grasps his spear.
And gyrdez in agayne with galyarde knyghttez;
Metes *th*e maches of Mees, and melles hym thorowe,
As man of *th*is medille-erthe, *th*at moste hade greuede.
Bot on Chastelayne, a childe of *th*e kynges chambyre, — Child Chastelaine slays Sir Cheldrik,
Was warde to *sir* Wawayne of *th*e weste marches,
Cheses to *sir* Cheldrike, a cheftayne noble,
With a chasy*ng* spere he chokkes hym thurghe!
This chekke hyme eschewede be chauncez of armes;
So *th*ay chase *that* childe, eschape may he neu*er*!
Bot on Swyane of Swecy, w*ith* a swerde egge,
The swyers swyre-bane he swappes in sondyre!
He swounande diede, *and* on *th*e swarthe lengede, — and is slain by Swyan.
Sweltes ewynne swiftly, and swanke he no more!
*T*han *sir* Gawayne gretes with his gray eghne; — Gawaine grieves for him.
The guyte was a gude mane, be-gynnande of armes.
ffore the charry childe so his chere chawngide,
That the chillande watire one his chekes rynnyde!
"Woo es me," q*uod* Gawayne, "that I ne wetene hade;

I salle wage for that wye alle *th*at I wel
Bot I be wrokene on that wye, that thus has
He dresses hym drerily, and to *th*e duk

He slays one Sir Dolphin,

Bot one *sir* Dolphyne the derfe dyghte
And *sir* Gawayne hym gyrd with a gry
That the groundene spere glade to his h
And egerly he hente owte, and hurte a-

then Hardolf, happy in arms,

An haythene knyghte, Hardolfe, happy
Sleyghly in at the slotte slyttes hyme t
That the slydande spere of his hande sl
Thare es slayne in *th*at slope, be elagere

and sixty more.

Sexty slongene in a slade of sleghe men
*Th*ofe *sir* Gawaynne ware wo, he waytt
And was warre of *th*at wye that the chi

He avenges the child,

And with a swerde swiftly he swappes
That he swyftly swelte, and on *th*e erth

[leaf 85]

And thane he raykes to *th*e rowte, and ruys

and cuts his way through the enemy.

Riche hawberkes he rente, and rasede s
Rydes one a rawndoune, and his rayke
Thorow-owte *th*e rerewarde he holdes w
And thare raughte in the reyne this rya
And rydez in-to *th*e rowte of *th*e Rown

The great deeds of Arthur's chivalrous men secure the victory.

*Th*ane oure cheualrous[1] men changene
Chases and choppes downe cheftay
Hittes fulle hertely on helmes and sche
Hurtes and hewes downe haythene kny
Ketelle-hattes they cleue euene to *th*e s
Was neuer siche a clamour of capitayn
Thare was kynges sonnes kaughte, curt
And knyghtes of *th*e contré, that knaw
Lordes of Lorayne and Lumbardye bot
Laugh[t]e was, and lede in with oure l
Thas *th*at chasede that daye, theire chau
Swiche a cheke at a chace escheuede th

Sir Florent presses on with five score knights.

When *sir* fflorent, be fyghte, had *th*
He fferkes ine be-fore with fyve s

[1] MS. cheualrours.

Digitized by Google

Theire prayes and *th*eire p*re*soneres passes one aftyre,
W*ith* pylours, and pauysers, and pryse mene of armes.
Thane gudly *sir* Gawayne gydes his knyghttez, — Sir Gawaine follows with caution,
Gas in at *th*e gayneste, as gydes hym telles,
ffore greffe of a garysone of fulle gret lordes 3007
Sulde noghte gripe vpe his gere, ne swyche grame wirche.
ffore-thy they stode at the straytez, and with̄ his stale houede,
Tille his prayes ware paste the pathe that he dredis;
Whene they the ceté myghte see that the kyng seggede, — and sees the city which Arthur is besieging won on the same day.
Sothely the same daye was wit[h] asawte wonnene. 3012
An hawrawde hyes be-fore, the beste of the lordes,
Hom at *th*e herbergage, owt of tha hyghe londes;
Tornys tytte to *th*e tente, and to the kynge telles 3015 — A herald hies to Arthur and tells him of the victory of his knights,
Alle the tale sothely, and how they hade spede;—
"Alle thy forreo*urs* are fere, that forrayede with̄-owttyne,
Sir fflorent, and *sir* ffloridas, and alle thy ferse knyghtez;
Thay hafe forrayede and foghtene with̄ fulle gret nowmbyre, 3019
And fele of thy foo-mene has broghte owt of lyffe!
Oure wirchipfulle wardayne es wele escheuyde, — and how Sir Gawaine has won worship for ever.
ffor he has wonne to-daye wirchipe for eu*er*e,
He has Dolfyne slayne, and *th*e duke takyne! 3023
Many dowghty es dede be dynt of his hondes!
He has p*re*soners p*ri*ce, pryncez and erles,
Of *th*e richeste blode *th*at regnys in erthe!
Alle thy cheuallrous mene faire are eschewede, 3027
Bot a childe Chasteleynne myschance es be-fallene."
"Hawtayne," sais *th*e kyng, "harawde, be Criste! — Then the king rejoices and gives him a hundred pounds.
Thow has helyd myne herte, I hete the for-sothe!
I ȝife the in Hamptone a hundreth̄ pownde large." 3031 [leaf 85, back]
The kynge *th*an to assawte he sembles his knyghtez, — Arthur assembles his knights to assault the city.
With̄ somercastelle and sowe appone sere halfes;
Skyftis his skotiferis, and skayles the wallis,
And iche wache[1] has his warde with wiese mene of armes. 3035

[1] *Or* wathe.

Digitized by Google

Thane boldly *th*ay buske, and bendes en
Payses in pylot*es* and proues theire caste

Churches and chapels are beaten to earth.

Mynsteris and masondewes they malle to
Chirches and chapell*es* chalke-whitte bla
Stone [s]tepell*es* full*e* styffe in *th*e strete
Chawmbyrs with chymnés, and many ch
Paysede and pelid down*e* playsterede wa

The pain of the people is pity to hear.

The pyne of *th*e pople was peté for to he
Thane *th*e duchez hire dyghte with dam
The cowntas of Crasyn*e* with hir clere m
Knelis down*e* in *th*e kyrnelles thare the
On a cou*e*rede horse comlyli arayede ;
They knewe hym by conten*au*nce, and cried

The ladies sue for mercy.

"Kyng crownede of kynde, take kepe to
We be-seke 3ow, *sir*, as sou*e*raynge and l
That 3e safe vs to-daye, for sake of 3oure
Send vs some socoure, and saughte with
Or *th*e cet*é* be sodaynly with assawte wo
He weres his vesere with a vowt noble ;
With vesage v*er*touous, this valyante bie
Meles to hir myldly with full*e* meke wor

Arthur promises that no hurt shall befall them.

"Sall*e* no mysse do 3ow, ma dame, *th*at
I gyf 3ow chartire of pes, *and* 3oure chee
The childire and *th*e chaste men*e*, the cheua
The duke es in dawngere, dredis it bott
He sall*e* idene *th*e full*e* wele, dout 3ow n

Thane sent he on*e* iche a syde to certa

The city is surrendered.

ffor to leue *th*e assawte, the cet*é* was 3old
With *th*e erle eldeste son*e* he sent hym
And seside *th*e same nyghte, be sent of

The Duke is sent to Dover as a prisoner.

The duke to Dou*e*re es dyghte, and all*e* his
To duelle in dawngere and dole, *th*e daye

Many of the inhabitants escape.

Thare fleede, at the ferrere 3ate, folk
nom̄byre,
ffor ferde of *sir* fflorent and his fers knyg
Voydes the cet*é* and to the wode rynnys,
With vetaile, and vessell*e*, and vestou*re* s

Digitized by Google

Thay buske vpe a banere abowne *the* brode ȝates.
Of *sir* fflorent, in ffay so fayne was he neu*er* !
The knyghte houys on a hylle, be-helde to *the* wallys, — Sir Florent sees by a sign that the city is won.
And saide, "I see be ȝone syngne the ceté es oures !"
Sir Arthure enters anone with̄ hostes arayede, 3076 — Arthur enters with his hosts.
Euene at *the* vndrone etles to lenge.
In iche leu*er*e on lowde the kynge did crye,
Of payne of lyf and lym and lesynge of londes, — [leaf 86]
That no lele ligemane, that to hym lon*n*gede, 3080 — He forbids his liegemen to lie with the ladies.
Sulde lye be no ladysse, ne be no lele maydyns,
Ne be no burgesse wyffe, better ne werse ;
Ne no biernez myse-bide, that to *the* burghe longede.
Whene *the* kyng Arthure hade lely conquerid, 3084 — Arthur provides for the government of Lorraine which he has conquered.
And the castelle cou*er*ede of *the* kythe richе
Alle *the* crowelle and kene, be craftes of armes,
Captayns and constables, knewe hym for lorde.
He deuysede and delte to dyu*er*se lordez, 3088
A dowere for *the* duchez and hir dere childire ;
Wroghte wardaynes by wytte to welde alle *the* londez,
That he had wonnene of werre, thorowe his weise knyghtez. 3091
Thus in Lorayne he lenges as lorde in his awene,
Settez lawes in the lande, as hym leefe t[h]oghte ;
And one *the* Lammese day to Lucerne he wendez, — At Lammas he goes to Lucerne.
Lengez thare at laysere with̄ lykynge i-nowe ; 3095
Thare his galays ware graythede, a fulle gret nombyre, — His fair galleys are assembled.
Alle gleter*and* as glase, vndire grene hyllys,
W*ith* cabanes cou*er*ede for kynges a-noyntede,
With̄ clothes of clere golde for knyghtez and o*ther* ;
Sone stowede theire stuffe, and stablede *the*ire horses,
Strekes streke ou*er* *the* strem in-to *the* strayte londez. — He leads his forces over the high mountains by marvellous ways;
Now he moues his myghte w*ith* myrthes of herte,
Ouere mowntes so hye, *th*ase m*er*uailo*us* wayes ; 3103
Gosse in by Goddarde, the garett he wynnys, — passes the St Gothard after defeating the garrison ;
Graythes the garnisone grisely wondes !
Whene he was passede the heghte, than the kyng houys
With his hole batayllе, be-haldande a-bowte, 3107

Digitized by Google

looks down on Lombardy, and advances to Como.

Lukande one Lumbarddye, and one lowe
" In ȝone lykande londe, lorde be I thyn
Thane they cayre to Combe, with kynge
That was kyde of the coste, kay of alle o
Sir fflorent and sir ffloridas than fownde
With ffreke mene of ffraunce welle a fyv
To the ceté vn-sene thay soghte at the ga

Sir Florent and Sir Floridas plant an ambush,

And sett an enbuschement, als theme sel
Thane ischewis owt of that ceté, fulle son
Slale discouerours, skyftes theire horses
Than skyftes thes skouerours, and skippe
Diskouéres for skulkers that they no ska
Pouéralle and pastorelles passede one aft
With porkes to pasture at the price ȝate
Boyes in the subarbis bourdene ffulle heg
At a bare synglere that to the bente rynn
Thane brekes oure buschemeñt, and the

and capture the city. [leaf 86, back]

Brayedez in-to the burghe with baners di
Stekes and stabbis[1] thorowe that them a
ffowre stretis, or thay stynte, they stroye

The conqueror holds his court in Como.

Now es the conquerour in Combe, and h
With-in the kyde castelle, with kyng
Reconsaillez[2] the comouns that to the ky
Comfourthes the carefulle with knyghtly
Made a captayne kene a knyghte of hys
Bot alle the contré and he fulle sone wan

The lord of Milan sends to offer submission and tribute.

The syre of Melane herde saye the cet
And send to Arthure sertayne lordes,
Grete sommes of golde, sexti horse charg
Be-soghte hyme as souerayne to socoure
And saide he wolde sothely be sugette fo
And make hyme seruece and suytte for
ffor plesaunce of Pawnce, and of Pownte
ffor Pyse, and for Pavy, he profers fulle
Bothe purpur, and palle, and precious st
Palfrayes for any prynce, and prouede st

[1] MS. stablis. [2] *Or* Becc

Digitized by Google

And ilke a ȝere for Melane a melione of golde,
Mekely at Martynmesse to menske with his hordes;
And euer withowttyne askynge he and his ayers
Be homagers to Arthure, whilles his lyffe lastis. 3147 He pays homage to Arthur at Como.
The kynge be his concelle a condethe hym sendis,
And he es comene to Combe, and knewe hym as lorde.
In-to Tuskane he tournez, whene thus wele tymede, Arthur enters Tuscany,
Takes townnes fulle tyte with towrres fulle heghe;
Walles he welte downe, wondyd knyghtez, 3152
Towrres he turnes, and turmentez the pople,
Wroghte wedewes fulle wlonke, wrotherayle synges,
Ofte wery and wepe, and wryngene theire handis; 3155
And alle he wastys with werre, thare he awaye rydez, and ravages the country.
Thaire welthes and theire wonny[n]ges, wandrethe he wroghte!
Thus they spryngene and sprede, and sparis bot lyttille,
Spoylles dispetouslye, and spillis theire vynes; 3159
Spendis vn-sparely, that sparede was lange,
Spedis theme to Spolett with speris inewe!
ffro Spayne in-to Spruyslande the worde of hyme sprynges, 3162
And spekynngs of his spencis, disspite es fulle hugge!
Towarde Viterbe this valyant avires the reynes;
Avissely in that vale he vetailles his biernez, In the Vale of Viterbo he victuals his men.
With vernage, and other wyne, and venysone bakene;
And one the vicounte londes he visez to lenge. 3167
Vertely the avawmwarde voydez theire horsez,
In the Vertennone vale, the vines i-mangez;
Thare suggeournes this souerayne, with solace in herte,
To see whene the senatours sent any wordes; 3171
Reuelle with riche wyne, riotes hym selfene,
This roy with his ryalle mene of the Rownde Table, The king and his knights make [leaf 87] great merriment.
With myrthis, and melodye, and manykyne gamnes;
Was neuer meriere men made one this erthe! 3175
Bot one a Seterdaye at none, a seuenyghte thare-aftyre, The cunningest Cardinal of Rome is sent to him,
The konyngeste cardynalle that to the courte lengede
Knelis to the conquerour, and karpes thire wordes,

Digitized by Google

Prayes hym for *th*e pes, and p*r*ofyrs fulle
To hafe peté of *th*e pope, *th*at put was at
Be-soghte hym of surrawns, for sake of o
Bot a seuenyghte daye to *th*ay ware alle
and offers that the Pope shall crown him as sovereign in Rome.
And they schulde sekerlye hym see th
ther-aftyre,
In the ceté of Rome, as soue*r*aynge and l
And crowne hyme kyndly w*ith* krysomed
W*ith* his ceptre, as soue*r*aynge and lorde
Hostages are given for the truth of his words.
Of this vndyrtakynge ostage are comyne,
Of ayers fulle auen*aun*t awughte score ch
In toges of tarsse fulle richelye attyryde,
And be-tuke theme the kynge, and his cl
When they had tretide thiere trewe, wit
ther-after
They tryne vn-to a tente, whare tables wi
The kynge hyme selfene es sette, and cert
Vndyre a sylure of sylke, sawghte at the
Alle the senato*ur*s are sette sere be *th*ame
The Roman senators are solemnly feasted.
Serfed solemply w*ith* selcouthe metes :
The kynge myghtty of myrthe, w*ith* his
Rehetez the Romaynes at his riche table,
Comforthes the cardynalle so knyghtly [1]
And this roye ryalle, as romawns vs tellis
Reuerence the Romayns in his riche table
The tawghte mene and *th*e conynge, when
thoghte,
Tas theire lefe at *th*e kynge, and tornede
To *th*e ceté *th*at nyghte thaye soughte at
And thus the ostage of Rome w*ith* Arthu
Arthur glorifies himself for his great success.
Than this roy royalle rehersys theis wor
" Now may we reuelle and riste, fore
awene !
Make oure ostage at ese, *th*ise auen*aun*t [2]
And luk ȝe hondene theme alle that in my
The emp*er*our of Almayne, and alle theis

[1] MS. kynghtly. [2] MS. auen

Digitized by Google

We salle be ouerlynge of alle that one the erthe lengez !
We wille by the Crosse dayes encroche[1] theis londez,
And at the Crystynmesse daye be crowned[2] ther-aftyre ; He will be crowned at Christmas in Rome, and hold his Round Table there.
Ryngne in my ryalltés, and holde my Rownde Table,
Withe the rentes of Rome, as me beste lykes ;
Syne graythe ouer the grette see with gud mene of armes,
To reuenge the renke that one the rode dyede !"
Thane this comlyche kynge, as cronycles tellys,
Bownnys brathely to bede with a blythe herte ; He goes to bed and dreams.
Of he slynges with sleghte, and slakes gyrdille,
And fore slewthe of slomowre one a slepe fallis.
Bot be ane aftyre mydnyghte alle his mode changede ;
He mett in the morne-while fulle meruaylous dremes ! [leaf 87, back]
And whene his dredefulle drem whas drefene to the ende,
The kynge dares for dowte, dye as he scholde ;
Sendes aftyre phylosophers, and his affraye telles,— He sends for his philosophers, and tells them the dream.
" Sene I was formede in fayth, so ferde whas I neuer !
ffor-thy rawnsakes redyly, and rede me my swefennys,
And I salle redily and ryghte rehersene the sothe.
Me thoughte I was in a wode willed myne one, He was in a wood among wild beasts,
That I ne wiste no waye whedire that I scholde,
ffore woluez, and whilde swynne, and wykkyde bestez ;
Walkede in that wasternne, wathes to seche ;
Thare lyouns fulle lothely lykkyde theire tuskes,
Alle fore lapynge of blude of my lele knyghtez ! which were licking from their teeth the blood of his knights.
Thurghe that foreste I flede, thare floures whare heghe,
ffor to fele me for ferde of tha foule thyngez ;
Merkede to a medowe with montayngnes enclosyde, He flew to a beautiful meadow enclosed with mountains, and having vines of silver and grapes of gold.
The meryeste of medillerthe that mene myghte be-holde !
The close was in compas castyne alle abowte,
With clauer and clereworte clede euene ouer ;
The vale was enuerownde[3] with vynes of siluer,
Alle with grapis of golde, gretter ware neuer,
Enhorilde with arborye and alkyns trees,
Erberis fulle honeste, and hyrdez there-vndyre ;

[1] MS. Encroche encroche. [2] MS. crownend.
[3] MS. euene rownde.

Digitized by Google

Alle froytez foddenid was *th*at floresched
ffaire frithed in frawnke appone tha free
Whas thare no downkynge of dewe th
scholde,
With *the* drowghte of *the* daye alle drye
A beautiful duchess descended from the clouds,
Than discendis in the dale, downe fra
A duches dereworthily dyghte in dyaper
In a surcott of sylke fulle selkouthely he
Alle with loyotour ouer-laide lowe to *the*
dressed in gorgeous apparel.
And with ladily lappes the lenghe of a
And alle redily reuersside with rebanes
Bruchez and besauntez, and other bryght
With hir bake and hir breste was broche
With kelle and with corenalle clenliche
And *th*at so comly of colour one knowen
She whirled a strange wheel with her hands.
A-bowte cho whirllide a whele with hir
Ouer-whelme alle qwayntely *the* whele a
The rowelle whas rede golde with ryalle
Raylide with reched and rubyes i-newe ;
The spekes was splentide alle with spelti
The space of a spere lenghe springande f
Thereon was a chair of silver, ornamented with carbuncles.
There-one was a chayere of chalke-whytt
And chekyrde with charebocle chawngy
Kings clave to the wheel one after another.
Appone *the* compas ther clewide kyngis
With corowns of clere golde *th*at kraked
Six had fallen from the settle, and lamented their misfortune.
Sex was of *th*at setille fulle sodaynliche
Ilke a segge by hyme selfe, and saide th
'That euer I rengnede one *th*ir rog, me r
[leaf 88]
Was neuer roye so riche that regnede in
Whene I rode in my rowte, roughte I n
Bot reuaye, and reuelle, and rawnsone th
And thus I drife forthe my dayes, wh
myghte,
And there-fore derflyche I am dampnede
The first was a little man with lean loins and long hair.
The laste was a litylle mane that laide w
His leskes laye alle lene and latheliche t

Digitized by Google

The lokkes lyarde and longe the lenghe of a ȝerde,
His lire and his lyghame lamede fulle sore;
*Th*e two eyne of *th*e byeryne was brighttere *th*ane siluer,
The to*ther* was ȝalowere thene the ȝolke of a naye.
'I was lorde,' q*uod* the lede, 'of londes i-newe, 3284 He had been lord of many lands, but now was lost.
And alle ledis me lowttede that lengede in erthe;
And nowe es lefte me no lappe my lygham to hele,
Bot lightly now ame I loste, leue iche mane the sothe!'
The secunde *sir* for-sothe *th*at sewede theme aftyre, The second had sat on the seat as sovereign and lord.
Was sekerare to my sighte, and saddare in armes;
Ofte he syghede vn-sownde, and said theis wordes,—
'On ȝone see hafe I sittene, als sou*er*ayne and lorde,
And ladys me louede to lappe in theyre armes; 3292
And nowe my lordchippes are loste, and laide for eu*er*!'
The thirde thorowely was throo, and thikke in the schuldyrs, The third was stout and strong.
A thra man to thrette of, there thretty ware gaderide;
His dyademe was droppede downe, dubbyde w*ith* stonys,
Endente alle with diamawndis, and dighte for *th*e nonis;
'I was dredde in my dayes,' he said, 'in dyuerse rewmes, He had been dreaded in his day.
And now dampnede to *th*e dede, and dole es the more!'
The fourte was a faire mane, and forsesy in armes, The fourth was a fair man, but foul mischance had now happened to him.
*Th*e fayreste of fegure that fo*ur*mede was eu*er*!
'I was frekke in my faithe,' he said, 'whilles I one fowlde regnede,
ffamows in fferre londis, and floure of alle kynges; 3303
Now es my face defadide, and foule es me hapnede,
ffor I am fallene fro ferre, and frendles by-leuyde!'
The fifte was a faire mane *th*ane fele of *th*ies o*ther*, The fifth was very fierce and violent.
A fforsesy mane and a ferse, with fomand lippis; 3307
He fongede faste one *th*e feleyghes, and fayled his armes,
Bot ȝit he failede and felle a fyfty fote large;
Bot ȝit he sprange and sprente, and spraddene his armes,
And one *th*e spere-lenghe spekes, he spekes *th*ire wordes—
'I was in Surrye a syr, and sett be myne one, 3312 He had been sovereign in Syria, but was now fallen.
As sou*er*ayne and seyngnou*r* of sere kynges londis;

Digitized by Google

Now of my solace I am fulle sodanly fallene,
And for sake of my syne, ȝone sete es me rewede!'

The sixth had a psalter well-bound, a harp, and a sling.

The sexte hade a sawtere semliche bowndene,
With a surepel of silke sewede fulle faire,
A harpe and a hande-slynge with harde flynte stones;
What harmes he has hente he halowes fulle sone,—
'I was demede in my dayes,' he said, 'of dedis of armes
One of the doughtyeste that duellede in erthe;
Bot I was merride one molde in my moste strenghethis,
With this maydene so mylde, *that* mofes vs alle.'

He had been among the [leaf 88, back] doughtiest in his day, but had been marred by the maiden.

Two kynges ware clymbande, and clauerande one heghe,
The creste of *the* compas they couette fulle ȝerne;

Two kings were climbing to the chair, but failed to reach it.

'This chaire of charbokle,' they said, 'we chalange here-aftyre,
As two of *the* cheffeste chosene in erthe!'
The childire ware chalke-whitte, chekys and *other*,
Bot the chayere a-bowne cheuede they neuer:

The one was passing fair of feature, and arrayed in blue with fleurs-de-lis of gold.

The forthirmaste was freely, *with* a frount large,
The faireste of fyssnamy *that* fourmede was euer;
And he was buskede in a blee of a blewe noble,
With flourdelice of golde floreschede al ouer;

The other was clad in silver, with a cross of gold.

The t*other* was cledde in a cote alle of clene siluer,
With a comliche crosse coruene of golde,
ffowre crosselettes krafty by *the* crosse ristes,
And ther-by knewe I the kynge, *that* crystnede hyme semyde.

Arthur greeted the Duchess, who welcomed him.

Thane I went to *that* wlonke, and wynly hire gretis,
And cho said, 'welcome i-wis! wele arte thow fowndene;
The aughte to wirchipe my wille, and thow wele cowthe,
Of alle the valyant men that euer was in erthe;
ffore alle thy wirchipe in werre by me has thow wonnene,
I hafe bene frendely, freke, and fremmede tille *other*;
That has *thow* fowndene in faithe, and fele of *thi* biernez,
ffore I fellid downe *sir* Frolle *with* frowarde knyghtes;
ffore-thi the fruytes of Fraunce are freely thynne awene.

Thow salle *the* chayere escheue, I chese *the* my selfene, — He was chosen to achieve the chair,
Be-fore alle *the* cheftaynes chosene in this erthe.' 3348
Scho lifte me vp lightly with̄ hir lene hondes,
And sette me softely in the see, *the* septre me rechede; — and was set therein.
Craftely with̄ a kambe cho kembede myne heuede, 3351
That the krispane kroke to my crownne raughte;
Dressid oñe me a diademe, that dighte was fulle faire, — The kingly ornaments were given to him.
And syne profres me a pome pighte fulle of faire stonys,
Enamelde *with* azoure, the erth̄ there-one depayntide,
Selkylde with̄ the salte see appone sere halfes, 3356
In sygne *th*at I sothely was souerayne in erthe.
Than broght cho me a brande *with* fulle bryghte hiltes, — A sword with a bright hilt was brought to him.
And bade me brawndysche *the* blade, '*the* brande es myne awene: 3359
Many swayne *with the* swynge has the sw[e]tte leuede;
ffor whilles thow swanke with̄ the swerde, it swykkede *the* neuer.'
Than raykes cho *with* roo, and riste whene hir likede,
To *the* ryndes of *the* wode, richere was neuer; 3363
Was no pomarie so pighte of pryncez in erthe,
Ne nonne apparaylle so prowde, bot paradys one.
Scho bad *the* bewes scholde bewe downe, and bryng to my hondes 3366 — He was taken to the wood, and the boughs were made to yield their fruit to him.
Of *the* beste that they bare one brawnches so heghe;
Than they heldede to hir heste alle holly at oñes,
The hegheste of iche a hirste, I hette ȝow for-sothe:
Scho bade me fyrthe noghte *the* fruyte, bot fonde whilles me likede, — He was bid take [leaf 89] freely of the finest.
'ffonde of *the* fyneste, thow freliche byerne, 3371
And reche to *the* ripeste, and ryotte thy seluene!
Riste, thow ryalle roye, for Rome es thyne awene!
And I salle redily rolle *the* roo at *the* gayneste,
And reche the *the* riche wyne in rynsede coupes.' 3375 — The lady drew wine for him from the spring,
Thane cho wente to *the* welle by *the* wode enis,
That alle wellyde of wyne, and wondirliche rynnes;
Kaughte vp a coppe-fulle, and couerde it faire; 3378
Scho bad me dereliche drawe, and drynke to hir selfene. — and bade him drink to her.

Digitized by Google

And thus cho lede me abowte the lenghe of an owre,
Witħ alle likynge and luffe, *th*at any lede scholde;
But at mid-day all was changed.
Bot at *th*e myddaye fulle ewyne alle hir mode chaungede,
And mad myche manace witħ meruaylloꝰ wordez;
Whene I cryede appone hire, cho kest downe hir browes:
She spoke to him fiercely, and told him that he should lose his life.
'Kyng, thow karpes for noghte, be Criste *th*at me made!
ffor thow salle lose this layke, and thi lyfe aftyre,
Thow has lyffede in delytte and lordchippes inewe!'
She whirled the wheel round, till his quarters were quashed and his chine chopped asunder by the chair.
Abowte scho whirles the whele, and whirles me vndire,
Tille alle my qwarters *th*at whille whare qwaste al to peces!
And witħ that chayere my chyne was chopped in sondire!
And I hafe cheueride for chele, sen me this chance happenede.
Than wakkenyde I iwys, alle wery for-dremyde,
And now wate thow my woo, worde as *th*e lykes."
The philosopher interprets the dream, and tells Arthur that his good fortune is passed.
"ffreke," sais the philosophre, "thy fortune es passede!
ffor thow salle fynd hir thi foo, frayste whene the lykes!
Thow arte at *th*e hegheste, I hette the for-sothe!
Chalange nowe when thow wille, thow cheuys no more!
Thow has schedde myche blode, and schalkes distroyede,
Sakeles, in cirquytrie, in sere kynges landis;
He is to prepare for his end,
Schryfe the of thy schame, and schape for thyne ende!
Thow has a schewynge, *sir* kynge, take kepe ȝif the lyke,
ffor thow salle fersely falle witħ-in fyve wynters!
and to found abbeys in France.
ffownde abbayes in ffraunce, *th*e froytez are theyne awene,
ffore ffroille, and for fferawnt, and for thir ferse knyghttis,
That thowe fremydly in ffraunce has faye be-leuede;
He is bid take heed of the other kings who tried the chair.
Take kepe ȝitte of o*ther* kynges, and kaste in thyne herte,
The first was Alexander, the second Hector, the third Julius Cæsar,
That were conquerours kydde, and crownede in erthe;
The eldeste was Alexandere, *th*at alle *th*e erthe lowttede;
The to*ther* Ector of Troye, the cheualrous gume;
The thirde Iulyus Cesare, *th*at geant was holdene,
In iche jorné jentille, a-juggede witħ lordes;
the fourth Judas the Maccabee,
The ferthe was *sir* Iudas, a justere fulle nobille,
The maysterfulle Makabee, the myghttyeste of strenghes;

Digitized by Google

The fyfte was Iosue, *th*at joly mane of armes, 3414 — the fifth Joshua,
*Th*at in Ier*usal*em oste fulle myche joye lymppede ;
The sexte was Dauid *th*e dere, demyd *with* kynges — the sixth David, who slew the great Goliath.
One of *th*e doughtyeste *th*at dubbede was eu*er*,
ffor he slewe with̄ a slynge, be sleyghte of his handis,
Golyas the grette gome, gry*m*meste in erthe ; 3419
Syne endittede in his dayes alle the dere psalmes, — [leaf 89, back]
*Th*at in *th*e sawtire ere sette with̄ selcouthe wordes.
The two clymbande kynges, I knawe it for-sothe, — Of the two kings who were climbing, one shall be Carolus of France;
Salle Karolus be callide, the kyng sone of Fraunce ;
He salle be crowelle and kene, and conquero*ur* holdene,
Couere be conqueste contres ynewe ; 3425
He salle encroche the crowne that Crist bare hym selfene, — he shall win the crown that Christ bare, and the lance that leapt to his heart;
And *th*at lifeliche launce, that lepe to his herte,
When he was crucyfiede one crose, and alle *th*e kene naylis,
Knyghtly he salle conquere to Cristyne men hondes.
The to*ther* salle be Godfraye, that Gode schalle reuenge
One *th*e Gud Frydaye with galyarde knyghtes ; 3431
He salle of Lorrayne be lorde, be leefe of his fadire, — the other shall be Godfrey, the lord of Lorraine, who shall recover the true cross.
And syne in Ier*usal*em myche joye happyne,
ffor he salle cou*er* the crosse be craftes of armes, 3434
And synne be corownde kynge, with̄ krysome enoynttede;
Salle no duke in his dayes siche destanye happyne,
Ne siche myschefe dreghe, whene trewthe salle be tryede !
ffore-thy ffortune *th*e fetches to fulfille the nowmbyre, — Arthur is needed to make up the number of the nine noblest.
Alls nynne of *th*e nobileste namede in erthe ; 3439
This salle in romance be redde *with* ryalle knyghttes,
Rekkenede and renownde with̄ ryoto*us* kynges,
And demyd one domesdaye, for dedis of armes, 3442 — He shall be celebrated for ever as the doughtiest on earth. Many clerks shall tell of his deeds.
ffor *th*e doughtyeste *th*at eu*er* was duelland in erthe :
So many clerkis and kynges salle karpe of 3oure dedis,
And kepe 3oure conquestez in cronycle for eu*er* !
Bot the wolfes in the wode, and the whilde bestes, — The wolves in the wood and the wild beasts are wicked men that are warring on his people.
Are some wikkyd mene that werrayes thy rewmes, 3447
Es entirde in thyne absence to werraye thy pople,

Digitized by Google

And alyenys and ostes of vncouthe landis.

He will have some tidings within ten days.

Thow getis tydandis I trowe, with-in tene dayes,
That some torfere es tydde, sene thow fro home turnede;
I rede thow rekkyne and reherse vn-resonable dedis,

He is bid to repent and amend.

Ore the repenttes fulle rathe alle thi rewthe werkes!
Mane, amende thy mode, or thow myshappene,
And mekely aske mercy for mede of thy saule!"

The king rises and puts on his robes.

Thane rysez the riche kynge, and rawghte one his wedys,
A reedde actone of rosse, the richeste of floures,
A pesane, and a paunsone, and a pris girdille;
And one he henttis a hode of scharlette fulle riche,
A pauys pillione hatt, *th*at pighte was fulle faire
W*ith* perry of *th*e Oryent, and p*re*cyous stones;
His gloues gayliche gilte, and grauene by *th*e he*m*mys,
W*ith* graynes of rubyes fulle gracious to schewe;
His bede grehownde, and his bronde, ande no byerne elles,
And bownnes ou*er* a brode mede, with breth at his herte;
ffurth he stalkis a stye by *th*a stille enys,
Stotays at a hey strette, studyande hyme one;

He sees a man approaching in the garb

Att the surs of *th*e sonne, he sees there co*m*mande,
Raykande to Romewarde the redyeste wayes,
A renke in a rownde cloke, with righte rowm*m*e clothes,
With hatte, and w*ith* heyghe schone homely and rownde;
With flatte ferthynges the freke was floreschede alle ou*er*,

[leaf 90]

Manye schredys and schragges at his skyrttes hy*n*nges,
With scrippe, ande with slawyne, and skalopis i-newe,

of a pilgrim.

Both pyke and palme, alls pilgram hym scholde.
The gome graythely hym grette, and bade gode morwene;
The kyng lordelye hym selfe, of langage of Rome,
Of Latyne corrou*m*ppede alle, fulle louely hym menys,—

He asks him whither he is going,

"Whedire wilnez thowe, wye, walkande thyne onne?
Qwhylles *th*is werlde es o werre, a wawhte I it holde;
Here es ane enmye w*ith* oste, vndire 3one vynes;
And they see the, for-sothe, sorowe the be-tyddes;
Bot 3if thow hafe condethe of *th*e kynge selfene,

Knaues wille kille the, and keppe at thow haues ; and tells him the dangers of the way.
And if *th*ou halde *th*e hey waye, they hente the also,
Bot if thow hastyly hafe helpe of his hende knyghttes."
Thane karpes *sir* Cradoke to the kynge selfene, 3487
"I salle for-gyffe hym my dede, so me Gode helpe ! The stranger says that he fears no dangers.
Onye grome vndire Gode, that one this grownde walkes !
Latte the keneste come, that to *th*e kyng langes,
I salle encoun*t*ire hyme as knyghte, so Cristę hafe my sawle ! 3491
ffor thow may noghte reche me, ne areste thy selfene,
*Th*offe *th*ou be richely arayede in fulle riche wedys ;
I wille noghte wonde for no werre, to wende whare me likes, 3494
Ne for no wy of this werlde, *th*at wroghte es one erthe !
Bot I wille passe in pilgremage *th*is pas vn-to Rome, He is bound in pilgrimage to Rome.
To purchese me p*ar*donne of the papę selfene ;
And of paynes of purgatorie be plene*r*ly assoyllede ;
Thane salle I seke sekirly my soue*r*ayne lorde, 3499
Sir Arthure of Inglande, that auena*u*nt byerne ! Then he has to find Arthur of England.
ffor he es in this empire, as hathelle men me telles,
Ostayande in this Oryente with awfulle knyghtes."
"Fro qwyne come *th*oue, kene mane," q*uod th*e kynge thane, 3503 The king asks him whence he comes, and whether he knows Arthur and his knights.
"That knawes kynge Arthure, and his knyghttes also ?
Was *th*oue eue*r* in his courte, qwylls he in kyth lengede ?
Thow karpes so kyndly, it comforthes myne herte !
Well wele has *th*ou wente, and wysely *th*ou sechis,
ffor *th*oue arte Bretowne bierne, as by thy brode speche."
"Me awghte to knowe *th*e kynge, he es my kydde lorde, He tells him that his name is Sir Cradok, a knight of Arthur's chamber, and keeper of Caerleon.
And I calde in his courte a knyghte of his chambire ;
Sir Craddoke was I callide, in his courte riche, 3511
Kepare of Karlyone, vndir the kynge selfene ;
Nowe am I cachede owtt of kyth, w*ith* kare at my herte,
And that castelle es cawghte w*ith* vncowthe ledys."
Than the comliche kynge kaughte hym in armes, 3515 The king kisses and welcomes Sir Cradok.
Keste of his ketille-hatte, and kyssede hyme fulle sone,

Digitized by Google

Saide, "welcome, *sir* Craddoke, so Criste mott me helpe!
Dere cosyne of kynde, thowe coldis myne herte!
How faris it in Bretaynne, *with* alle my bolde berynns?
Are they brettenede, or brynte, or broughte owte of lyue?
Kene *thou* me kyndely whatte caase es be-fallene; 3521
I kepe no credens to crafe, I knawe the for trewe."

Sir Cradok tells him of the evil [leaf 90, back] deeds of Modred.

"Sir, thi wardane es wikkede, and wilde of his dedys;
ffor he wandreth̄ has wroghte, sen *thou* a-waye passede;
He has castelles encrochede, and corownde hym seluene,
Kaughte in alle *the* rentis of *the* Rownde Tabille;
He devisede *the* rewme, and delte as hym likes; 3527
Dubbede of *the* Danmarkes, dukes and erlles,
Disseueride *them* sondirwise, and cites dystroyede,
To Sarazenes and Sessoynes, appone sere halues,

He has gathered forces of paynims and outlaws,

He has semblede a sorte of selcouth̄e berynes, 3531
Soueraynes of Surgenale, and sowdeours many,
Of Peygh̄tes, and paynymms, and prouede knyghttes
Of Irelande and Orgaile, owtlawede berynes;
Alle thaa laddes are knyghttes *that* lange to *the* mowntes,
And ledynge and lordechippe has alle, aH̄s theme selfe likes; 3536
And there es *sir* Childrike a cheftayne holdyne,
That ilke cheualrous mane, he chargges thy pople;

who rob the religious and ravish the nuns.

They robbe thy religeous, and ravische[1] thi nonnes, 3539
And redy ryddis *with* his rowtte to rawnsone *the* pouere;
ffro Humbyre to Hawyke he haldys his awene,

He has seized the whole of England and all Arthur's castles.

And alle *the* cowntré of Kentt be couenawnte entayllide;
The comliche castelles that to the corowne langede,
The holttes, and the hare-wode, and the harde bankkes,
Alle *that* Henguste and Hors hent in *the*ire tyme;

He has a fleet of seven score ships at Southampton.

Att Southamptone on the see es seuene skore chippes,
ffrawghte fulle of ferse folke, owt of ferre landes, 3547
ffor to fyghte *with* thy ffrappe, whene *thow* theme assailles.

But, worst of all, he has taken Guinever, and holds her as his wife!

Bot ȝitt a worde witterly, thowe watte noghte *the* werste!
He has weddede Waynore, and hir his wieffe holdis,

[1] MS. ravichse

Digitized by Google

And woñnys in the wilde bowndis of *the* weste marches,
And has wroghte hire with̄ childe, as wittnesse tellis!
Off alle *the* wyes of *thi*s worlde, woo motte hym worthe,
AHs wardayne vnworthye womene to ȝeme!
Thus has *sir* Modrede merrede vs alle! 3555
ffor-thy I merkede ou*er* thees mowntes, to mene *the* the sothe."

Than the burliche kynge, for brethe at his herte, Arthur is overcome by the tidings, and vows revenge.
And for this botelesse bale alle his ble chaungede!
"By *the* rode," sais *the* roye, "I salle it revenge! 3559
Hym salle repente fulle rathe alle his rewthe werkes!"
Alle wepande for woo he went to his tentis;
Vnwynly this wyesse kynge, he wakkenysse his berynes,
Clepid in a clarioune kynges and othire, 3563
Callys theme to concelle, and of *thi*s cas tellys,— He calls a council and tells them the ill news.
"I am w*ith* tresone be-trayede, for alle my trewe dedis!
And alle my trauayle es tynt, me tydis no bettire!
Hym salle torfere be-tyde, *thi*s tresone has wroghte,
And I may traistely hym take, as I am trew lorde!
This es Modrede, *the* mane that I moste traystede,
Has my castelles encrochede, and corownde hyme seluene,
W*ith* renttes and reches of the Rownde Table; 3571
Has made alle hys retenewys of renayede wrechis,
And devysed my rewme to dyverse lordes,
To sowdeours and to Sarazenes owtte of sere londes!
He has weddyde Waynore, and hyr to wyefe holdes, [leaf 91]
And a childe es eschapede, the chaunce es no bettire!
They hafe semblede on the see seuene schore chippis,
ffulle of ferrome folke, to feghte with̄ myne one!
ffor-thy to Bretayne the brode buske vs by-houys, 3579 They must proceed to Britain with all speed.
ffor to brettyne *the* berynne that has this bale raysede!
Thare salle no freke men fare, bott alle one fresche horses,
That are fraistede in fyghte, and floure of my knyghttez:
Sir Howelle and *sir* Hardolfe here salle be-leue, 3583 Sir Howell and Sir Hardolf shall remain behind to govern Rome and Italy.
To be lordes of the ledis that here to me lenges;
Lokes in-to Lumbardye, *th*at thare no lede chaunge,—

Digitized by Google

And tendirly to Tuskayne take tente alls I byde ;
Resaywe the rentis of Rome qwene *th*ay are rekkenede ;
Take sesyne the same daye that laste was assygnede,
Or elles alle *th*e ostage, with-owttyne *th*e wallys,
Be hynggyde hye appone hyghte alle holly at ones ! "

Arthur and his best knights journey rapidly towards Britain.

Nowe bownes the bolde kynge with [his] beste knyghtes,
Gers trome and trusse, and trynes forth aftyre ;
Turnys thorowe Tuskayne, taries bot littille,
Lyghte noghte in Lum*b*arddye bot whene *th*e lyghte failede ;
Merkes ou*er* the mowntaynes fulle mervaylo*us* wayes,
Ayres thurghe Almaygne evyne at the gayneste ;
fferkes evynne in-to fflawndresche *with* hys ferse knyghttes ;

In fifteen days his fleet is assembled.

With-in fyftene dayes his flete es assemblede,

He embarks and sets sail.

And thane he schoupe hyme to chippe, and schownnes no lengere,
Scherys with a charpe wynde ou*er* *th*e schyre waters ;
By *th*e roche with ropes he rydes one ankkere,

He discovers the fleet of the enemy armed and prepared for fight.

Thare the false mene fletyde, and one flode lengede,
With chefe chaynes of chare chokkode to-gedyrs,
Charggede evyne chekefulle of cheualrous knyghtes ;
And in *th*e hynter one heghte, helmes and crestes,
Hatches *with* haythene mene hillyd ware thare vndyre,
Prowdliche purtrayede[1] with payntede clothys,
Iche a pece by pece prykkyde tylle o*ther*,
Dubbyde with dagswaynnes dowblede they seme ;
And thus *th*e derfe Danamarkes had dyghte alle theyre chippys,
That no dynte of no darte dere theme ne schoulde.
Than the roye and *th*e renkes of the Rownde Table

Then he makes ready his ships for the battle,

Alle ryally in rede arrayes his chippis ;
That daye ducheryes he delte, and doubbyde knyghttes,
Dresses dromowndes and dragges, and drawene vpe stonys ;

[1] MS. prutrayede.

Digitized by Google

The toppe-castelles he stuffede *with* toyelys, as hym lykyde,
Bendys bowes of vys brothly *th*are-aftyre;
Tolowris tentyly takelle they ryghttene,
Brasene hedys fulle brode buskede one flones,
Graythes for garnysones gomes arrayes; 3620
Gryme gaddes of stele, ghywes of iryne,
Stiȝttelys[1] steryne one sterynne with̄ styffe mene of armes;
Mony lufliche launce appone lofte stonndys,
Ledys one leburde, lordys and o*ther*, 3624
Pyghte payvese one porte, payntede scheldes,
One hyndire hurdace one highte helmede knyghtez.
Thus they scheftene foreschotys one thas schirestrandys, [leaf 91, back]
Ilke schalke in his schrowde, fulle scheene ware *th*eire wedys. 3628
The bolde kynge es in a barge and a-bowtte rowes,
Alle bare-heuvede for besye with̄ beueryne lokkes;
And a beryne with̄ his bronde, and ane helme betyne,
Mengede *with* a mawncelet of maylis of silu*er*, 3632
Compaste *with* a coronalle, and couerde[2] fulle riche;
Kayris to yche a cogge, to comfurthe his knyghttes:
To Clegys and Cleremownde he cryes one lowde,—
"O Gawayne! O Galyrane! thies gud mens bodyes."
To Loth̄ and to Lyonelle fulle louefly he melys, 3637
And to *sir* Lawncelot de Lake lordliche wordys,—
"Lat vs coue*re* *th*e kythe, the coste es owre ownne;
And gere theme brotheliche blenke, alle ȝone blod-hondes!
Bryttyne them *with*-in bourde, and brynne theme *th*are aftyre! 3641
Hewe downe hertly ȝone heythene tykes!
Thay are harlotes halfe, I hette ȝow myne honnde!"
Than he coue*re*s his cogge, and caches one ankere,
Kaughte his comliche helme *with* *th*e clere maylis;
Buskes baners one brode, betyne of gowles,
With̄ corowns of clere golde clenliche arraiede; 3647

The tool-men righten the tackle,
grim goads of steels and gyves of iron.
He cries aloud to Cleges and Cleremound, to Lionel and Lancelot,
"let us recover our land and make yon blood-hounds blench; hew down heartily the heathen hounds."
He reaches his ship, takes his helmet and mail, and displays his banners.

[1] MS. Stirttelys. [2] MS. coue*re*rde.

Digitized by Google

His chief device is a picture of our Lady and the Child.

Bot *th*are was chosene in *th*e chefe a chalke-whitte maydene,
And a childe in hir arme, *th*at chefe es of hevynne:
Wit̄-owttene changynge in chace, thies ware *th*e cheefe armes
Of Arthure *th*e auen*aun*t, qwhylles he in ert̄he lengede.

The sailors busy themselves to get the ships under weigh.

Thane the marynerse mellys, and maysters of chippis,
Merily iche a mate menys tille o*ther*;
Of theire termys they talke, how *th*ay ware tydd,
Towyne trvsselle one trete, trvssene vpe sailes,
Bet bonettez one brede, bettrede hatches;
Brawndeste browne stele, braggede in trompes;
Standis styffe one the stamyne, steris one aftyre;

They strike across the stream and the strife begins.

Strekyne ou*er th*e streme, thare stryvynge be-gynnes.
ffro *th*e wagande wynde owte of *th*e weste rysses,
Brethly bessomes w*ith* byrre in berynes sailles;
Wit̄ hir bryngges one burde burliche cogges,
Qwhylles *th*e bilynge and *th*e beme brestys in sondyre;
So stowttly *th*e forsterne one *th*e stam hyttis,

There is great dashing together of ships.

*Th*at stokkes of *th*e stere-burde strykkys in peces!
Be thane cogge appone cogge, krayers and o*ther*,

Grapplings are thrown out.

Castys crepers one crosse als to *th*e crafte langes:
Thane was hede-rapys hewene *th*at helde vpe *th*e mastes;

A mighty struggle ensues.

Thare was conteke fulle kene, and crachynge of chippys!
Grett cogges of kampe crasseches in sondyre!
Mony kabane clevede, cabilles destroyede!
Knyghtes and kene mene killide the braynes!
Kidd castelles were corvene w*ith* alle theire kene wapene,
Castelles fulle comliche, *th*at coloured ware faire!
Vpcynes eghelynge *th*ay ochene *th*are-aftyre,

Masts fall and kill the mariners.

Wit̄ *th*e swynge of *th*e swerde sweys *th*e mastys;
Ovyre-fallys in *th*e firste frekis and othire,
ffrekke in *th*e forchipe fey es byleucfede!

[leaf 92]

Than brothely they bekyre wit̄ boustouse tacle,

Boardings are made and hand-to-hand fights take place.

Bruschese boldlye one burde brynyede knyghtes,
Owt of botes one burde was buskede wit̄ stonys,
Bett downe of *th*e beste, brystis the hetches;

Digitized by Google

Som gomys thourghe-gyrde with gaddys of yryne,
Gomys gayliche clede[1] englaymous wapene!
Archers of Inglande fulle egerly schottes,
Hittis thourghe the harde stele fulle hertly dynnttis!
Sonne hotchene in holle the hethenne knyghtes,
Hurte thourghe the harde stele, hele they neuer!
Than they falle to the fyghte, ffoynes with sperys,
Alle the frekkeste one frownte that to the fyghte langes;
And ilkone frechely fraystez theire strenghes,
Were to fyghte in the flete with theire felle wapyne.
Thus they dalte that daye, thire dubbide knyghtes,
Tille alle the Danes ware dede, and in the depe throwene!
Than Bretones brothely with brondis they hewene,
Lepys in vp one lofte lordeliche berynes;
When ledys of owt-londys leppyne in waters,
Alle oure lordes one lowde laughene at ones!
Be thane speris whare spronngene, spalddyd chippys,
Spanyolis spedily sprentyde ouer burdez;
Alle the kene mene of kampe, knyghtes and other,
Killyd are colde dede, and castyne ouer burdez!
Theire swyers sweyftly has the swete leuyde,
Hethene heuande on hatche in ther hawe ryses,
Synkande in the salte see seuene hundrethe at ones!
Thane sir Gawayne the gude, he has the gree wonnene,
And alle the cogges grete he gafe to his knyghtes,
Sir Geryne, and sir Grisswolde,[2] and othir gret lordes;
Garte Galuth, a gud gome, girde of thaire hedys!
Thus of the false flete appone the flode happenede,
And thus theis feryne folke fey are beleuede!
3itt es the traytoure one londe with tryede knyghttes,
And alle trompede they trippe one trappede stedys,
Schewes theme vndir schilde one the schire bankkes;
He ne schownttes for no schame, bot schewes fulle heghe!
Sir Arthure and Gawayne avyede theme bothene
To sexty thosandez of mene, that in theire syghte houede.
Be this the folke was fellyde, thane was the flode passede;

The archers of England make havoc among the heathen knights.

The Danes of Modred's fleet are all slain.

Arthur's lords laugh to see their foes leap into the water.

All Modred's keen men are killed.

Sir Gawaine gives the ships to his knights.

Thus befell the false fleet.

But Modred the traitor has a land army of tried knights.

[1] *Or* clade. [2] MS. Grifswolde.

Digitized by Google

Thane was it slyke a slowde in slakkes fulle hugge,
Arthur waits for the tide to rise before he lands. That let *the* kyng for to lande, and the lawe watyre;
ffor-thy he lengede one laye for lesynng of horsesys,
To loke of his lege mene, and of his lele knyghtes,
ȝif any ware lamede or loste, life ȝife they scholde.
Sir Gawaine wades ashore. Than *sir* Gawayne *the* gude a galaye he takys, 3724
And glides vp at a gole with̄ gud mene of armes;
Whene he growndide, for grefe he gyrdis in *the* watere,
That to *the* girdylle he gos in alle his gylte wedys;
Schottis vpe appone *the* sonde in syghte of *the* lordes,
Sengly w*ith* hys soppe, my sorowe es the more!
[leaf 92, back] With̄ baners of his bagys beste of his armes, 3730
He braydes vp-on the banke in his bryghte wedys;
He bids his standard-bearer advance against Modred's host. He byddys his baneoure, "buske *th*ow be-lyfe
To ȝone brode batayle that one ȝone banke houes;
And I ensure ȝow sothe I salle ȝowe sewe aftyre; 3734
Loke ȝe blenke for no bronde, ne for no bryghte wapyne,
Bot beris downe of *the* beste and bryng theme o-dawe!
Bees noghte abayste of theire boste, abyde one *the* erthe;
ȝe haue my baneres borne in batailles fulle hugge;
"We shall fell yon false men, the field shall be ours." We salle fēlle ȝone false, *th*e fende hafe theire saules!
ffightes faste w*ith* *the* frape, *th*e felde salle be owres;
May I *th*at traytoure ouer-take, torfere hyme tyddes,
That this tresone has tymbyrde to my trewe lorde!
Of siche a engendure fulle littylle joye happyns, 3743
And *th*at salle in this journee be juggede fulle euene!"
He and his little band charge the whole army. Now they seke ouer *the* sonde *th*is soppe at *the* gayneste,
Sembles one *the* sowdeours, and settys theire dyntys;
Thourghe *the* scheldys so schene schalkes *th*ey towche,
With̄ schaftes scheueride schorte of *th*as schene launces;
Derfe dynttys they dalte w*ith* daggande sperys;
One *the* danke of *the* dewe many dede lyggys, 3750
Dukes, and duszeperis, and dubbide knyghttys;
The doughttyeste of Danemarke vndone are for euer!
Thus thas renkes in rewthe rittis theire brenyes,
And rechis of *the* richeste vn-rekene dynttis; 3754
Thare they thronge in the thikke, and thristis to *the* erthe

Digitized by Google

Of the thraeste mene thre hundrethe at ones ! 3756
Bot *sir* Gawayne for grefe myghte noghte agayne-stande,
Vmbegrippys a spere, and to a gome rynnys,
*Tha*t bare of gowles fulle gaye, *with* gowces of syluere ;
He gyrdes hym in at *the* gorge *with* his gryme[1] launce,
*Tha*t *the* growndene glayfe graythes in sondyre ! 3761
*With tha*t boystous brayde he bownes hym to dye !
The kynge of Gutlande it was, a gude mane of armes.
Thayre avawwarde than alle voydes *tha*re-aftyre,
AHs venqueste verrayely *with* valyant berynes ; 3765
Metis *with* medilwarde, that Modrede ledys !
Oure mene merkes theme to, as theme myshappenede—
ffor hade *sir* Gawayne hade grace to halde *the* grene hille,
He had wirchipe i-wys wonnnene for *ȝuer* ! 3769

They slay three hundred of the bravest.

Sir Gawaine kills the king of Gothland.

The vanguard of the army flies.

Gawaine rashly advances against the centre, where Modred is, with the Montagus and other great lords.

Bot *tha*ne *sir* Gawayne i-wysse, he waytes hym wele
To wreke hyme on this werlaughe, *that this* werre mouede ;
And merkes to *sir* Modrede amonge alle his beryns,
Witħ the Mownttagus, and *other* gret lordys.
*Tha*n *sir* Gawayne was greuede, and *with* a gret wylle
ffewters a faire spere, and freschely askryes,— 3775
" ffals fosterde foode, the fende haue thy bonys !
ffy one the, felone, and thy false werkys !
Thow salle be dede and vndone for thy derfe dedys,
Or I salle dy this daye, ȝif destanye worthe ! " 3779

Gawaine puts a good spear in rest, and assails Modred with reproaches.

[leaf 93]

Thane his enmye, witħ oste of owtlawede berynes,
Alle enangylles abowte oure excellente knyghttez,
That the traytour*e* be tresone had tryede hym seluene ;
Dukes of Danemarke he dyghttes fulle sone, 3783
And leders of Lettowe, witħ legyons inewe,
Vmbylappyde oure mene witħ launcez fulle kene,
Sowdeours and Sarazenes owte of sere landys,
Sexty thosande mene semlyly arrayede, 3787
Sekerly assembles thare one seuenschore knyghtes,
Sodaynly in dischayte by tha salte strandes.

The host of the enemy, numbering sixty thousand men, surround Gawaine and his little band.

Thane *sir* Gawayne grette witħ his gray eghene,
ffor grefe of his gud mene that he gyde schulde ; 3791

Gawaine weeps and laments for the danger of his men.

[1] growne *struck out, and* gryme *written instead.*

Digitized by Google

He wyste that *th*ay wondyde ware, and wery for-
foughttene;
And what for wondire and woo, alle his witte faylede.
And thane syghande he saide, *with* sylande terys,—
"We are with Sarazenes be-sett appone sere halfes!
I syghe noghte for my selfe, sa helpe oure Lorde; 3796
Bot for to [see] vs supprysede, my sorowe es the more.
Bes dowghtty to-daye, 3one dukes schalle be 3oures!
ffor dere Dryghttyne this daye, dredys no wapyne.
He comforts them with promises of blessings in heaven. We salle ende this daye alls excellent knyghttes, 3800
Ayere to endelesse joye with angelles vnwemmyde.
*Th*ofe we hafe vnwittyly wastede oure selfene,
We salle wirke alle wele in *th*e wirchipe of Cryste.
We salle for 3one Sarazenes, I sekire 3ow my trowhe,
Souppe *with* oure Saueoure solemply in heuene,
In presence of *th*at precious, prynce of alle *other* 3806
They shall sup with prophets, patriarchs, and apostles. With prophetes, and patriarkes, and apostlys fulle nobill,
Be-fore his freliche face that fourmede vs alle!
He that yields unslain, be he nevermore saved or succoured of Christ! 3ondire to 3one 3aldsones, he *th*at 3eldes hyme euer,
Qwhylles he es qwykke and in qwerte vnquellyde *with*
handis,
Be he neuer mo sauede, ne socourede *with* Cryste,
Bot Satanase his sawle mowe synke in-to helle!" 3812
Then Gawaine grimly grips his weapon, Than grymly *sir* Gawayne gryppis hys wapyne,
Agayne *th*at gret bataille he graythes hym sone;
Radly of his riche swerde he reghttes *th*e cheynys,
In he schokkes his schelde, schountes he no lengare;
Bot alls vnwyse, wodewyse, he wente at *th*e gayneste,
and rushes into the fray. Wondis of thas wedirwyns *with* wrakfulle dynttys,
Alle wellys fulle of blode, thare he awaye passes; 3819
And *th*ofe hym ware fulle woo, he wondys bot lyttille,
He performs mighty deeds of arms. Bot wrekys at his wirchipe *th*e wrethe of hys lorde!
He stekys stedis in stoure, and sterenefulle knyghttes,
That steryne mene in theire sterapes stone-dede *th*ay lygge!
He ryvys *th*e ranke stele, he rittes *th*e mayles; 3824
Thare myghte no renke hym areste, his resone was
passede!

Digitized by Google

He fellе in a fransye for fersenesse of herte, — He fights like a madman.
He feghttis and fellis downe *th*at hyme be-fore standis !
ffellе neuer fay manе siche fortune in erthe ! 3828
In-to *th*e hale bataile hedlyngs he rynnys,
And hurtes of *th*e hardieste *th*at one the erthe lenges !
Letande aHs a lyonе, he lawnches themе thorowe,
Lordes and ledars, that one the launde houes ! 3832 [leaf 93, back]
ȝit *sir* Gawayne for wo wondis bot lyttillе,
Bot woundis of thas wedirwynes *with* wondirfullе dyntes,
Alls he *th*at wold wilfully wastenе hymе selfenе ;
And for wondsomе and willе allе his wit failede, 3836
That wode aHs a wylde beste he wente at *th*e gayneste; — Mad as a wild beast, he leaves all wallowing in blood where he passes.
Allе walewede one blode, thare he a-waye passede ;
Iche a wy may be warre, be wreke of an-*other* ! 3839

*Th*an he moues to *sir* Modrede amange allе his knyghttes,
And mett hymе in *th*e myde schelde, and mallis hymе thorowe ;
Bot the schalke for the scharpe he schownttes a littillе,
He schare hymе one *th*e schorte rybbys a schaftmonde large ! 3843 — He wounds Modred in the side.
The schafte schoderede and schotte in the schire berynе,
*Th*at *th*e schadande blode ouer his schanke rynnys,
And schewede onе his schynbawde, *th*at was schire burneste ! 3846
And so they schyfte and schove, he schotte to *th*e ertħe; — Modred falls to the earth.
*With th*e lussche of *th*e launce he lyghte one hys schuldyrs,
Ane akere lenghe one a launde, fullе lothely wondide.
Than Gawayne gyrde to *th*e gome, and one *th*e groffe fallis ; 3850
AHs his grefe was graythede, his grace was no bettyre !
He schokkes owtte a schorte knyfe schethede with̄ siluere, — Gawaine strikes at him with a knife, but misses his blow.
And scholde haue slottede hymе in, bot no slytte happenede ;
His hand sleppid and slode o slante one *th*e mayles,
And *th*e to*ther* slely slynges hym vndire : 3855
With̄ a trenchande knyfe the traytoure hym hyttes, — The traitor hits him

Digitized by Google

through the helmet and the head.

Thorowe *th*e helme and *th*e hede, one heyghe one *th*e brayne :

And thus *sir* Gawayne es gon*e*, the gude man of armes,
With-owttyn*e* reschewe of renke, and rewghe es *th*e more !

Gawaine is gone, the good man of arms!

Thus *sir* Gawayn*ne* es gon*e*, that gyede many othire ;
ffro Gowere to Gernesay, all*e* *th*e gret lordys
Of Glamo*ur*, of Galys londe, *th*is galyarde knyghtes,
ffor glent of gloppyny*ng* [1] glade be they neu*er* !

Kyng ffroderike of Fres faythely *th*are-aftyre,
ffraynes at the false mane of owre ferse knyghte ;

King Frederick asks who he was.

" Knew thow eu*er* this knyghte in thi kithe ryche,
Of whate kynde he was comen*e*? be-knowe now *th*e sothe ;
Qwat gome was he this w*ith* the gaye armes,
With *th*is gryffoun*e* of golde, *th*at es one growffe fallyn*e*?
He has grettly greffede vs, sa me Gode helpe !
Gyrde down*e* oure gude men*e*, and greuede vs sore !
He was *th*e sterynneste in stoure that eu*er* stele werryde,
ffore he has stonayede oure stale, and stroyede for eu*er* !"

Modred tells him that he was Sir Gawaine the good, the merriest, the kindliest, and the bravest of knights!

Than *sir* Mordrede w*ith* mouthe melis fulle faire ;
" He was makles one molde, mane, be my trowhe ;
This was *sir* Gawayne the gude, *th*e gladdeste of othire,
And the graciouseste gome that vndire God lyffede,

The hardiest of hand, the happiest in arms, the most courteous in hall!

Mane hardyeste of hande, happyeste in armes,
And *th*e hendeste in hawle vndire heuen*e* riche ;
*Th*e lordelieste of ledynge qwhylles he lyffe myghte,
ffore he was lyone allossede in londes i-newe ;

[leaf 94]

Had thow knawen*e* hym, *sir* kynge, in kythe thare he lengede,
His konynge, his knyghthode, his kyndly werkes,
His doyng, his doughtynesse, his dedis of armes,
Thow wolde hafe dole for his dede *th*e dayes of thy lyfe !"

Modred weeps and curses his destiny.

3it *that* traytour aHs tite teris lete he falle,
Turnes hym furthe tite, and talkes no more,
Went wepand a-waye, and weries the stowndys,

[1] MS. gloppyngny*ng*.

Digitized by Google

*Th*at euer his werdes ware wroghte siche wandrethe to wyrke :] — that ever he was fated to work such woe.
Whene he thoghte on *th*is thynge, it thirllede his herte ;
ffor sake of his sybb blode sygheande he rydys ;
When *that* renayede renke remembirde hym seluen*e*,
Of reuerence and ryotes of *th*e Rownde Table,
He remyd and repent hym*e* of all*e* his rewthe werkes, — He repents of his wickedness and
Rode awaye with̄ his rowte, ristys he no lengere, — retreats,
ffor rade of oure riche kynge, ryve *th*at he scholde.
Thane kayres he to Cornewaile, carefull*e* in herte, — goes into Cornwall,
Be-cause of his kynsemane that one the coste ligges :
He taries tremlande ay, tydandis to herken*e*.
Than the traytou*r*e treuntede *th*e Tyseday *th*ar-aftyre,
Trynnys in w*ith* a trayne tresone to wirke,
And by *th*e Tambire *th*at tide his tentis he reris, — and pitches his tents by the Tamar,
And thane in a mette-while a messangere he sendes,
And wraite vn-to Waynor how the werlde chaungede, — and from thence writes to Guinever,
And what comliche coste the kyng was aryuede,
One floode foughten*e* w*ith* his fleete, and fellyd theme o lyfe ;
Bade hir ferken*e* oo ferre, and fflee with̄ hir childire,
Whills he myghte wile hym*e* awaye, and wyn*e* to hir speche,
Ayere in-to Irelande, in-to *th*as owte-mowntes, — bidding her fly into Ireland.
And wonn*e* thare in wildernesse w*ith*-in *th*a wast landys.
Than cho ȝermys and ȝee at ȝorke in hir chambire,
Gronys full*e* grysely w*ith* gretand teres,
Passes owte of *th*e palesse w*ith* all*e* hir pryce maydenys,
Towarde Chestyre in a charre thay chese hir *th*e wayes,
Dighte hir ewyn*e* for to dye w*ith* dule at hir herte ;
Scho kayres to Karelyone, and kawghte hir a vaile, — But she goes to Caerleon and takes the veil.
Askes thare *th*e habite in *th*e honoure of Criste,
And all*e* for falsede, and frawde, and fere of hir louerde!
Bot whene oure wiese kynge wiste *that* Gawayne was landede,
He al to-wrythes for woo, and wryngande his handes, — Arthur is grieved

for Gawaine's rash landing, and follows him wading through the water.

Gers lawnche his botes appone a lawe watire,
Londis als a lyone *with* lordliche knyghtes,
Slippes in in the sloppes o-slante to *the* girdylle,
Swalters vpe swyftly *with* his swerde drawene,
Bownnys his bataile and baners displayes,
Buskes ou*er* *the* brode sandes *with* breth at his herte,

He hastens to the field where ten thousand of the traitor's men and seven score of his own knights lie dead.

fferkes frekkly one felde *thare* *the* feye lygges;
Of the traytou*rs* mene one trappede stedis,
Ten thosandez ware tynte, *the* trewghe to acownt,
And certane on owre syde seuene score knyghtes
In soyte *with* theire souerayne vn-sownde are beleuede!

[leaf 94, back]

The kynge comly ou*er*-keste knyghtes and othire,

Arthur slays dukes and earls;

Erlles of Awfrike, and Estriche berynes
Of Orgaile and Orekenay, *the* Irescne kynges,
The nobileste of Norwaye, nowmbirs fulle hugge,
Dukes of Danamarke, and dubbid knyghtes;
And the guchede kynge in the gay armes
Lys gronande one *the* grownnde, and girde thorowe evene!

he seeks for the knights of the Round Table,

The riche kynge ransakes with rewthe at his herte,
And vp rypes the renkes of alle *the* Rownde Tabylle;
Ses theme alle in a soppe in sowte by theme one,
With *the* Sarazenes vn-sownde enserchede a-bowte;

and finds Sir Gawaine lying dead.

And *sir* Gawayne the gude in his gaye armes,
Vmbegrippede the girse, and one grouffe fallene,
His baners braydene downe, betyne of gowlles,
His brand and his brade schelde al blody be-rouene;
Was neu*er* oure semliche kynge so sorowfulle in herte,
Ne *that* sanke hyme so sade, bot *that* sighte one.

With groans and tears he kisses the body.

Than gliftis *the* gud kynge, and glopyns in herte,
Gronys fulle grisely *with* gretande teris;
Knelis downe to *the* cors, and kaught it in armes,
Kastys vpe his vmbrere, and kyssis hyme sone,
Lokes one his eye-liddis, *that* lowkkide ware faire,
His lippis like to *the* lede, and his lire falowede!

He bitterly laments the good knight.

Than the corownde kyng cryes fulle lowde,—
"Dere kosyne o kynde, in kare am I leuede!

Digitized by Google

ffor nowe my wirchipe es wente, and my were endide !
Here es *th*e hope of my hele, my happynge of armes !
My herte and my hardynes hale one hym lengede !
My concelle, my comforthe, *th*at kepide myne herte !
Of alle knyghtes *th*e kynge *th*at vndir Criste lifede,
*Th*ou was worthy to be kynge, *th*ofe I *th*e corowne bare !
My wele and my wirchipe of alle *th*is werlde riche
Was wonnene thourghe *sir* Gawayne, *and* thourghe his witt one !
Allas !" saide *sir* Arthure, "nowe ekys my sorowe !
I am vttirly vndone in myne awene landes !
A dowttouse derfe dede, *th*ou duellis to longe !
Why drawes *th*ou so one dreghe? thow drownnes myne herte !"

It was through his wit that all his conquests were made.

Than swe[l]tes the swete kynge and in swoune fallis,
Swafres vp swiftely, and swetly hym kysses,
Tille his burliche berde was blody be-rowne,
Alls he had bestes birtenede, and broghte owt of life ;
Ne had *sir* Ewayne comene, and othire grete lordys,
His bolde herte had broustene for bale at *th*at stownde!

Arthur swoons for grief; then starts up and kisses the dead knight. His beard is smeared in the blood of Gawaine.

"Blyne," sais thies bolde mene, "thow blondirs *th*i selfene,
*Th*is es botles bale, for bettir bees it neuer !
It es no wirchipe i-wysse to wryng thyne hondes,
To wepe als a womane it es no witt holdene !
Be knyghtly of contenaunce, als a kyng scholde,
And leue siche clamoure for Cristes lufe of heuene !"

Sir Ewaine and his knights restrain him.

"ffor blode," said the bolde kynge, "blyne salle I neuer, [leaf 95]
Or my brayne to-briste, or my breste o*ther* !
Was neuer sorowe so softe that sanke to my herte,
Itt es fulle sibb to my selfe, my sorowe es the more !
Was neuer so sorowfulle a syghte seyne *with* myne eyghene !
He es sakles supprysede for syne of myne one !"
Downe knelis *th*e kynge, and kryes fulle lowde ;
With carefulle contenaunce he karpes thes wordes,—
"O rightwis riche Gode, this rewthe thow be-holde !

He excuses himself on account of the greatness of the grief.

Digitized by Google

*Th*is ryalle rede blode ryn*e* appon*e* erthe;
It ware worthy to be schrede and schrynede in golde,
ffor it es sakles of syn*e*, sa helpe me oure Lorde!"

He collects Gawaine's blood in a helmet,

Down*e* knelis *th*e kyng w*ith* kare at his herte,
Kaughte it vpe kyndly w*ith* his clene handis,
Keste it in a ketille-hatte, and cou*er*de it faire,

and carries away his body.

And kayres furthe w*ith* *th*e cors in kyghte *th*are he lenges.

Then he makes a solemn vow that he will take no pleasure in the chase till Gawaine be avenged.

"Here I make myn avowe," q*uod* the kynge thane,
"To Messie, and to Marie, the mylde qwen*n*e of heuen*e*,
I salle neu*er* ryvaye, ne racches vn-cowpylle
At roo ne rayne-dere, *th*at rynnes appon*n*e erthe;
Neu*er* grewhownde late glyde, ne gossehawke latt flye,
Ne neu*er* fowle see fellide, *th*at flieghes w*ith* wenge;
ffawkon*e* ne formaylle appon*e* fiste handille,
Ne ȝitt w*ith* gerefawcon*e* rejoyse me in erthe;
Ne reg*n*ne in my royaltez, ne halde my Rownde Table,
Tille thi dede, my dere, be dewly reuengede!
Bot eu*er* droupe and dare, qwylles my lyfe lastez,
Tille Drightene and derfe dede hafe don*e* qwate them*e* likes!"

The body was sent straight to Winchester,

Than kaughte they vpe *th*e cors w*ith* kare at theire hertes,
Karyed [it] one a coursere with *th*e kynge selfen*e*;
The waye vn-to Wynchestre *th*ay wente at the gayneste,
Wery and wandsomdly, w*ith* wondide knyghtes;
Thare come *th*e prior of *th*e plas, and professide mo*n*nkes,

and met by a procession of monks.

Apas in p*ro*cessione, and w*ith* the prynce metys;
And he be-tuke *th*ame the cors of *th*e knyghte noble.

Arthur gives orders that all honour should be paid to the dead.

"Lokis it be clenly kepyd," he said, "and in *th*e kirke holden*e*,
Done for derygese, as to *th*e ded fallys,
Menskede w*ith* messes, for mede of *th*e saule:
Loke it wante no waxe, ne no wirchipe elles,
And at *th*e body be bawmede, and one erthe holden*e*,
ȝiff *th*ou kepe thi couent encroche any wirchipe
At my comyng a-gayne, ȝif Crist wille it thole;

Digitized by Google

A-byde of *the* beryenge tille they be broughte vndire,
*Tha*t has wroghte vs this woo, and *thi*s werre mouede."
*Th*an sais s*ir* Wychere *the* wy, a wyese mane of armes, — Sir Wycher advises that he should stay in Winchester and rally his forces.
"I rede ȝe warely wende, and wirkes the beste;
Soiorne in this ceté, and semble thi berynes,
And bidde w*ith* thi bolde mene in thi burgh̄e riche:
Get owt knyghttez of contres, that castelles holdes,
And owt of garysons grete gude mene of armes,
ffor we are faithely to fewe to feghte w*ith* theme alle,
*Tha*t we see in his sorte appone *the* see bankes."
With̄ krewelle contenance thane the kyng karpis theis wordes,—
"I praye the kare noghte, s*ir* knyghte, ne caste *tho*u no dredis! — [leaf 95, back]
Hadde I no segge bot my selfe one vndir sone, — Arthur declares that though he be alone, if he may see Modred he will mall him to death among all his men.
And I may hym see w*ith* sighte, or one hym sette hondis,
I salle evene amange his mene malle hym to dede,
Are I of *the* stede styre halfe a stede lenghe!
I salle [stryke] hym in his stowre, and stroye hyme for eu*er*,
And *tha*re-to make I myne avowe devottly to Cryste,
And to hys modyre Marie, *the* mylde qwene of heuene!
I salle neu*er* soiou*r*ne sounde, ne sawghte at myne herte, — He will never sojourn in city or town till Modred be slain.
In ceté ne in subarbe sette appone erthe,
Ne ȝitt slomyre ne slepe w*ith* my slawe eyghne,
Tille he be slayne *tha*t hym slowghe, ȝif any sleyghte happene:
Bot eu*er* pursue the payganys *tha*t my pople distroyede,
Qwylls I may pare theme and pynne, in place *tha*re me likes."
Thare durste no renke hym areste of alle *the* Rownde Table,
Ne none paye *tha*t prynce w*ith* plesande wordes,
Ne none of his lige mene luke hym in the eyghne, — None of his liege men dare look him in the eyes.
So lordely he lukes for losse of his knyghttes!
Thane drawes he to Dorsett, and dreches no langere,
Derefulle dredlesse with̄ drowppande teris;
Kayeris in-to Kornewayle with̄ kare at his herte,

Digitized by Google

Arthur follows Modred into Cornwall and attacks him.

The trays of *th*e traytou*r*e he trynys fulle euen*n*e; 4055
And turnys in be *th*e T*r*eynt*is th*e traytou*r*e to seche,
ffyndis hym in a foreste *th*e Frydaye there-aftire;
The kyng lyghttes one fott, and freschely askryes,
And w*ith* his freliche folke he has *th*e felde no*m*mene!

A vast host of aliens assault Arthur's men.

Now isschewis his enmye vndire *th*e wode eynys,
W*ith* ostes of alynes fulle horrebille to schewe!
Sir Mordrede the Malebranche, w*ith* his myche pople,
ffoundes owt of the foreste appone fele halfes, 4063
In seuene grett batailles semliche arrayede,

There were sixty thousand against eighteen hundred.

Sexty thowsande mene, the syghte was fulle hugge,
Alle fyghtande folke of *th*e ferre lanndes,
ffaire fettede one frownte be tha fresche strondes!
And alle Arthurs oste was amede w*ith* knyghtes 4068
Bot awghtene hundrethe of alle, entrede in rolles;
This was a mache vn-mete, bot myghttis of Criste,
To melle w*ith* *th*at multitude in *th*ase man londis.

Arthur on a charger arranges his men.

Than the royalle roy of *th*e Rownde Table 4072
Rydes one a riche stede, arrayes his beryns,
Buskes his avawmwarde, als hym beste likes;
Sir Ewayne, and *sir* Errake, and othire gret lordes,
Demenys the medilwarde menskefully thare-aftyre,
Wit̄ Merrake and Meneduke,[1] myghtty of strenghes;
Idirous and Alymere, *th*ire auen*au*nt childrene,
Ayers w*ith* Arthure, w*ith* seuene score of knyghtes;
He rewlis *th*e rerewarde redyly thare-aftyre, 4080
The rekeneste redy mene of *th*e Rownde Table,
And thus he fittis his folke, and freschely askryes,
And syene comforthes his mene w*ith* knyghtlyche wordes—

He beseeches them to do well that day and not to fear.

"I be-seke ȝow, sirs, for sake of oure Lorde, 4084
That ȝe doo wele to-daye, and dredis no wapene!
ffighttes fersely nowe, and fendis ȝoure seluene,
[leaf 90] ffellis downe ȝone feye folke, the felde salle be owrs!
They are Sarazenes ȝone sorte, vn-sownde motte they worthe! 4088

[1] *Or* Menyduke.

Digitized by Google

Sett one theme sadlye, for sake of oure Lorde ! If they are slain they will be taken straight up to heaven.
3if vs be destaynede to dy to-daye one this erthe,
We salle be hewede vn-to heuene, or we be halfe colde !
Loke 3e lett for no lede lordly to wirche ;
Layes 3one laddes lowe be the layke ende !
Take no tente vn-to me, ne tale of me rekke,
Bes besy one my baners with 3oure brighte wapyns,
That they be strenghely stuffede with steryne knyghtes,
And holdene lordly one lofte ledys to schewe ;
3if any renke theme arase, reschowe theme sone.
Wirkes now my wirchipe, to-daye my werre endys ! To-day his war ends !
3e wotte my wele and my woo, wirkkys as 3ow likys !
Crist comly with crowne comforthe 3ow alle,
ffor the kyndeste creatours that euer kynge ledde !
I gyffe 3ow alle my blyssyng with a blithe wille, He gives them his parting blessing.
And alle Bretowns bolde, blythe mote 3e worthe !"
They pype vpe at pryme tyme, approches theme nere,
Pris mene and priste proues theire strenghes ;
Bremly the brethemen bragges in troumppes,
In cornettes comlyly, whene knyghttes assembles,
And thane jolyly enjoynys theis jentylle knyghttes ;
A jolyere journé ajuggede was neuer,
Whene Bretones boldly enbraces theire scheldes, The Britons attack the enemy, without delay.
And Cristyne encroyssede theme, and castis in fewtire !
Than sir Arthure oste his enmye askryes,
And in they schokke theire scheldes, schontes no lengare ;
Schotte to the schiltrones, and schowttes fulle heghe,
Thorowe scheldis fulle schene schalkes they touche !
Redily thas rydde mene of the Rownde Table
With ryalle rannke stele rittys theire mayles ;
Bryneys browddene they briste, and burneste helmys,
Hewes haythene mene downe, halses in sondre !
ffyghtande with fyne stele, the feye blod rynnys,
Of the frekkeste of frounte, vn-fers ere be-levede.
Ethyns of Argayle and Irische kynges
Enverounes oure avawmwarde with venymmos berynes ; The vanguard is

Digitized by Google

surrounded by the enemy, and many of them slain.

Peghttes and paynymes *with* perilous wapyns,
With speres disspetously disspoylles oure knyghttes,
And hewede downe the hendeste *with* hertly dynttys!
Thorow the holle batayle they holdene theire wayes;
*Th*us fersly they fyghte appone sere halfes,
That of *the* bolde Bretones myche blode spillis.
Thare durste non rescowe theme, for reches in erthe,
The steryne ware *th*are so stedde, and stuffede wit[h]othire:
He durste noghte stire a steppe, bot stodde for hyme seluene,
Tille thre stalis ware stroyede be strenghe of hyme one!
"Idrous," q*uod* Arthure, "ayre the by-houes!

Arthur bids Sir Idrus rescue his [leaf 96, back] father, Sir Ewaine.

I see s*ir* Ewayne ou*er*-sette wit̄ Sarazenes kene!
Redy the for rescows, arraye thee sone!
Hye *th*e wit̄ hardy mene in helpe of thy ffadire!
Sett in one the syde, and socoure ȝone lordes;
Bot they be socourrede and sownde, vnsawghte be I neu*er*!"

Sir Idrus replies that his father has commanded him not to leave the king.

Idrous hyme ansuers ernestly *th*are-aftyre,—
"He es my fadire in faithe, for-sake salle I neu*er*,
He has me fosterde and fedde, and my faire bretherene,
Bot I for-sake this gate, so me Gode helpe,
And sothely alle sybredyne bot thy sẽlfe one;
I breke neu*er* his biddynge for beryne one lyfe,
Bot eu*er* bouxvme as beste blethely to wyrke!
He co*m*mande me kyndly, *with* knyghtly wordes,
That I schulde lelely one *th*e lenge, and one noo lede elles;
I salle hys co*m*mandement holde, ȝif Criste wil me thole!
He es eldare thane I, and ende salle we bothene;
He salle ferkke be-fore, and I salle come aftyre:

"If he be destined to die, Christ keep his soul!"

ȝiffe hyme be destaynede to dy to-daye one *th*is erthe,
Criste comly *with* crowne take kepe to hys saule!"

*Th*an remys the riche kynge *with* rewthe at his herte,
Hewys hys handys one heghte, and to *th*e heuene lokes,—
"Qwythene hade Dryghttyne destaynede at his dere wille,

*Th*at he hade demyd me to-daye to dy for ȝow alle!
That had I leue*r* than be lorde alle my lyfe tyme,
Off alle *th*at Alexandere aughte qwhilles he in erthe lengede."

Arthur wishes that he might die instead of his knights.

Sir Ewayne and *sir* Errake, *th*es excellente beryns,
Enters in one *th*e oste, and egerly strykes;
The ethenys of Orkkenaye and Irische kynges,
*Th*ay gobone of *th*e gretteste *with* growndene swerdes,
Hewes one *th*as hulkes *with th*eire harde wapyns,
Layed downe *th*as ledes *with* lothely dynttys;
Schuldirs and scheldys *th*ay schrede to *th*e hawnches,
And medilles thourghe mayles *th*ay merkene in sondire!
Siche honoure neue*r* aughte none erthely kyng
At theire endyng daye, bot Arthure hyme seluene!
So *th*e droughte of *th*e daye dryede theire hertes,
That bothe drynkles they dye, dole was *th*e more!
Now mellys oure medille-warde, and mengene to-gedire.
Sir Mordrede *th*e Malebranche *with* his myche pople,
He had hide hyme be-hynde *with*-in thas holte eynys,
Wit̄ halle bataile one hethe, harme es *th*e more!
He hade sene *th*e conteke al clene to *th*e ende,
How oure cheualrye cheuyde be chaunces of armes!
He wiste oure folke was for-foughttene, *that th*are was feye leuede;
To encowntere *th*e kynge he castes hyme sone,
Bot the churles chekyne hade chaungyde his armes;
He had sothely for-sakene *th*e sawturoure engrelede,
And laughte vpe thre lyons alle of whitte siluyre,
Passande in purpre of perrie fulle riche,
ffor *th*e kynge sulde noghte knawe *th*e cawtelous wriche!
Be-cause of his cowardys he keste of his atyre;
Bot the comliche kyng knewe hym fulle swythe,
Karpis to *sir* Cadors *th*es kyndly wordez,—
"I see *th*e traytoure come ȝondyr trynande fulle ȝerne;
ȝone ladde *with th*e lyones es like to hyme selfene!
Hym salle torfere be-tyde, may I touche ones,

Sir Ewaine and Sir Errak perform great deeds of valour before they are overpowered and slain.

The centre of Arthur's army engages. Sir Modred has been watching the battle, and preparing to attack the king.

But first he changes his arms to conceal himself.

[leaf 97]

But Arthur knows him at once, and points him out to Sir Cador.

Digitized by Google

ffor alle his tresone and trayne, alls I am trew lorde !
The two famous swords, Clarent and Caliburn, shall this day be tried one against the other.
To-day Clarente and Caliburne salle kythe theme to-gedirs,
Whilke es kenere of kerfe, or hardare of eghge !
ffraiste salle we fyne stele appone fyne wedis. 4195
Itt was my derlynge daynteuous, and fulle dere holdene,
Kepede fore encorownmentes of kynges enoynttede,
One dayes when I dubbyde dukkes and erlles ;
It was burliche borne be the bryghte hiltes ;
I durste neuer dere it in dedis of armes, 4200
Bot euer kepide clene, be-cause of my seluene.
Arthur recognizes his sword which he had left at Wallingford under the care of the Queen.
ffor I see Clarent vn-clede, that crowne es of swerdes,
My wardrop of Walyngfordhe I wate es distroyede ;
Wist no wy of wone bot Waynor hir seluene, 4204
Scho hade the kepynge hir selfe of that kydde wapyne,
Off cofres enclosede that to the crowne lengede,
With rynges and relikkes, and the regale of ffraunce,
That was ffowndene one sir ffrolle, whene he was feye leuyde." 4208
Sir Marrik fights with Modred and is forced to withdraw,
Than sir Marrike in malyncoly metys hym sone,
With a mellyd mace myghtyly hym strykes ;
The bordoure of his bacenett he bristes in sondire,
That the schire rede blode ouer his brene rynnys ! 4212
The beryne blenkes for bale, and alle his ble chaunges,
Bot ȝitt he byddys as a bore, and brymly he strykes !
He braydes owte a brande bryghte als euer ony sylver,
That was sir Arthure awene, and Vtere his fadirs, 4216
In the wardrop of Walyngfordhe was wonte to be kepede ;
Thare-with the derfe dogge syche dynttes he rechede,
The tother with-drewe one dreghe and durste do none other ;
for Sir Marrik was marred with old age.
ffor sir Marrake was mane merrede in elde, 4220
And sir Mordrede was myghty, and [in] his moste strenghis ;
Come none with-in the compas, knyghte ne none other,
With-in the swyng of swerde, that ne he the swete leuyd.
That persayfes oure prynce, and presses to faste, 4224

Digitized by Google

Strykes in-to *the* stowre by strenghe of hys handis ; Arthur forces his way to Modred,
Metis *with* *sir* Mordrede, he melis vn-faire,—
" Turne, traytoure vntrewe, *the* tydys no bettyre ; 4227 and upbraids him.
Be gret Gode, thow salle dy *with* dynt of my handys !
The schalle rescowe no renke ne reches in erthe ! "
The kyng *with* Calaburne knyghtly hym strykes, Then he strikes him with Caliburn and cuts through his shield and into the shoulder.
The cantelle of *the* clere schelde he kerfes in sondyre,
In-to *the* schuldyre of *the* schalke a schaftmonde large,
That *the* schire rede blode schwede one *the* maylys !
He schodirde and schrenkys, and schontes bott lyttille,
Bott schokkes in scharpely in his schene wedys ; 4235 [leaf 97, back]
The ffelonne *with* *the* ffyne swerde freschely he strykes, Modred, though wounded, strikes Arthur and gives him a terrible wound in the side.
The ffelettes of *the* fferrere syde he flassches in sondyre,
Thorowe jopowne and jesserawnte of gentille mailes !
The freke fichede in *the* flesche an halfe fotte large ;
That derfe dynt was his dede, and dole was *the* more
That euer *that* doughtty sulde dy, bot at Dryghttyns wylle ! 4241
3itt *with* Calyburne his swerde, fulle knyghttly he strykes, Arthur with Caliburn cuts off the sword-hand of Modred,
Kastes ine his clere schelde, and coueres hym fulle faire ;
Swappes of *the* swerde hande, als he by glentes, 4244
Ane inche fro *the* elbowe, he ochede it in sondyre,
That he swounnes one *the* swarthe,[1] and one swym fallis ;
Thorowe bracer[2] of browne stele, and *the* bryghte mayles,
That the hilte and *the* hande appone *the* hethe ligges !
Thane frescheliche *the* freke the ffente vpe rererys,
Brochis hym in with the bronde to *the* bryghte hiltys, and pierces him with his sword.
And he brawles one the bronde, and bownes to dye.
" In faye," says *the* feye kynge, " sore me for-thynkkes Arthur declares that his end is too good for him.
That euer siche a false theefe so faire an ende haues."
Qwene they had ffenyste *this* feghte, thane was *the* felde wonnene, 4254
And the false folke in *the* felde feye are by-leuede !
Tille a fforeste they fledde, and felle in the greuys,

[1] MS. swrathe. [2] MS. brater.

Digitized by Google

Modred's men are defeated and pursued.

And fers feghtande folke folowes theme aftyre;
Howntes and hewes downe the heythene tykes,
Mourtherys in the mowntaygnes sir Mordrede knyghtes;
Thare chapyde neuer no childe, cheftayne ne other,
Bot choppes theme downe in the chace, it chargys bot littylle!

Arthur finds the dead bodies of his knights.

Bot whene sir Arthure anone sir Ewayne he fyndys,
And Errake the auenaunt, and other grett lordes,
He kawghte vp sir Cador with̄ care at his herte,
Sir Clegis, sir Cleremonde, thes clere mene of armes,
Sir Lothe, and sir Lyonelle, sir Lawncelott, and Lowes,
Marrake and Meneduke, that myghty ware euer; 4267
With̄ langoure in the launde thare he layes theme togedire,
Lokede one theyre lighames, and with a lowde steuene,
AHs lede that liste noghte lyfe and loste had his myrthis;
Than he stotays for made, and alle his strenghe faylez,
Lokes vpe to the lyfte, and alle his lyre chaunges, 4272

He swoons for sorrow,

Downne he sweys fulle swythe, and in a swoune fallys,
Vpe he coueris one kneys, and kryes fulle oftene,—

and bitterly grieves over his knights.

"Kyng comly with crowne, in care am I leuyde!
Alle my lordchipe lawe in lande es layde vndyre! 4276
That me has gyfene gwerdones, be grace of hym seluene,
Mayntenyde my manhede be myghte of theire handes,
Made me manly one molde, and mayster in erthe;
In a tenefulle tyme this torfere was rereryde, 4280
That for a traytoure has tynte alle my trewe lordys!
Here rystys the riche blude of the Rownde Table,
[leaf 98] Rebukkede with a rebawde, and rewthe es the more!
I may helples one hethe house be myne one, 4284
AHs a wafulle wedowe that wanttes hir beryne!

Now he may weep and wring his hands, for his worship is gone for ever.

I may werye and wepe, and wrynge myne handys,
ffor my wytt and my wyrchipe awaye es for euer!
Off alle lordchips I take leue to myne ende! 4288
Here es the Bretones blode broughte owt of lyfe,
And nowe in this journee alle my joy endys!"

Digitized by Google

Thane relyes *the* renkes of alle *the* Rownde Table,
To *the* ryalle roy thay ride *tham* alle; 4292 — The remnants of his men rally round him.
Than assembles fulle sonne seuene score knyghtes,
In sighte to *tha*ire souerayne, *tha*t was vnsownde leuede;
Than knelis the crownede kynge, and kryes one lowde,—
"I thanke *the*, Gode, of thy grace, *with* a gud wylle; — He thanks God for the victory, and all the glory which he and his knights had won.
That gafe vs vertue and witt to vencows *thi*s beryns;
And vs has grauntede *the* gree of theis gret lordes!
He sent vs neu*er* no schame, ne schenchipe in erthe,
Bot euer ȝit *the* ou*er*-hande of alle o*ther* kynges: 4300
We hafe no laysere now *the*se lordys to seke,
ffor ȝone laythely ladde me lamede so sore!
Graythe vs to Glaschenbery, vs gaynes none o*ther*; — He desires to be taken to Glastonbury.
Thare we may ryste vs w*ith* roo, and raunsake oure wondys.
Of *thi*s dere day werke, *the* Dryghttene be louede, 4305
That vs has destaynede and demyd to dye in oure awene."
Thane they holde at his heste hally at ones,
And graythes to Glasschenberye *the* gate at *the* gayneste;
Entres *the* Ile of Aueloyne, and Arthure he lyghttes, — He enters the Isle of Avelon and is taken to a manor there; for he could go no further. A surgeon examines his wounds.
Merkes to a manere there, for myghte he no forthire:
A surgyne[1] of Salerne enserches his wondes, 4311
The kyng sees be asaye *tha*t sownde bese he neu*er*,
And sone to his sekire mene he said theis wordes,—
"Doo calle me a confesso*ur*, with̄ Criste in his armes; — Arthur sends for a confessor.
I wille be howselde in haste, whate happe so be-tyddys;
Co*n*stantyne my cosyne he salle the corowne bere, 4316 — He appoints Constantine, his kinsman, his heir.
AHs be-com*m*ys hym of kynde, ȝife Criste wille hym thole!
Beryne, fore my benysone, thowe berye ȝone lordys,
That in baytaille with̄ brondez are broghte owte of lyfe;
And sythene merke manly to Mordrede childrene, 4320 — He orders Modred's children to be slain, and slung in waters.
That they bee sleyghely slayne, and slongene in watyrs;
Latt no wykkyde wede waxe, ne wrythe one this erthe;
I warne fore thy wirchipe, wirke aHs I bydde!
I fore-gyffe alle greffe, for Cristez lufe of heuene! 4324 — "If Guinever have well wrought, well her betide."
ȝife Waynor hafe wele wroghte, wele hir be-tydde!"

[1] MS. susgyne.

Digitized by Google

Then he says "In manus," and his spirit passes away.

He saide *In manus* with̄ mayne one molde whare he ligges,
And thus passes his speryt, and spekes he no more!

[leaf 98, back]

The baronage of Bretayne thane, bechopes and othire,

The barons of Britain bury Arthur at Glastonbury.

Graythes theme to Glaschenbery *with* gloppynnande hertes,
To bery thare the bolde kynge, and brynge to *the* erthe,
With̄ alle wirchipe and welthe *that* any wy scholde.
Throly belles thay rynge, and *Requiem* syngys,
Dosse messes and matyns *with* mournande notes:
Relygeous reueste in theire riche copes,

Great mourning was made at his funeral.

Pontyficalles and *pre*lates in precyouse wedys,
Dukes and dusszeperis in theire dule-cotes,
Cowntasses knelande and claspande theire handes,
Ladys languessande and lowrande to schewe;
Alle was buskede in blake, birdes and othire,
That schewede at the sepulture, *with* sylande teris;
Whas neu*er* so sorowfulle a syghte seene in theire tyme!
Thus endis kyng Arthure, as auctors alegges,

This was the end of Arthur of the blood of Hector and of Priamus of Troy.

That was of Ectores blude, the kynge sone of Troye,
And of *sir* Pryamo*us*, the prynce, praysede in erthe;
ffro thethene[1] broghte the Bretons alle his bolde eldyrs
In-to Bretayne the brode, as *the* Bruytte tellys.

et c'. explicit.

Hic jacet Arthurus, rex q[*u*]*ondam rex que futurus.*

Here endes Morte Arthure, writene by Robert of Thorntone.

R. Thornton dictus qui scripsit sit benedictus. Amen!

[1] *Or* thythene.

JOHN CHILDS AND SON, PRINTERS.

Digitized by Google

INDEX OF NAMES.

Absolone, 2868.

Achinour, 1824.

Acres, 903, *Acre.*

Affrike, 574, Affryke, 1869, Aufrike, 2607, Awfrike, 3933, *Africa.*

Akyne, 496, *Aix-la-Chapelle.*

Aladuke, 1739, Alidoyke of Towelle, 1916, Alyduke, 1824.

Alexander, 2634, Alexandere, 3408, 4160, Alexandire, 2602, *Alexander.*

Alexandere, 2607, Alysaundyre, 572, *Alexandria.*

Algere, 2837, 2847.

Alidoyke. *See* Aladuke.

Almaygne, 3596, Almayne, 45, 496, 555, 618, 2387, 3210, *Germany.*

Alyduke. *See* Aladuke.

Alymere, 4078.

Alysaundyre. *See* Alexandere.

Amazonnes, 584.

Ambyganye, 572.

Antele, 2829, 2837.

Anyone, 42, *Aniane (in France).*

Araby, 1175, Arraby, 576, *Arabia.*

Argayle, 4123, *Argyle.*

Arthur, 26, 496, Arthure, 172, 288, 305, 470, &c.

Askanere, 1739.

Asye, 574, *Asia.*

Aueloyne, Ile of, 4309, *Isle of Avelon.*

Aufrike. *See* Affrike.

Aungers, 288.

Awguste, 1967, *Augsbury.* Lat. *Augusta Vindelicorum.*

Babyloyne, 586, *Babylon.*

Baldake, 586, *Bagdad.*

Bareflete, 629, 1182, 1223, Barflete, 835, *Barfleur.* Lat. *Barofluctum.*

Barouns, 1908.

Basille, 907.

Bawdewyne, 277, Bawdwyne, 1606, 2384.

Bayone, 38, 2379, *Bayonne.*

Bayous, 587.

Bedvere, 893, 1170, Bedwar, 2384, Bedwere, 1162, 1264, 1606, 1744, 2238, 2379.

Bedwyne, 1408. Probably a mistake for *Bedwere.*

Belyne, 277.

Berade, 2384.

Berelle, 1605, 1775, 1914, Berille, 1264, 1771, Berylle, 1433.

Bernarde, Mounte, 566.

Boice, 1263, 1426, 1433, 1456,

Digitized by Google

Boyce, 1483, 1485, 1605, Boys, 1378.

Borghte, 1698. A mistake for *Brut*.

Boyce, Boys. *See* Boice.

Brabane, 36, *Brabant*.

Bremyne, 277.

Bretayne, 2095, 2330, 2362, &c., Bretaynne, 3519, Bretayne the brade, 106, B. the brode, 3579, 4346, B. the braddere, 55, 1699, B. the more, 1018, *Britain*.

Bretayne, 852, B. the lesse, 36, B. the lyttylle, 304, *Brittany*.

Bretones, 1011, 1484, 1617, 4111, Bretons, 1403, 1407, Bretouns, 1348, Bretowns, 4104, *Britons*. Bretowne, *sg*., 3508.

Brut, 1695, *Brutus*.

Bruytte, the, 4346, *the Brute*.

Bryane, 1606.

Burdeux, 38, *Bordeaux*.

Burgoyne, 36, 1018, 1241, 2383, *Burgundy*.

Cador, 247, 1718, 1724, 1777, &c., Cadore, 481, 1602, 1637, 1707, Cadors, 4188, Cadour, 259.

Caerlyone, 61, Karelyone, 3916, Karlyone, 3512, *Caerleon*.

Calaburne, 4230, Caliburne, 4193, Calyburne, 4242, *Caliburn*, Arthur's sword.

Came, 2380, 2385.

Capados, 580, *Cappadocia*.

Capatoylle, the, 2353, Capitoile, 280, Capytoile, 96, *the Capitol*.

Cardyfe, 2498, *Cardiff*.

Carelele, 480, 839, Carlelele, 64, 476, *Carlisle*.

Castelle Blanke, 1225.

Catrike, 482.

Cayme, 1311, *Cain*.

Cayous, 156, 209, 892, 1864, 1997, Kayous, 1152, 1194, 2157, &c., *Kay*, Arthur's chief butler.

Chartris, 1619, *Chartres*.

Chastelayne, 2952, Chasteleynne, 3028.

Cheldrike, 2954.

Chestyre, 3914, *Chester*.

Childrike, 3537.

Christofre, 2390.

Clarent, 4202, Clarente, 4193, Arthur's best sword.

Clarybalde, 2497.

Clarymownde, 2497. *See* Cleremonde.

Clegis, 1604, 1638, 1649, 1671, &c., Clegys, 1692, 3635.

Clemente, 1828.

Cleremonde, 1603, 4265, Cleremownde, 3635, Cleremownnde, 1638.

Cleremus, 1603, 1638.

Clowdmur, 1604.

Clyme, the close of, 1639.

Collbrande, 2123, 2201, one of Arthur's swords, perhaps = *Caliburn*.

Colome, 623.

Combe, 3110, 3128, 3149, *Como*.

Constantyne, 282, an emperour of Rome

Constantyne, 4316, Arthur's heir.

Constantyne, 628, 848, Costantyne, 2373 Constantyne landez, 1187.

Cordewa, 1866, *Cordova*.

Cornett, 600, Cornette, 1909, *Corneto*.

Cornewaile, 1848, 2002, 2262, 3897, Cornewale, 1791, Cornewalle, 1637, Cornewayle, 247, 1777, Kornewayle, 4054, *Cornwall*.

Craddoke, 3511, 3517, Cradoke, 3487.

Digitized by Google

Crasyne, cowntas of, 3045.
Creette, 200, Crete, 204, 580.
Crist, 136, 467, 482, &c., Criste, 227, 285, 296, &c., Cryste, 257, 308, 346, &c., *Christ.*
Cyrus. *See* Cirquytrie in Glossary.
Cyprys, 596, *Cyprus.*

Damaske, 578, *Damascus.*
Damyat, 578, *Damietta.*
Danamarke, 3936, Danemarke, 3752, 3783, Danmarke, 46, *Denmark.*
Danamarkes, 3610, Danmarkes, 3528, *Danes.*
Danes, 3694.
Danuby, 622, *the Danube.*
Dauid, 3416.
Dolfinede, 2653, *Dauphiné* (?).
Dolfyne, 3023, Dolphyne, 2970.
Dorsett, 4052.
Douere, 3066.
Duche-men, 1251, Duche-mene, 2030, 2101, 2653, 2834, *Germans.*

Ector, 2603, 2635, 3409, 4343, *Hector.*
Egipt, 576, 2200.
Elamet, 575.
Ermonye, 573, *Armenia.* See *The Romans of Partenay*, ll. 1637, 5321, 5372, &c.; where it is spelt *Hermeny.*
Ermyngalle, 1825.
Errake, 4075, 4161, 4263.
Eruge, 42.
Esexe, 1740, *Essex.*
Estriche, 45, 3933, *Austria.*
Ewandre, 1868, Ewandyre, 1622, Ewaynedyre, 1904.
Ewayne, 357, 1572, 3973, 4075, &c., Ewayne fytz Henry, 1558, Ewane fytz Vryenee, 337, Ewayne fytz Vriene, 2066.
Ewfrates, 573, *Euphrates.*
Ewrope, 574.

Famacoste, 2761, *Famagosta* in Cyprus. See *The Romans of Partenay*, l. 1299, and Mr Skeat's note thereon.
Federike, 2899.
Feltemour, 1382.
Feraunt, 2760, 2765, Ferawnt, 3404, Ferawnte, 2421.
Ferrer, 2421, Ferrere, 2432.
ff. Names beginning with *ff* are entered under single *F.*
Flaundres, 495, Flaundrez, 34, 494, Flawndresche, 3597, *Flanders.*
Florent, 2735, 2762, 2764, 2797, &c., Florente, 2483, 2729.
Florent, 2232, Lucius's sword.
Floridas, 2755, 2778, 2780, 2803, 3018, 3112, Florydas, 2490.
Forawnt, 2490. Read *Ferawnt.*
France, 2365, Fraunce, 34, 110, 367, 435, &c.
Fraunche-mene, 2484, *Frenchmen.*
Fres, 3864.
Freselannd, 110, Friselande, 367, Fryselande, 2765, *Friesland.*
Froderike, 3864.
Froille, 3404, Frolle, 3345, 4208, *Frollo.*
Fryselande. *See* Freselannd.

Galelé, 592, *Galilee.*
Galuth, 1387, 1470, 3709, Galuthe, 2558, Gawayne's sword.
Galyrane, 3636.
Galys londe, 3862, *Wales.*
Garyere, 592.
Gawayne, 1265, 1352, 1368, 2218,

Digitized by Google

&c. Gawaynne, 2979, 3860, Gaweayne, 1468, Gaywayne, 233, Wawayne, 964, 1302, 1342, 1744, 2953, Arthur's nephew.
Gaynour, 84, 705, Waynor, 3904, 4204, 4325, Waynore, 3550, 3575, Waynour, 233, 652, 657, 697, Arthur's wife.
Gayous, 1346, 1385, uncle of Lucius.
Geene, 559, 843, 863, Genne, 2897, Iene, 2889, 2909, *Genoa.*
Gerarde, 2896.
Gernaide, 2943, *Granada.*
Gernesay, 3861, *Guernsey.*
Gerone, 863.
Geryne, 3708.
Glamorgane, 59.
Glamour, 3862.
Glaschenbery, 4303, 4329, Glasschenberye, 4308, *Glastonbury.*
Godarde, 562, 2655, Goddarde, 3104, Mount Goddarde, 497, *Mount St Gothard.*
Godfraye, 3430.
Golapas, 2124.
Golyas, 3419, *Goliath.*
Gothelande, 37, Gutlande, 3763.
Gowere, 3861.
Grece, 37, 1000, Greke, 1463, *Greece.*
Grekes, 602.
Grekkes See, 594, the eastern part of the Mediterranean.
Grisswolde, 3708.
Gryme, 1265.
Gutlande. *See* Gothelande.
Gyane, 37, *Guienne.*

Hamptone, 3031, *Southampton.*
Hardelfe, 1741, Hardolfe, 2974, 3583.
Hawyke, 3541.
Henawde, 35, *Hainault.*
Henguste, 3545, *Hengist.*
Herygalle, 1742.
Herylle, 1742.
Hillary, 625.
Holaund, 35, *Holland.*
Hors, 3545, *Horsa.*
Howelle, 1180, 1741, 3583.
Humbyre, 3541.

Iaffe, Porte, 1520, 1544, 2039, *Jaffa, the ancient Joppa.*
Idirous, 4078, Idrous, 4135, 4141. Idrus, 1439, 1510, Idrus fitz Ewayne, 1490, 1498.
Iene. *See* Geene.
Ienitalle, 2112.
Ierante, 2890.
Ierusalem, 3415, 3433.
Iewe, 2895.
Ihesu, 863, *Jesus.*
Inde, 573, *India.*
Inglande, 1412, 2359, 3500, 3685, Ynglande, 283, 710, 724.
Ioatalle, 2877.
Iolyan, 2889.
Ioneke, 1739, 1868, 1905.
Iosephate, vale of, 2876.
Iosue, 2605, 3414, *Joshua.*
Irelande, 31, 2359, 3534, 3909.
Irritayne, 575.
Iudas, 2605, 3412, *Judas Maccabeus.*
Iulius Cesar, 115, Iulyus Cesare, 3410.
Iulyus, 2877.

Karelyone, Karlyone. *See* Caerlyone.
Karolus, 3423, *Charlemagne.*
Kayone, 2380, a mistake for

Digitized by Google

Kayous, caused by the word *Bayone* in the line before.

Kayous. *See* Cayous.

Kentt, 3542.

Kornewayle. *See* Cornewaile.

Lancelott, 1720, Launcelot, 2073, Launcelott, 368, Launcelotte, 1999, Lawncelot de Lake, 3638, Lawncelott, 4266.

Lebe, 1767, 1781, 1803, 1817, 1827, 1900.

Leo, 1971.

Lettow, 605, Lettowe, 2167, 3784, *Lithuania.*

Lewlyne, 1826.

Londone, 2418.

Lorayne, 350, 1460, 2398, &c. Lorrayne, 429, 2418, 2531, &c.

Loth, 2081, 3637, Lothe, 4266, Lott, 1999.

Lottez, 382.

Lowelle, 1516.

Lowes, 4266.

Lucerne, 3094.

Lucius, 128, 251, 383, &c. Lucyus, 23, Lucius Iberius, 86.

Lumbarddye, 3108, 3594, Lumbardye, 2406, 2654, 2997, 3585, Lumberddye, 498, Lumberdye, 135, 350, 429, 1972, *Lombardy.*

Lusscheburghe, 2388, *Luxemburg.*

Lyonelle, 1516, 2227, 3637, 4266.

Macedone, 603.

Makabee, 3413.

Marie, 2869, 3998, 4041.

Marrake, 4220, 4267, Marrike, 4209, Merrake, 4077.

Marschalle de Mowne, 1397.

Mawrelle of Mauncez, 1918.

Mawrene, 1918.

Mees, 2950, Meyes, 2417, *Metz.*

Melane, 3134, 3144, Meloyne, 351, 428, *Milan.*

Meneduke, 4077, 4267, M. of Mentoche, 1919.

Merrake. *See* Marrake.

Messie, 3998, *Messiah.*

Meyes. *See* Mees.

Mighelle, Saynt, 940, Seynt M., 1069, Myghelle, 1166, *St Michael.*

Mighelle Mount, Seynt, 899, *St Michael's Mount.*

Modrede, 679, 3555, 3569, 3766, 3772, 3840, Mordrede, 645, 711, 3874, 4221, 4226, &c. Mordrede the Malebranche, 4062, 4174.

Mownttagus, 3773.

Myghelle. *See* Mighelle.

Nauerne, 44, *Navarre.*

Nazarethe, 591.

Normandye, 834, Normaundye, 44.

Norwaye, 44, 3935.

Nylus, 591, *the Nile.*

Orcage, 572.

Orgaile, 3534, 3934, Orgayle, 30.

Origge, 1825.

Orkenay, 30, Orekenay, 3934, Orkkenaye, 4163, *Orkney.*

Owghtreth, 234.

Pamphile, 588, *Pamphilia.*

Paradice, 2706, Paradyse, 2039.

Paresche, 1340, 1888, 2647, Parys, 1609. 1631, *Paris.*

Paule, 2413.

Pavy, 3141, Pavye, 568, *Pavia.*

Pawnce, 3140.

Peghttes, 4125, Peyghtes, 3533, *Picts.*

Perce, 588, 1520, Perse, 1377, 1544, *Persia.*

Digitized by Google

Peter, 2413, 2724, 2883, Petire, 2646, Petyr, 1256, the apostle.

Peter, 1476, 1519, 1631, Petir, 1610, Petire, 1543, Petyr, 1419, a senator.

Petyrsande, 352.

Peyghtes. *See* Peghttes.

Peyters, 40, *Poictiers.*

Porte Iaffe. *See* Iaffe.

Portyngale, 1028, *Portugal.*

Pounte Tremble, 327, 352, Pownte T., 3140.

Preter Iohne, 588, *Prester John.*

Prewsslande, 2788, Pruyslande, 604, 2835, *Prussia.*

Priamous, 2698, 2724, 2811, 2836, 2916, Priamus, 2595, 2646, 2690, Gawayne's prisoner.

Prouynce, 40, Provynce, 2647, *Provence.*

Pruyslande. *See* Prewsslande.

Pryamous, 4344, *Priam.*

Pulle, 604, *Apulia.*

Pys, 352, Pyse, 3141, *Pisa.*

Rawlaunde, 1607, Rowlande, 1745.

Raynalde, 1607, 1995, Raynallde, 1745.

Raynalde of the Rodes, 2785.

Reone. *See* Rone.

Reynes, 853.

Richeere, 1745, Richere, 1607, 1995, 2790.

Romayne, 310, 1704, 1733, *Roman; pl.* Romaynes, 120, 174, 221, &c. Romaynez, 1761, 1877, &c. Romayns, 1291, 1361, &c.

Rome, 23, 80, 86, 93, &c.

Rone, 1338, Reone (? Roone), 424, *Rhone.*

Roodes, 597, *Rhodes.*

Rowlande, 1745.

Rowne, 1996, *Rouen.*

Salarne, 2586, Salerne, 4311, *Salerno.*

Sandewyche, 447, Sandwyche, 490, 635, 720.

Sarazene, 2277, *Saracen; pl.* Sarazenes, 624, 1846, 1911, &c. Sarazenez, 1960, Sarezenes, 599, 607, Sarzanez, 1854, Sarzynes, 1626.

Satanase, 3812, *Satan.*

Sayne, 1336, *Seine.*

Scottlande, 32, 292.

Segramoure, 1871.

Sessoyne, 1977, 2657, 2907, Sexone, 1964, *Saxony.*

Sessoynes, 3530, *Saxons.*

Sexone. *See* Sessoyne.

Sextenour, 1700, Sextynour of Lyby, 1625.

Soone, 2482, *Saone.*

Sotere. *See* Sutere.

Southamptone, 3546.

Spanyolis, 3700, *Spaniards.*

Spayne, 999, 3162.

Spolett, 3161, *Spoleto.*

Spruyslande, 3162.

Surgenale, 3532.

Surry, 608, 1687, 1844, &c. Surrye, 590, 1626, 3312, Surylande, 2657, *Syria.*

Sutere, 1627, 1910, Sotere, 1871 Suters (?), 501.

Swaldye, 57.

Swetherwyke, 47.

Swyane of Swecy, 2958.

Swynne, 47.

Tambire, 3902, *Tamar.*

Tartary, 582.

Thebay, 583.

Tholus, 39, Tolouse, 1567, *Toulouse.*

Towelle, 1916.

Digitized by Google

Treyntis, (?) 4056.
Troye, 887, 1696, 2603, 2635, 3409, 4343.
Troys, 1629, *Troyes.*
Turkayne, 2408. *Read* Tuskayne.
Turky, 582, *Turkey.*
Turkys, 1917, *Turks.*
Turoyne, 39, *Touraine.*
Turry, 234.
Tuschayne, 431, Tuskane, 3150, Tuskayne, 328, 499, 3586, 3593, *Tuscany.*

Valence, 41.
Valewnce, Viscownte of, 2047.
Valyant, 2064, V. of Vyleris, 1982.
Venyce, 204, Venyse, 2025.
Vertennone vale, 3169.
Viterbe, 326, 353, 2025, 2048, 3164, *Viterbo.*
Vnwyne, 2868.
Vryelle, 1744.
Vryenee. *See* Ewayne.
Vter, 29, Vtere, 521, 1310, 4216, Arthur's father.
Vtere, 1904, mistake for Vtolfe (?).
Vtolfe, 1622, 1868.
Vyenne, 41, *Vienne (in France).*

Wade, 964.
Walchere, 2680.
Wales, 33, 56, Walis, 2890, West Walys, 322.
Walschelande, 334, *Wales.*
Waltyre, 2495.
Walyngfordhe, 4203, 4217.
Watlyng-strette, 450, *Watling-street.*
Wawayne. *See* Gawayne.
Waynor, Waynore, Waynour. *See* Gaynour.
Wecharde, 2495.
Westfale, 2826, Westuale, 2656, Westwale, 621, *Westphalia.*
Whycher, 2678, Wychere, 2680, 4025.
Wyghte, 334, *the Isle of Wight.*
Wynchestre, 4011.

Ynglande. *See* Inglande.

Yorke, 636, 3911, *York.*

Digitized by Google

GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

A, *conj.* and, 2522, 2797.

A, *int.* ah ! 320, 1671, 1791.

Abaischite, *p.p.* abashed, 255.

Abaiste, Abayste, *p.p.* cast down, 1423, 3737.

Abbayes, *s. pl.* abbeys, 3403.

Abillere, *adj. comp.* abler, 2635.

Abouen, 903, 904, Abouenn, 564, Aboune, 511, Abowene, 823, Abowne, 2060, Abwene, 775, *prep. and adv.* above. A.S. *abufan.*

Accorde, *v.* agree, 344 ; *p.p.* accordide, 3133.

Accountes, *v.* 3 *s.* reckons, 1102 ; 1 *s.* acounte, make account of, care for, 405 ; *inf.* acownt, tell, 3929.

Actone, *s.* acton, 902, 3457 ; *pl.* aketouns, 2626.

Affraye, *s.* fright, terror, 3226.

Affrayede, *v. pret.* frightened, 2804; *p.p.* affrayede, 2256.

Aftire, Aftyr, Aftyre, after, 64, 82, &c.

Agaste, *adj.* aghast, afraid, 2442, 2728.

Agayne, Agaynes, Agaynez, Agayns, *prep.* against, towards, 774, 1268, 2681.

Agayne-stande, *v.* resist, 3757 ; *pl.* agayne-stondes, 3126.

Ajournede, *p.p.* adjourned, put off, 340.

Ajuggede, *p.p.* judged, deemed, 862, 1658, 3411, 4110.

Ake, *s.* oak, 1096. A.S. *ác.*

Akere, *s.* acre, 3849.

Aketouns. *See* Actone.

Alde, 13, 986, Awlde, 279, *adj.* old.

Alegges, *v. pl.* allege, 4342.

Alet, *s.* ailette, shoulder-plate, 2505.

Alfyne, *s.* 1343, a term of reproach; it literally means the *bishop* in chess. See *Promptorium Parvulorum.*

Algarde, *s.* a kind of wine, 202.

Alkyne, Alkyns, *adj.* of every kind, 928, 1730, 3244.

Allblawsters, *s. pl.* crossbow-men, 2426.

Alle-weldand. *See* Alweldande.

Allone, *adj.* alone, only, 541, 2312.

Allossede, *p.p.* renowned, esteemed, 3881.

Alls. *See* Als.

Alofede. *Read* Alosede, *p.p.* praised, renowned, 2418.

Alouer, *adv.* all over, 2027.

Alowe, *v.* praise, 1036; 3 *s.* alowes, 396.

Als, Alls, *conj.* as, 845, 1701, 1989, 1590; also, 1194.

Digitized by Google

Alweldande, 397, Alle-weldand, 1059, *adj.* all-ruling, all-powerful.

Alynes, *s. pl.* aliens, 4061.

Amange, *prep.* among, 4037; *adv.* at times, sometimes, 1238.

Ame = am, 2606, 2642, &c.

Amede, *p.p.* estimated, 4068. "Aësmer, aasmer, aemer, aumer, easmer: Juger, estimer, comparer, croire, penser, être d'avis."—*Roquefort.* Lat. *æstimare.*

Ancestres, Auncestres, *s. pl.* ancestors, 276, 521, 1310.

And = an, if, 134, 339, 1023.

Ane, *adj.* an, a, 1079, 1148, 1661.

Anely, Anly, *adv.* only, alone, 98, 1499, 1981.

Anentis, *prep.* against, 2568.

Anes, *adv.* once, 360. *See* Ones.

Angerde, *p.p.* angered, angry, 265, 1938, 1957.

Angers, *impers. v.* Me angers = I am angry, 1662, 2838, 2848.

Ankkere, *s.* anchor, 3601; *pl.* ankers, 740, ankyrs, 493.

Anlace, *s.* a sort of dagger, 1148. "Besides the dagger, Chaucer, in his Canterbury Tales, mentions the anelace, which was broad bladed, but lessening from the hilt to a sharp point, and having a sharp edge on each side." Meyrick, *Critical Inquiry into Antient Armour*, vol. ii. p. 100.

Anly. *See* Anely.

Anone, *adv.* anon, soon, 2716.

Ansuere, *v.* answer, 98, 306; *pret.* answarde, 288.

Ansuere, *s.* answer, 1324.

Anter. *See* Awnter.

Anterous, *adj.* adventurous, bold, 2524.

Apas, *adv.* with measured step, 4014.

Apone, 195, Appone, 262, Apponne, 4000, *prep.* upon.

Appairelles, *v. pl.* apparel, dress, 500; *p.p.* appayrellde, 2461.

Apparant, Apparaunt, *adj.* apparent, 1944, 2606.

Apparaylle, *s.* apparel, 3365.

Apperte, *adj.* open, 688.

Appertly, 1478, Appertlyche, 589, *adv.* openly.

Appone. *See* Apone.

Approches, *ref. v. pl.* draw near, 4105.

Ar, Are, *adv. & conj.* before, 254, 331, 1722.

Arase, *v.* snatch away, 4098.

Araysede, *p.p.* raised, drawn up, 1677.

Arborye, *s.* trees, 3244.

Ardant, Ardauunt, *adj.* burning, 193, 1087.

Are. *See* Ar.

Are, *conj.* or, 1944.

Areste, *v.* arrest, stop, capture, 633; *pret.* areste, 329, arestede, 1429.

Areste, *s.* arrest, 1456, 1473; place of meeting, 311, 548.

Arowes, *s. pl.* arrows, 2105.

Arrabyes, Arrabys, *s. pl.* animals of some kind, perhaps Arabian horses, 2288, 2337.

Arryfede, 835, Aryefede, 600, Aryuede, 3905, *p.p.* come to shore.

As armes, (Fr.) to arms! 2717.

Asawte. *See* Assawte.

Asaye, 2615, Assaye, 2347, *v.* try.

Asaye, *s.* trial, examination, 4312.

Ascente, Assente, *v.* assent, 644, 1506, 1963.

Ascryez, 1367, Askryes, 2245, *v.* 3 *s.* shouts, cries out; *pl.* ascriez, 1768.

Asches, *v.* 2 *s.* askest, 343; 3 *s.* askys, requires, 157; *pret.* aschede, asked for, 715.

Digitized by Google

Assawte, Asawte, Asawtte, *s.* assault, 1697, 3012, 3053.

Assemble, *s.* assembly, 1578, 1852, 1962.

Assingnez, *v. pl.* assign, 727; *pret.* assingnyde, 240.

Assoyllede, *p.p.* absolved, 3498.

At = to (with the infinitive), 1165.

At = that = what, 1842, 3484.

Atheliste, *adj.* noblest, 1593. A.S. *æþele.*

Attamede, *v. pret.* broached, pierced, 2175.
"He let *atame* hys pyement tuzne
To make his gode gestis glad."
Royal MS. 18 A x, leaf 130, bk.
"Attamyn a wesselle wyth drynke, or abbrochyn. Attamino, depleo." *Promptorium Parvulorum.*

At-vndere, *adv.* down, 3180.

Atyre, *s.* attire, 4186.

Auctors, *s. pl.* authors, 4342.

Auditoure, *s.* auditor, 1673; *pl.* audytours, 661.

Aughte, Awughte, *adj.* eight, 278, 2627, 3188.

Aughte, *v.* *See* Awe.

Aughtende, *adj.* eighth, 462.

Auncestres. *See* Ancestres.

Auntire, Auntyre. *See* Awnter.

Austerene, Austeryne, *adj.* stern, 306, 414, 571, &c. See *Austerne* in *Pricke of Conscience*, l. 6181.

Auantid, *v. pret.* praised, 1594; *p.p.* avauntede, 2864.

Avanttwarde, 324, Avawewarde, 2051, Avawmewarde, 2024, Avawmwarde, 2829, 3168, Avawwarde, 3764, *s.* vanguard.

Avawmbrace, *s.* vambrace, a piece of armour for the forearm, 2568.

Auenaunt, *adj.* becoming, graceful, 2626, 3188, 3208, 3500.

Aventaile, *s.* "a moveable front to a helmet which covered the face, and through which the wearer respired or drew in the air, quâ ventus hauritur." (— Meyrick, *Glossary of Military Terms*, under Ventaculum) 910, 2572.

Auenture, *s.* adventure, chance, fortune, 642.

Avires, *v.* turns towards, directs, 3164. O. Fr. *virer*, turn.

Avisemente, *s.* advice, counsel, 148.

Avissely, Auyssely, *adv.* advisedly, prudently, 2699, 3165.

Avowe, *s.* vow, 296, 308, 347.

Avowe, *v.* vow, 357; *p.p.* avowede, 369.

Auoyeddyde, *v. pret.* quitted, 2051.

Avyede, *v. pret.* showed the way, or made their way towards, 3716. "Avier: Montrer le chemin à quelqu'un." *Roquefort.* "*Avoier, aveier*, diriger, indiquer la route, mettre en chemin, en bon chemin, exciter, irriter; *s'avoier*, se mettre en route, dans la bonne route, se diriger, s'occuper dequelquechose." *Burguy.*

Awe, *v.* owe, 99; *pl.* awes, 455, ought; *pret.* aughte, owned, possessed, 29, 276, 521, &c.; *pret. subj.* aughte, oughtest, 289; 'aughte,' as an impersonal verb, 1583, 1595, 3340, awghte, 3509. Me aughte =I ought.

Awene, *adj.* own, 709, 997, 1594.

Awghtene, *adj.* eighteen, 4069.

Awke, *adj.* perverse, contrary, 13.

Awkewarde, Awkwarde, *adv.* awry, transversely, 2247, 2564.

Awlde. *See* Alde.

Awncestrye, *s.* ancestry, 1907.

Awntere, Auntire, Awntire, *s.* adventure, chance, risk, 1905, 2617 2244; *pl.* awnters, 1967; at awntere, at random, 2543.

Digitized by Google

Awntere, Anter, Auntyre, *v.* adventure, 360, 1596, 1660; 3 *s.* anters, 1498; *pl.* awnters, 1596.

Awntrende, *adj.* adventuring, bold, 2717.

Awntrouseste, *adj.* most adventurous, 1624.

Awughte. *See* Aughte.

Ayele, *s.* grandfather, 2603.

Ayere, Ayre, *s.* heir, 279, 283, 2634; *pl.* ayers, 3146.

Ayere, Ayre, *v.* go, 455, 470, 1591; 3 *s.* ayerez, 617; *pl.* ayres, 1329; *i. p.* ayerande, 2830.

Ayther, Aythere, Aythyre, *adj.* either, each, 939, 1991, 2830.

Ay-ware, *adv.* everywhere, 614.

Azoure, Azure, *s.* blue, 193, 765, 3355.

Aȝayne, *adv.* again, 2713.

Aȝaynes, A-ȝaynez, *adv.* against, 786, 2117, 2791. *See* Agayne.

Aȝayne-stondes. *See* Agayne-stande.

Bacenett, *s.* cap of steel or other metal, sometimes worn under the helm, 906, 2695, 2770; *pl.* bacenetez, 1754.

"He hutte him on þe helm on hiht,
In-to þe Brayn þorw *Bacinet* briht;
Thus is his seruyse ȝolde."
The Kyng of Tars (Vernon MS., leaf 306, *b.*)

Bachelers, Bachellers, *s. pl.* novices in arms, 68, 567, 1424.

Bade, *v. pret.* abode, 2383.

Bagis, Bagys, *s. pl.* badges, 2303, 3730.

Baiste, *p.p.* downcast, afraid, 2856.

Baite, *v.* feed, 2694.

Bake, *s.* back, 2203, 3257.

Bakene, *p.p.* baked, 3166.

Bakhalfe, *s.* backpart, back, 1482.

Balde, *adj.* bold, 1968.

Baldly, *adv.* boldly, 630.

Bale, *s.* harm, grief, sorrow, 805, 3976; *adj.* hurtful, 1483. A.S. *bealu.*

Balefulle, *adj.* hurtful, 791; sorrowful, wretched, 1029, 1136.

Bale-fyre, *s.* a large fire, properly a fire lighted as a signal of distress, 1048.

Baltyrde, *v. pret.* danced about, capered, 782. See *Balteres, Alliterative Poems* (Reprint), p. 102, l. 459.

Banarettez. *See* Banerettes.

Bandez, *s. pl.* bonds, 1485; used metaphorically for "distress," 1180.

Baneoure, *s.* bearer of a banner, 3732. "Banyowre, or bannerberere. *Vexillarius, vexillifer, primipilus.*" Promptorium Parvulorum.

Banerettes, Banerettez, Banarettez, *s. pl.* knights of the higher order, 68, 567, 1403, 1424, 2855.

Banke, *s.* shore (of the sea), 728, 3731; *pl.* bankkes, 3714.

Barayne, *adj.* barren, 224.

Barbours, *s. pl.* barbers, 2331, 2577.

Barbycane, *s.* outer fortification or defence, fortress at the outlet of a city, 1183, 2470.

Bare. *See* Bere.

Bare, *s.* boar, 3123.

Barefote, *adj.* barefoot, 2309.

Bareheuedys, *s. pl.* boarheads, 177.

Bare-heuvede, *adj.* bareheaded, 3630.

Bare-legyde, *adj.* barelegged, 2122.

Baronage, *s.* company of barons, 587, 1242.

Barowes, *s. pl.* swine, 191. A.S. *bearh.*

Barrers, *s. pl.* barriers, 2469.

Digitized by Google

Basschede, *p.p.* cast down, 2121.

Bataile, 783, Batelle, 316, Batayle, 2458, Bataylle, 3107, Baytaille, 4319, *s.* battle; body of troops; *pl.* baitailles, 1425, batailles, 4064.

Baterde, *p.p.* battered, 189.

Bathe, *conj.* both, 19, 34, 352, &c.

Bawmede, *v. pret.* embalmed, 2298; *p.p.* bawmede, 980, 4020.

Baye, *adj.* bay, brown, 918.

Baytaille. *See* Bataile.

Baytand, *i. p.* baiting, 2516; baytaynde, 2671.

Be, Bee, *prep.* by, 60, 164, 174, &c.

Be, Bee, *v.* be; *ind. pres. pl.* bez, 97, bene, 2850; *fut.* 1. be (= shall be), 981, 2631, 4140; 2. bees, 1688, 2667, beese, 2663; 3. bees, 3976, bese, 1017, 4312; *imp. pl.* 2. bes, 3798, 4095, bees, 2856, 3737, bez, 222.

Beblede, *v. pret.* made bloody, 2250.

Bechene, *adj.* beechen, 1713.

Bechopes, *s. pl.* bishops, 4328.

Becommys, *v.* becomes, is proper for, 4317.

Bedde, Bede, *s.* bed, 758, 805, 2858.

Bede, *adj.* craving, hungry, lean, 3464. See *Beddy* in *Jamieson.* A.S. *biddan*, to ask.

Bedes, *v. pl.* offer, 505.

Bedgatt, *s.* going to bed, 1030.

Bee. *See* Be.

Beerynes. *See* Berne.

Bees. *See* Be, *v.*

Begynnande, *i. p.* beginning, 2963.

Behalde, *v.* behold, 2517; *i. p.* behaldande, 3107.

Bekez, *v.* 3 *s.* bakes, warms, 1048.

Bekende, *v. pret.* committed, entrusted, 2340, 2355; bekennyde, 482.

Beknowe, *v.* acknowledge, confess, 3867.

Bekyre, *v.* contend, fight, 3679; *pl.* bekyrs, 2425; *pret.* bekerde, 2096.

Bekyne, *s.* beacon, 564.

Belde, *v.* dwell, 8; *pl.* bieldez, 1242; *pret.* beldytt, inhabited, occupied, 38; *p.p.* beyldede, occupied, 566.

Belefede, 1250, Beleuede, 3405, Beleuefede, 2380, *p.p.* left.

Beleue, *v.* remain, 3583.

Belyfe, Belyue, *adv.* quickly, 1263, 2068, 2336, 3732.

Beme, *s.* beam, 3663.

Beneyde. *Read* Bendyde, *v. pret.* bent, 2424.

Bente, *s.* field, plain, 915, 1054, 1067.

Benysone, *s.* blessing, 4318.

Berde, *s.* beard, 1012; *pl.* berdez, 1002.

Bere, *s.* bear, 775, 790, 802.

Bere, *v.* bear, 51, 615; *pret.* bare, 291, 893; *p.p.* borne, 3738.

Berkes, *v.* 3 *s.* barks, 1351.

Bernakes, *s. pl.* barnacle geese, 189.

Berne, 962, Beryne, 116, Berynne, 3580, Bierne, 1094, Byerne, 2202, *s.* man; *pl.* bernes, 255, beryns, 148, beerynes, 1050, biernez, 1483, byernez, 2022, byerns, 1391. A.S. *beorn.*

Berouene. *Read* Beronene, *p.p.* run over with, covered, 3946; berowne, 3971.

"On me [the cross] lay þe lambe of love,
I was plat*er*, hys body above,
Whan flessche *and* veynes alle toclove,
With blood I was *bironne*."
Royal MS. 18 A x, leaf 128.

Digitized by Google

See *Beronen* in *Percy's Folio MS.* ed. Hales and Furnivall, vol. i. p. 213, l. 31, and vol. iii. p. 63, l. 172.

Berye, *v.* bury, 4318; 3 *s.* beryes, 2379; *p.p.* beryede, 980.

Beryelle, *s.* burial, 1776, 2188.

Beryenge, *s.* burying, 2377, 4023.

Bes. *See* Be.

Besauntez, *s. pl.* bezants, 3256.

Bese. *See* Be.

Bessomes, *v.* 3 *s.* besoms, i. e. sweeps, 3661.

Besy, *adj.* busy, 4095.

Besye, *s.* business, 3630.

Beseke, *v.* beseech; 3 *s.* besekys, 305; *pl.* besekes, 127; *pret.* besoghte, besoughte, 1234, 1438, 3137.

Bestaile, *s.* beasts, cattle, 1050.

Beste, *s.* beast, 107, 811.

Betakyns, *v.* 3 *s.* betokens, signifies, 822, 824.

Bet, *v. pret.* set in order, adjusted; lit. improved, 3656. A.S. *bétan.*

Beteche, *v.* hand over, deliver, commit, 1611; 3 *s.* beteches, 714; *pret.* betoke, 1889; betuke, 3190, 4015. A.S. *betǽcan.*

Betoke. *See* Beteche.

Betrappede, *p.p.* entrapped, 1630.

Betuke. *See* Beteche.

Betwyx, *prep.* betwixt, 801, 2798.

Betydde, *v.* betide, 4325; 3 *s.* betyddes, 3482; betyddys, 4315.

Bett, *v. pret.* beat, 2470, 3682.

Bettes, *v. ind. pres. pl.* beat, 2808.

Betyne, *adj.* beaten; hence, adorned with beaten gold, or other such material, 3631, 3646, 3945.

Beueryne = bevering, quivering, 3630. O.E. *biver*, tremble. A.S. *bifian.* Or perhaps beueryne = beaver-coloured; compare *beuer hwed* in *Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight*, l. 845.

Bewe, *v.* bow, 3366.

Bewes, *s. pl.* boughs, 3366.

Bewells, *s. pl.* bowels, 2175, 2203.

Bewschers, *s. pl.* (?) the lower parts of the body, 1047. A.S. *scaru*, bowels, &c.; bew = bel, beau, fine, perhaps.

Beyldede. *See* Belde.

Bez. *See* Be.

Bidde, *v.* bide, remain, 4028.

Biddis, *v. ind. pres. pl.* offer, 2310.

Bieldez. *See* Belde.

Bierdez. *See* Birde.

Bilynge, *s.* probably the part of the ship about the *bill* or *rostrum*, 3663. A.S. *bil*, bill, beak, ... forepart of a ship. (See *Bosworth.*)

Birdes, 2190, Birdez, 1029, Bierdez, 1052, Byrdez, 999, *s. pl.* women, ladies. A.S. *brýd*, bride, wife, woman.

Birenne, 2519. Mistake for "outene."

Birtenede, 3972. *See* Brittene.

Blake, *adj.* black, 775, 1090, 4339.

Blanke, *s.* horse, 1799; *pl.* blankes, 1860. *See* Blonke.

Blasons, *s. pl.* shields of arms, 1860. See *Blasoun* in *Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight*, l. 828.

Blawe, *v.* blow, 2662.

Blawene, *p.p.* blown, 1286.

Blawnchede, *p.p.* whitened, 3039.

Ble, Blee, *s.* colour, complexion, 2576, 3332, 3558, 4213.

Blemeste, *p.p.* blemished, hurt, 2578.

Blendez, *v.* 3 *s.* blends, is mingled, 1799.

Blenke, *v.* blench, wince, 3640, 3735; 3 *s.* blenkes, 4213; cause to blench, overcome, 2857.

Digitized by Google

Bleryde, *v. pret.* mouthed, made wry faces, 782.
"Deuels sal gadir obout hym þan,
. . . . . .
And grymly gryn on hym and *blere*
And hydus braydes mak hym to fere." Hampole's *Pricke of Conscience*, l. 2226.

Blethely, *adv.* blithely, cheerfully, 4147.

Blod, 4121, Blode, 175, 392, Blude, 3235, 4282, *s.* blood.

Blode-bande, *s.* blood-band, a bandage to stop bleeding, 2576.

Blod-hondes, *s. pl.* bloodhounds, 3640.

Blody, Blodye, *adj.* bloody, 793, 3946.

Blondirs, *v.* 2 *s.* blunderest, 3975.

Blonke, *s.* horse, steed, 453; *pl.* blonkes, 615, blonkkes, 1634. A.S. *blanca, blonca.*

Blude. *See* Blod.

Blyne, *v.* cease, 1931, 2578, 3975. A.S. *blinnan.*

Blyschit, *v. pret.* looked, 116. See *blusched, Alliterative Poems*, p. 29, l. 980.

Blysse, *s.* joy, 1485.

Blyssyng, *s.* blessing, 4103.

Bonettez, *s. pl.* additional pieces of sail, 3656. "Bonnet (*bonnette*, Fr.), an additional part made to fasten with latchings to the foot of the sails of small vessels with one mast, in moderate winds. It is exactly similar to the foot of the sail it is intended for. They are commonly one-third of the depth of the sails they belong to." (Falconer's *Marine Dictionary*, ed. Burney.)

Borde, 79, 171, 630, Bourde, 730, 3641, Burde, 1930, *s.* board, table; board (of a ship).

Bordoure, *s.* border, 4211; *pl.* bordurs, 907.

Bordyrde, *p.p.* bordered, 1002.

Bore, *s.* boar, 188, 4214.

Borne, 2519. Perhaps a mistake for *berne.*

Borne, *p.p.* *See* Bere.

Bosturs, *s. pl.* boasters, 1393.

Bot, Bott, Botte, *conj.* but, 10, 70, except, 516, 521, unless, 1925; bot if, bot ȝif, bot ȝife, 356, 486, 250, unless; *prep.* without, 4070.

Bote, 1786, Botte, 1837, *s.* amends, recompense. A.S. *bót, bútu.*

Bothen, Bothene, both, 35, 2547, 2691, 2997, 3716, 4151.

Botelesse, 981, 3558, Botles, 3976, Butelesse, 1014, *adj.* without remedy, cureless.

Bottes, *s. pl.* boats, 748.

Botures, *s. pl.* bitterns, 189. Probably miswritten for *Betures*; see *Betowre* in *Iohn Russell's Boke of Nurture*, ed. Furnivall, ll. 421, 541, 696

Boune, Bowne, *v.* make ready, prepare, hasten, go, 936, 1013, 1034; 3 *s.* bownes, 3591, bounnez, 783.

Bourde. *See* Borde.

Bourdene, *v. pl. pres. ind.* jest, 3122; bouredez, 3 *s. pres. ind.* 1170.

Boure, *s.* bower, 2190. A.S. *búr.*

Boustous, 2175, Boustouse, 2425, 3679, Boystous, 3762, Bustous, 615, 775, 783, 1379, *adj.* rude, rough, harsh, violent.

Bouxome, 2858, Bouxvme, 4147, *adj.* obedient.

Bouxsomly, *adv.* obediently, 107.

Bowes, *v.* 3 *s.* turns, 2251; *pl.* bowes, go, 69, 2310.

Bowes, *s. pl.* shoulders, 188; boughs, 1711, 3247. A.S. *bóh*, arm, back, shoulder, branch, bough. (*Bosworth.*)

Bowndene, *p.p.* bound, 3316.

Bowne, *v.* *See* Boune.

Bownne, *adj.* ready, 1633, 2331.

Digitized by Google

Box, *s.* stroke, blow, 1111.

Boyes, *s. pl.* 2122, 2856, 3122.

Boystous. *See* Boustous.

Brace, *v.* fasten, fix, 1182; 3 *s.* bracez, puts on his arm, 914.

Bracer, 4247, *s.* brassart, a defence for the arm; *pl.* brasers, 1859.

Brade, *adj.* broad, 106, 914, 1094; *comp.* braddere, 55, 1699.

Bragge, *v.* blow (in a trumpet); *pl. pres. ind.* braggene, 1484, bragges, 4107; *pret.* braggede, 3657.

Braggers, *s. pl.* boasters, braggarts, 1348.

Brand, 3946, Brande, 893, 914, Brannde, 2239, *s.* sword. A.S. *brand, brond*, brand, torch, sword.

Brankkand, *i. p.* branking, i. e. bridling, checking, curbing, repressing, 1861. See *Brank* and *Branks* in *Jamieson*.

Braste. *See* Briste.

Brathely, *adv.* hastily, violently, fiercely, 1771, 3219.

Braunchers, *s. pl.* young hawks, 190.

Braundesche. *See* Brawndysche.

Brawle, Brawlle, *v.* 2349, 2362; 3 *s.* brawles, 1349.

Brawlynge, *s.* confusion, 2176.

Brawnches, *s. pl.* branches, 3367.

Brawndysche, *v.* brandish, 3359; 3 *s.* braundesche, 1056; *pret.* braundyschte, 782, brawndeste, 3657.

Brawne, *s.* boar, 1095.

Brayd, *v.* drive, thrust, dash, draw, 1172; 3 *s.* braydes, 2695, braydez, 2069, 2073, brayedez, 906; *p.p.* braydene, cast, 3945.

Brayde, *s.* thrust, 3762.

Brede, *s.* bread, 2715.

Brede, *s.* roast meat, 79, 190, 1052; *pl.* bredez, 1049, bredis, 2715. A.S *brǽde.*

Brede, *s.* breadth, 1224, 2011, 2273, 3656. A.S. *brǽdo.*

Bredes, *v.* 3 *s.* breeds, 224.

Bregaundez, *s. pl.* brigands, 2096. "These foot-soldiers were clothed in jackets, which were quilted, and had pieces of iron within, hence called brigandines. Such jackets were worn in the time of Elizabeth and James I. by the English archers." Meyrick, *Glossary of Military Terms*, under *Brigantii.*

Breke, *v.* break, 4146; 3 *s.* brekes, 3124.

Breklesse, *adj.* without breeches, naked, 1048.

Breme, *adj.* fierce, 1380.

Bremly, *adv.* fiercely, 4107.

Brenë, 2253, 4212, Breny, 1482, *s.* cuirass; *pl.* brenyes, 3753, brenys, 1525, 1858, bryneys, 4119. See *Brini* in the Glossary to *Havelok*, ed. Skeat.

Brenyede, 316, Brynyede, 3680, *adj.* armed with a cuirass.

Breste, *s.* breast, 2253, front of an army, 1990; *pl.* brestez, 191.

Brestys. *See* Briste.

Brethe, *s.* wrath, anger, 107, 117, 2213.

Brethly, *adv.* angrily, 3661.

Brettened, Brettyne. *See* Brittene.

Brigge, 3124, Brygge, 2470, *s.* bridge.

Briste, *v.* burst, break, 214; 3 *s.* bristez, 805, brystez, 1135, 1482; *pl.* bristez, 1859, brestys, 3663; *pret.* braste, 2176, 2271; *pret. pl.* broustene, 2544; *p.p.* brustene, 2771, broustene, 3974; *weak pret.* brystedde, 1129.

Brittene, 963, Brettyne, 3580, Bryttyne, 106, 1350, *v.* cut or dash in pieces, destroy completely; *pret.* brettened, 1487, brittenyde, 802, bryttenede, 2212; *p.p.* brettenede, 3520, brittenede, 1067, birtenede,

Digitized by Google

3972. A.S. *bryttian, brytnian*, to divide into fragments, distribute.

Broche, *v.* pierce, stab, 1172; 3 *s.* broches, 2202, brochez, spurs, 918; *pl.* brochez, spur, 1449; *pret.* brochede, broached, tapped, 2714; *p.p.* brochede, spitted, 1050, 1067.

Brochez, *s. pl.* spits, 1029.

Brode, *adj.* broad, 116, 792, 1047. *See* Brade.

Broght, 3358, Broghte, 802, *v. pret.* brought; *p.p.* broghte, 1013, 1017.

Brokbrestede, *adj.* having a breast variegated, spotted or streaked with black and white, 1095. See *Brocked* in *Jamieson*. Compare "Brock-faced, a white longitudinal mark down the face like a badger." *Brockett.*

Bronde, *s.* sword, 2566, 3631; *pl.* brondes, 2309. *See* Brand.

Brotheliche, 3640, Brothely, 1408, 1449, 1753, 1862, 2095, Brothly, 3617, *adv.* hastily, violently, fiercely.

Brothy, *adj.* (?) foamy, frothy, 1090.

Browddene, 2807, 4119, Browdene, 1858, *adj.* woven. See *Brawden* in *Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight*, ll. 177, 580. A.S. *brogden, broden, p.p.* of *bregdan*, to weave, braid, &c. The "brenyes" were probably made of small metal rings woven one into the other.

Bruchez, *s. pl.* brooches, 3256.

Bruschese, *v. pl.* brush, dash, 3680.

Brustils, *s. pl.* bristles, 1095.

Bryddes, *s. pl.* birds, 181.

Brydille, 453, Brydylle, 2085, *s.* bridle.

Brygge. *See* Brigge.

Brymly, *adv.* fiercely, 117, 4214.

Bryne, 106, Brynne, 564, *v.* burn; 3 *s.* brynnez, 1241; *pret.* brynte, 117; *p.p.* brynte, 3520.

Bryneys. *See* Brene.

Brynyede. *See* Brenyede.

Brystedde, Brystez. *See* Briste.

Bryttenede, Bryttyne. *See* Brittene.

Burde. *See* Borde.

Burgesse, 3082, *s.* burgess, citizen; *pl.* burgeys, 857.

Burghe, *s.* city, 1968, 2424, 3083; *pl.* burghes, 1241. A.S. *burh.*

Burliche, 2190, Burelyche, 304, Burlyche, 586, 730, 1002, 1111. 2010, *adj.* tall, stately, grand.

Burliche, *adv.* grandly, 4199.

Burneschte, 906, 1011, 2123, Burneste, 2272, 3846, Burnyscht, 1113, Burnyste, 177, 1859, *p.p.* burnished, polished.

Bus, *impers. v.* behoves, 2576. Vs bus = we must.

Buscayle, 895, Buskayle, 1634, *s.* bushes.

Buschede. *See* Buske, *v.*

Buschement, *s.* ambush, 3124. *See* Enbuschement.

Buskayle. *See* Buscayle.

Buske, *s.* bush, wood, 453, 918; *pl.* buskez, 1142.

Buske, *v.* make ready, prepare, arrange, dispose, manage, hasten, proceed, go; 3 *s.* buskes, 1223, 2829, buskez, 2073; *pl.* buskes, 1754, buskez, 729, 1618; *pret.* buskede, 1633; *imp.* 2 *s.* buske, 1263; *imp.* 2 *pl.* buskes, 2855; *p.p.* buskede, arrayed, dressed, 2517, 3332, 4339, buschede, furnished, 567; buske vpe, raise, 3072.

Bustous. *See* Boustous.

Butelesse. *See* Botelesse.

Byd, Bydde, Byde, *v.* ask, bid, 433, 1181, 2188, 4323; 3 *s.* byddez, 1776, byddis, 2361.

Digitized by Google

Byddynge, *s.* bidding, command, 1030, 1931.

Byde, *v.* remain, abide, tarry, 8, 936, 1968; 3 *s.* byddys, 4214; *pl.* byddes, 2808, byddez, 1030, await, wait for; *imp.* 2 *pl.* byddez, 629.

Byerns, Byeryne. *See* Berne.

Byggly, *adv.* bigly, strongly, 1376.

Byhalue, *s.* behalf, 1674.

Byhoues, 4135, Byhouys, 3579, Byhowys, 1715, *impers. v.* behoves.

Byhyndene, *adv.* behind, 694.

Bylefede, 1538, Byleuede, 2145, 2366, Byleuefede, 3678, Byleuyde, 1557, 1885, *p.p.* left.

Bynne, *prep.* within, 804. A.S. *binnan.*

Byrdez. *See* Birdes.

Byrre, *s.* impetus, violence, 3661.

Byswenkez, *v.* 3 *s.* toils, 1128. A.S. *beswincan*, to labour.

Byttes, *v.* 3 *s.* bites, 791.

Caas, 261, 1892, Caase, 3521, Case, 2719, Cas, 3564, *s.* hap, occurrence.

Cabane, 757, Kabane, 3671, *s.* cabin; *pl.* cabanes, 733.

Cabilles, *s. pl.* cables, 3671.

Cachede, *p.p.* chased, 3513.

Cachene, *v. pl.* catch, seize, take, 834; *pl.* catchez, 480; *pret.* caughte, 1105, kaghte, 2636, kaught, 3951, kaughte, 3378, kawghte, 3916; *p.p.* cawghte, 3514, kaughte, 2995.

Caffe, *s.* chaff, refuse, 1064.

Caire. *See* Cayre.

Cantelle, *s.* corner, quarter, lump, piece, 4231. "*Chantel, Cantel*, coin, quartier, morceau, chanteau." *Burguy.*

Capitayne, 1864, Captayne, 2263, *s.* captain; *pl.* capytaynez, 838.

Captyfe, 1589, *s.* captive, prisoner; *pl.* captifis, 1580.

Care, 859, Kare, 1838, *s.* sorrow.

Carefulle, *adj.* unhappy, 957, sorrowful, 1777.

Caremane, *s.* male, man, 957. A.S. *carlman.*

Carffes, *s. pl.* cuts, 2713.

Carle, *s.* fellow, 1063, 1107, 1165. A.S. *carl.*

Carpe, 2750, Karpe, 1929, 2126, *v.* talk, speak; 3 *s.* carpys, 132; *pret.* carpede, 143, 220. "Carpyn', or talkyn'. *Fabulor, confabulor*, garrulo." *Promptorium Parvulorum.*

Carpynge, *s.* talk, 1672.

Caryage, *s.* luggage, 2355.

Caste, *v.* cast, consider, purpose; 2 *s.* castes, 261; 3 *s.* castes, 1998; castis, 1769; *pret.* kest, 3384, keste, 118, 280, 943; *imp.* 2 *s.* kaste 3406; *p.p.* castyne, 819, 3240.

Castelles, *s. pl.* castles, 27, 849.

Cawtelous, *adj.* full of artifices, artful, cunning, sly, 4185. Fr. *cauteleux.*

Cayre, 877, Caire, 1192, Kaire, 641, 1319, Kayere, 627, Kayre, 6, 444, *v.* go; 3 *s.* cayres, 243; *pl.* cayers, 480. The original meaning was *turn.* A.S. *cyrran, cérran*, to turn.

Certane, 3930, Certayne, 817, *adv.* certainly.

Certez, 1162, 1342, Certys, *adv.* surely, certainly.

Certyfye, *v.* tell, inform, 1555.

Ceté, 601, 2012, Cetee, 440, 488, *s.* city; *pl.* cetees, 2609, cetese, 1337.

Chaas, *s.* chace, 2269.

Chalange, *v.* contest, dispute, 1322, challenge, 2524, 3397, claim, 3326. "*Chalonger*, ... demander, contester, provoquer, attaquer, défendre, refuser, prohiber, blâmer; de *calumnia* fausse accusation, chicane." *Burguy* under *Chalonge.*

Champayne, *s.* champaign, level

Digitized by Google

country, 1226, 1362; *pl.* champanyse, 1822.

Changene, *v. inf.* change, 1405, chawnge, 2301; *pl.* changene, 2989, chaungene, 168; *pret.* chaungede, 3382, chawngyd, 2701, chawngide, 2964; *i. p.* chawngawnde, 2523, chawngynge, 3267.

Chapes, *s. pl.* metal tips of sword-sheaths, 2522. "Chape of a schethe. *Spirula.*" *Prompt. Parv.* "The chape of a sword was a badge assumed by the De la Warr family, in memorial of the part taken by Sir Roger de la Warr, at Poitiers, 1356, in the capture of John, King of France, when he took possession of the royal sword." *Way* in *Prompt. Parv.*

Chapyde, *v. pret.* escaped, 4260.

Charbokle, 3326, Charebocle, 2523, 3267, *s.* carbuncle.

Chare, *s.* (?) 3603.

Chare, *v.* (?) carry, 1886.

Charge, *v.* load, burden, charge, molest, &c.; 3 *s.* chargges, 3538; *pret.* chargede, 1540, chargyde, 1406; *p.p.* chargede, 1549, charegyde, 1552, chargegid, 3136, chargede, 3604, chargegide, 2731.

Chargour, 1026, *s.* dish; *pl.* chargeours, 185.

Charitee, *s.* charity, 1019, 1542.

Charottez, *s. pl.* chariots, 1552.

Charpe, *adj.* sharp, 3600.

Charre, *s.* car, 3914.

Charry, *adj.* (?) dear, cherished, 2964. Fr. *cher*, dear; *chéri*, cherished.

Chasse, *s.* chace, 2368.

Chasse, *v.* chase, 2237.

Chastye, *v.* chastise, correct, 1019; *p.p.* chastyede, 690.

Chasynge-spere, *s.* hunting-spear, 1823, 2955.

Chauffede, *p.p.* heated, excited, 2236.

Chaunce, *s.* chance, hap, 1749, fortune, 2999; chawnse, 2368; *pl.* chauncez, 531, 2956.

Chauncelere, 169, 1551, Chaunchelere, 1541, *s.* chancellor.

Chawffe, *v.* become heated, 2301.

Chawmbyrs, *s. pl.* chambers, 3041.

Chayere, *s.* chair, seat, 3266, 3329, 3347.

Cheefe, *s.* chief (Her.), 2523.

Cheefe, *adj.* chief, 1363, 1404.

Cheekke. *See* Chekke.

Cheese. *See* Chese.

Chefede. *See* Cheue.

Cheftans, 18, Cheftanes, 1872, Cheftaynes, 1323, 1406, *s. pl.* chieftains.

Chekefulle, *adj.* chockfull, 3604.

Chekke, 1539, 2956, Cheke, 3000. Cheekke, 1986, *s.* check, repulse; but applied to the enemy, and therefore equivalent to *success*. In line 1986 it seems to mean the force which checks the enemy.

Chekyne, *s.* chicken, 4181.

Chekyrde, *p.p.* chequered, 3267.

Chele, *s.* cold, 3391.

Chere, *s.* face, countenance, 2069, 2964.

Chese, 1619, Cheese, 682, *v.* choose; hence, choose a way, go towards; 3 *s.* cheses, 2954, chesez, 1225; *pl.* chesene, 1873; *p.p.* chosene, 2731.

Cheualere, *s.* knight, 208, 1551; *pl.* cheualers, 2116.

Cheualrous, 1362, 1540, Cheuallrous, 1399, *adj.* chivalrous.

Cheualrye, 18, 169, 1404, Cheuallrye, 531, *s.* chivalry, knighthood, knights.

Cheuede, 1117, 1841, Chefede, 869; *p.p.* fared, thriven, succeeded.

Cheuede, *v. pret.* attained, 3329.

Cheueride, *p.p.* shivered, 3391.

Digitized by Google

Chewyse, *v.* save, 1750. "*Chevir*, venir à bout de quelquechose, sortir d'une affaire, se tirer d'embarras ....." *Burguy.*

Cheynes, *s. pl.* chains, 2522.

Chiftayne, *s.* chieftain, 2732.

Childe, *s.* applied to a grown person, 2952, 4260; *pl.* childire, 1821, childre, 1025, childrene, 4078, childrenne, 3188, childyre, 845, 1051, childyrene, 3208.

Chillande, *i. p.* chilling, cold, 2965.

Chippe, *s.* ship, 3599; *pl.* chippes, 3546.

Chippe-burdez, *s. pl.* shipboards, 1699.

Chis, (?) 2217.

Cho, *pron.* she, 655, 659, 715, &c. *See* Scho.

Chokkefulle, *adj.* chockfull, 1552.

Chokkes, *v.* 3 *s.* (?) thrusts, 2955; *p.p.* chokkode, 3603.

Chullede, *p.p.* 1444. "Chulle. To bandy about." *Halliwell.*

Churles, *adj.* churlish, 4181.

Chymnés, 3041, Chympnés, 168, *s. pl.* brasiers, or other receptacles for fire, fireplaces.

Chyne, *s.* chine, backbone, 3390.

Cirquytrie, 3399, Cyrqwitrye, 2616 (wrongly printed Cyrus witrye), *s.* pride, arrogance.

Cité, 1696, 1979, Citée, 60, *s.* city. *See* Ceté.

Clappyde, 956, Clappide, 1137, *v. pret.* smote together.

Clarioune, 3563, Claryoune, 2718, *s.* clarion, war-trumpet; *pl.* clarions, 1758.

Claspande, *i. p.* clasping, 4337.

Clasppis, *s. pl.* clasps, 909.

Clathe-sekkes, *s. pl.* cloth-sacks, 733.

Clauer, *s.* clover 3241.

Clauerande, *i. p.* clawing, 3324.

Clede, *v. pret.* clothed, 2713; *p.p.* cledde, 3334, clede, 3241, 3684, cleede, 217, clothed, clad.

Clefe, *v. pret.* clave, split, 2559.

Cleffe, *v.* cleave, stick, cling, 1312.

Clekes, 1865, Clekys, 1164, 2123, *v.* 3 *s.* clutches, seizes.

Clene, *adj.* clean, pure, 201, 217, bright, fair, good, 1197, 1603.

Clenkkede, *v. pret.* clanked, 2113.

Clenliche, Clenly, Clenlyche, *adv.* well, 216, 628, 654, 1586, entirely, quite, 581, 673, 850, 2125.

Clepid, *v. pret.* called, 3563. A.S. *clypian.*

Clere, *adj.* clear, bright, 819, 883, 909, illustrious, *1559, clear, free from obstacles, 1640.

Clereworte, *s.* 3241. Perhaps = A.S. *clæfer-wyrt*, small clover.

Clergialle, *adj.* skilful, 1758.

Clergyally, *adv.* cleverly, 200.

Clergye, *s.* learning, 809.

Clerkis, 3444, Clerkkes, 2391, *s. pl.* clerics, scholars.

Clewes, 1639, Clewez, 2019, Kleuys, 2396, Cloughes, 941, *s. pl.* cliffs.

Clewide, *v. pret.* cleaved, clung, 3268.

Close, *v.* enclose, 1165, 2003.

Close, *s.* prison, 1586, enclosed space, enclosure, 1639, 3240.

Closse, *adj.* secret, 1196.

Cloughes. *See* Clewes.

Clowez, *s. pl.* claws, 783.

Clyfe, 883, Clyffe, 2158, *s.* cliff; *pl.* cleyffez, 2019.

Clymbande, *i. p.* climbing, 3324, 3422.

Clynges, *v.* 3 *s.* presses, 1865.

Coblez, *s. pl.* cables, 742.

Digitized by Google

Coferez, 733, Cofirs, 2283, Cofres, 4206, *s. pl.* coffers, chests.

Cogge, *s.* ship, 476, 756, 3634; *pl.* coggez, 738. "Cairet on the colde ythes *cogges* & other." *The Destruction of Troy*, E. E. T. S., l. 3242.

Coldis, *v.* 2 *s.* makest cold, chillest, 3518.

Colurez, *s. pl.* colours, 819.

Comandez, 2392, Comaundez, 1637, Commaundez, 71, *v.* 3 *s. pres. ind.* commands; *pret.* comande, 1218, comaunde, 2356, comaundyd, 1602, commande, 156, 4148; *imp.* comaunde, 1585.

Come, *v. inf.* 1584; 3 *s. pres. ind.* comes, 1818, commes, 799, comez, 841, commez, 1439; *pl.* commez, 1545; *pret.* come, 80, 176, 2119; *i. p.* commande, 3468; *p.p.* comene, 582, 865, commyne, 1419, comyne, 987.

Come, *s.* coming, 1203, 1565, 1812.

Comelyche, 1318, Comliche, 3335, Comly, 1203, 3259, Comlyche, 71, 1053, *adj.* comely.

Comes, *impers. v.* becomes, befits, 1579.

Comforth, 830, Comforthe, 944, 1839, Comfurthe, 696, *v.* comfort, strengthen; 3 *s.* comfourthes, 3131.

Comforthe, *s.* comfort, 3960.

Comlyli, 3047, Comlyly, 4108, *adv.* in a comely manner.

Commande. *See* Come.

Comone, *v.* converse, 1580.

Comouns, 725, Comowns, 2353, *s. pl.* commons.

Compas, *s.* outer part (of an enclosure), 3240, (of a wheel), 3268, 3325, compass, reach, 4222.

Compaste, *p.p.* surrounded, 3633.

Concelle, 259, &c. *See* Counsaile.

Concelle, 243, 2395, Consayle, 1959, *s.* council.

Condethe, 3148, 3483, Coundyte, 475, Cundit, 444, *s.* safe conduct.

Condethes, *s. pl.* conduits, 201.

Condycyone, *s.* condition, 1511.

Confundez, *v.* 3 *s.* confounds, 1922; *p.p.* confundede, 1153.

Connygez, *s. pl.* conies, rabbits, 197.

Conquerid, 284, Conqueryd, 24, *v. pret.* won, gained; *p.p.* conqueryde, 402.

Consayle. *See* Concelle.

Constable, *s.* 1585, 1590.

Contek, Conteke, *s.* strife, 2721, 3669, 4177.

Contenance, Contenaunce, *s.* countenance, manner, behaviour, 123, 222, 542, 2120, 4033.

Contré, 623, 676, Contree, 848, 1640, Countré, 223, 2304, Cowntré, 3542, *s.* country; *pl.* contres, 3425, contreez, 27.

Conuaye, *v.* convey, 1589, 1604.

Conynge, *adj.* cunning, skilful, 3202; *superl.* conyngeste, 809; konyngeste, 3177.

Cope-borde, *s.* cupboard, 206.

Copes, *s. pl.* 4334.

Coppe, *s.* cup, 2750

Coppe-fulle, *s.* cupful, 3378.

Corage, *s.* heart, 536, 1725, 1922.

Corenalle. *See* Coronalle.

Corkes, *s.* carcase, 1091.

Corne, (?) 1786, 1837.

Cornettes, *s. pl.* 1758, 4108.

Cornuse, *s. pl.* horns, 1809. Lat. *cornu.*

Coronalle, 908, 1108, 3633, Corenalle, 3258, *s.*; a kind of ring or crown round a helmet; also, part of a lady's head-dress.

Corone, 291, Coroune, 28, Corowne, 3543, Crowne, 3426, 4202, Crownne, 3352, *s.* crown; *pl.* corowns, 3269, crounes, 51.

Digitized by Google

Coroune, 678, Crowne, 3185, *v.* crown; *p.p.* corounde, 142, corounede, 125, corownde, 1654, 2447, 3525, crowned, 3213, crownede, 3049, crownnede, 3407.

Corroumppede, *p.p.* corrupt, 3478.

Cors, 1779, 2380, Corse, 1389, *s.* corpse, body.

Corsaunt, *s.* holy body, body of a saint, 1164. See *Corsant* in *English Gilds*, p. 97, l. 3, and *Corseynt*, *English Gilds*, p. 188, l. 1.

Corvene. *See* Kerues.

Coseri, *s.* (?) 1582.

Coste, *s.* coast, 834, 877, 1787.

Cosyne, *s.* cousin, kinsman, 338, kinswoman, 864; *pl.* cosyns, 50, 101.

Cote, 1690, 3334, Cotte, 1194, *s.* coat.

Couaitte. *See* Coueite.

Couatys, *s.* covetousness, 1580.

Couaunde. *Read* Conannde, *adj.* cunning, skilful, 558.

Couched, *p.p.* set, 909.

Coueite, 1191, Couaitte, 51, Couette, 3325, *v.* covet; 2 *s. pres.* couettes, 1321; *p.p.* cowayte, 2397.

Couenawnte, *s.* covenant, 3542.

Couent, *s.* convent, 1220, 4021.

Couer, Couere, *v.* recover, 859, 1246, win, 3425, 3434; 3 *s.* coueres, 3644, coueris, 941, reaches; coueris vpe, gets up, 4274; *pret.* couerde, won, 274, 280, reached, 858; couerd vp, got up, rose, 124, coueride, got up, 2195; *p.p.* couerede, won, 28, 3085.

Couere, *v.* cover, 1886; 3 *s. pres.* couers, 1110; *pret.* couerde, 3378, 3995; *p.p.* couerde, 1770, 2115, couerede, 3047, 3098.

Couerte, *adj.* sheltered, 1780, secret, 1196.

Coundyte. *See* Condethe.

Coungé, *s.* leave, 479. Fr. *congé.*

Counsaile, 291, Concelle, 144, 259, 1023, *s.* counsel, advice.

Counsayles, *v.* 3 *s.* advises, 305.

Countere, *v.* encounter, 1274; 3 *s.* cownterez, 1848; *p.p.* cownterede, 1893.

Countré. *See* Contré.

Coupable, *adj.* blameable, guilty, 1317.

Coupes. *See* Cowpe.

Coupylde, *v. pret.* coupled, fastened, 2336.

Coursere, *s.* 1388, 2166.

Courtays. *See* Curtais.

Coutere, *s.* elbowpiece (in armour), 2567. *Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight*, l. 583.

Couthe, *v. pret.* knew, 21, Cowthe, couldst, 3340.

Cowardys, *s.* cowardice, 1693, 4186.

Cowayte. *See* Coueite.

Cowchide, *v. pret.* lay down (as hounds); and hence, became meek and submissive, 122.

Cowle, *s.* a large tub, 1051. "Cowle, vesselle. *Tina*, Cath." *Prompt. Parv.* In *English Gilds*, ed. Toulmin Smith, pp. 371, 382, *Cowle* is used for a tub, or some such vessel to measure ale with.

Cowntas, *s.* countess, 3045; *pl.* cowntasses, 4337.

Cowntere, *s.* accountant, 1672.

Cownterez. *See* Countere.

Cowpe, *s.* cup, 209; *pl.* cowpes, 210, 237; coupes, 3375.

Cowpez, *v.* 3 *s.* smites, strikes, 799, 2059; *pl.* cowpene, 2543.

Cowthe. *See* Couthe.

Crachynge, *s.* crashing, 3669.

Crafe, *v.* crave, 1681, 3522.

Crafte, *s.* skill, art, 752, 3667; *pl.* craftez, 284, craftys, 24.

Digitized by Google

Craftely, 3351, Craftyly, 196, *adv.* skilfully.

Crafty, *adj.* skilfully made, 211.

Crage, *s.* crag, 876.

Cramede, *p.p.* crammed, 477, 1051.

Crasseches, *v. pl. pres. ind.* crush, 3670; *pret.* craschede, 2114, crasschede, 1109.

Crauaunde, *adj.* craven, 133.

Crayers, 738, Krayers, 3666, *s. pl.* small vessels. "And, for the Revictallyng and Refresshyng of the said Shippes with Water and other Necessaries, the said Admirall shall, over and above the said Shippes, have Two *Crayers*, the one being of the Portage of Thre Score and fyfty [? fifteen] Tonnes, wherein shall be the Master Twelve Mariners and One Boye, and the other *Crayer* shall be of the Portage of fifty five Tonnes, wherein shall be the Maister with Ten Maryners and one Boye" . . . . . *Indentura inter Dominum Regem & Edwardum Howard Capitaneum Generalem Armatæ super Mare* (A.D. 1512). Rymer, *Fœdera*, tom. xiii. p. 328, col. 2.

Craysed, *p.p.* broken, 2150. Fr. *écrasé.*

Creatoure, *s.* creature, 534, 859; *pl.* creatours, 4102.

Credens, *s.* credentials, 88, 3522.

Creest, Creeste, *s.* crest, 1108, 1133, 1185.

Creette, *s.* a kind of wine, 200.

Crepers, *s. pl.* grapnels, 3667. (*Halliwell.*)

Cresmede. *See* Crysmede.

Cretoyne, *s.* 197. "A sweet sauce." *Halliwell.* Compare "Cretons: Lard coupé menu qu'on fait frire dans la poêle." *Roquefort.*

Crewelle, 132, 1909, Crouelle, 118, Crowelle, 2544, 3424, Cruelle, 43, 88, *adj.* cruel, fierce, angry, &c.

Crispid, *p.p.* 1003.

Cristene, Cristyne, *adj.* Christian, 3429; *sb.* 1187, 2786, 4112.

Cristenly, *adv.* like a Christian, 1208.

Cristyndome, *s.* Christendom, 2036.

Cristynmesdaye, *s.* Christmas-day, 70.

Cristynmese, 64, Cristymesse, 839, Crystynmesse, 544, *s.* Christmas.

Cronycle, *s.* chronicle, 3445; *pl.* cronycles, 3218.

Crose, 3428, Crosse, 3335, *s.* cross; one crosse, across, 3667.

Crosse-dayes, *s. pl.* 3212.

Crosselettes, *s. pl.* 3336.

Crouelle. *See* Crewelle.

Crounes. *See* Corone.

Crowelle. *See* Crewelle.

Crownnede. *See* Coroune, *v.*

Cruelle. *See* Crewelle.

Cruschene, *v. inf.* crush, 1134.

Cryande, *i. p.* crying, 1137.

Crysmede, 1051, Cresmede, 1065, Krysomede, 3185, *adj.* anointed with chrism.

Crystenede, Crystnede, *p.p.* christened, 3337.

Crysume, 142, Krysome, 2447, 3435, *s.* chrism.

Cukewalde, *s.* cuckold, 1312.

Cuñdit. *See* Condethe.

Cunvayede, *v. pret.* convoyed, 482.

Cure, *s.* care, 673.

Curius, *adj.* curious, 61.

Curlues, *s. pl.* curlews, 196.

Curtais, 2394, Curtaise, 209, 417, Curtays, 125, 1318, Curtayes, 481, Courtays, 21, *adj.* courteous.

Curtaisie, *s.* courtesy, 1274, 1681.

Cury, *s.* cookery, 1063.

Digitized by Google

Dagges, *v. pl.* pierce, 2102 ; *i. p.* daggande, 3749.

Dagswaynnes, *s. pl.* garments "of frize, or some material with long thrums like a carpet," 3609. See *Daggysweyne* and notes thereon in *Promptorium Parvulorum.*

Dalte, Daltene. *See* Dele.

Damesels, *s. pl.* young ladies, 3044.

Dampnede, *p.p.* damned, condemned, 3277, 3299.

Danke, Dannke, *adj.* dank, damp, 313, 3750.

Dare, *v.* lie hid, lie still, 4007 ; 3 *s.* dares, 3225. "Daryn', or drowpyn', or prively to be hydde. *Latito, lateo,* Cath." *Promptorium Parvulorum.*

Darielles, *s. pl.* a kind of dish, 199. See the recipe *For darials* in *Liber Cure Cocorum,* ed. Morris, p. 38.

Dauncesynge, *s.* dancing, 2030.

Daungere, Dawngere, *s.* power, 579, 3067, danger, 1935, 2935.

Daweyng, *s.* dawn, daybreak, 1601.

Dawez, *s. pl.* days ; done of dawez, killed, 2056.

Daynteez, *s. pl.* dainties, 199.

Daynteuous, *adj.* dainty, 4196.

Daynttehely, *adv.* daintily, 723.

Debles, 2934.

Dede, *s.* deed ; *pl.* dedes, 48, dedys, 13.

Dede, *adj.* dead, 975, 1722.

Dede, *s.* death, 1253, 1935.

Dede-thrawe, *s.* death-pang, 1150.

Deesse, *s.* dais, 218.

Defadide, *p.p.* faded, 3304.

Defawte, *s.* default, 2939.

Defawtes, *v. pl.* are wanting, fail, 2928.

Deffuse, *s.* prohibition, 256. Compare "Defaix, deffais, deffois, defois : Lieux défendus, où il n'est pas permis de pêcher ni de chasser ; empêchement, défense." *Roquefort.* But it is more than probable that we ought to read "deff[e]nse" = forbidding, prohibition.

Degré, *s.* degree, 84.

Dele, *v.* deal, 1278 ; *pret.* delte, 49, 3088 ; *pret. pl.* daltene, 2101, dalte, 3693, 3749 ; *p.p.* delte, 1216, 1277, 1564.

Delygens, *s.* diligence, 1934.

Delytte, *s.* delight, 1970.

Delyuerede, *p.p.* set free, 1688, 2081.

Demenys, *v.* 3 *s.* leads, 1988 ; *pl.* demenys, 4076. O. Fr. *demener.*

Demyd, Demyde, *p.p.* deemed, judged, 219, 1564, doomed, 4158.

Depayntide, *p.p.* depicted, 3355.

Depez, *s. pl.* deeps, 750.

Depnesse, *s.* depth, 746.

Dere, *v.* hurt, injure, 1783, 3248, 3611, 4200 ; 3 *s.* derys, 2099. A.S. *derian.*

Dere, *adj.* dear, 974, 1216.

Derefulle, *adj.* 4053. Qu. for *derffulle,* full of pain or care. Compare *derf,* hardship, affliction, pain, in *Stratmann.*

Dereliche, 3379, Derely, 1277, *adv.* dearly.

Dereworthily, *adv.* preciously, 3251.

Derfe, *adj.* hard, strong, severe, 312, 332, 811, 2052, 2102, 2652.

Derflyche, *adv.* severely, 3277.

Derke, *adj.* dark, 754.

Derlynge, *s.* darling, 4196.

Derygese, *s. pl.* dirges, 4017.

Despyne, 183. *See* Porke despyne.

Digitized by Google

Destanye, 3436, 3779, Desteny, 1563, *s.* destiny.

Destaynede, *p.p.* destined, 664, 4090, 4153, 4157, 4306.

Destruede, *p.p.* destroyed, 1181.

Deuer, *s.* duty, 1940.

Devisede, *v. pret.* divided, 3527.

Deuorande, *i. p.* devouring, 2054.

Deuotly, 296, Devottly, 347, *adv.* devoutly.

Devyse, *v.* divide, 2400; *pret.* deuysede, 3088.

Dewly, *adv.* duly, 4006.

Deworyde, *p.p.* devoured, 851.

Deynttely, *adv.* daintily, 2643.

Diamawndis, *s. pl.* diamonds, 3297.

Dictour, *s.* spokesman, 712.

Dighte. *See* Dyghte.

Dischayte, *s.* deceit, 3789.

Discouerours, *s. pl.* scouts, spies, 3117.

Diskoueres, *v. ind. pres. pl.* search, 3119; *imp. pl.* 2. discoueres, 1641.

Disseuere, *v.* separate, 1575; 3 *s.* disseuerez, 1978; *pret.* disseueride, 3529.

Disspite, *s.* spite, 3163.

Disspyszede, *p.p.* despised, 269.

Dogge-sone, *s.* dog-son, 1072, 1723.

Dole, 3067, 3299, 3885, Dule, 256, 704, 2777, *s.* sorrow.

Dolefulle, *adj.* sorrowful, 2054.

Dolphyne, *s.* 2054.

Doluene, *p.p.* buried, 975.

Domesdaye, *s.* day of judgment, 1278, 3442.

Doo, *v.* do, 1934, 2322; 2 *s. pres. ind.* dosse, 1954; *pl. pres. ind.* dosse, 4333; *p.p.* donne, 1940.

Doubbyd, 48, Doubbyde, 3613, *v. pret.* dubbed.

Douce, *adj.* sweet, pleasant, 1251.

Doughttily, *adv.* valiantly, 1939.

Doughty, 20, Doughtty, 1738, 2777, Dowghtty, 3798, *adj.* valiant; *superl.* doughtyeste, 219.

Doughtynes, 1563, Doughtynesse, 3884, *s.* valour.

Dout, *v.* doubt, 3061.

Dowbille, *adj.* double, 2834.

Dowblede, *p.p.* doubled, 3609.

Dowblettez, *s. pl.* doublets, 2625.

Dowcherys. *See* Ducherye.

Dowere, *s.* dowry, 3089.

Downkynge, *s.* moisture, 3248.

Dowte, Dowtte, *s.* doubt, 2043, fear, 3225.

Dowtte, *v.* fear, 312.

Dowttouse, *adj.* dreadful, terrible, 3967.

Drafe. *See* Dryffes.

Dragges, *s. pl.* drags, 3615.

Dragouns, *s. pl.* dragons, 1252.

Drawe-brigge, *s.* drawbridge, 2474.

Drawes, *v.* 3 *s.* draws, proceeds, 1251; *pl.* drawene, 3615; *p.p.* drawene, 3924.

Dreche, *v.* tarry, delay, abide, 1504; 3 *s.* dreches, 2940, 4052; *pl.* dreches, 1254, 2154; *pret.* drecchede, 754.

Drechede, *p.p.* troubled, harassed, 811.

"Ac sathanas þe frecche
Þe saule wule *drecche*,
Hwan he agult habbeþ."
Jesus Coll. MS. 29, *leaf* 249.

Drede, *v.* dread, fear, 829, 2235; *pret.* dredde, 20; *p.p.* dredde, 3298.

Drede, *s.* dread, fear, 46, 754.

Dredlesse, Dredlez, *adv.* without doubt, certainly, 1504, 2043, 4053.

Drefene. *See* Dryffes.

Dreghe, *s.* duration, continuance, 2915.

Digitized by Google

Dreghe, one, *adv.* aside, back, 786, 787, 3968, 4219.

Dreghe, *v.* suffer, endure, 3276, 3437.

Dreghely, *adv.* enduringly, continually, 2028.

Dremyd, *impers. v. pret.* 760. Hym dremyd = he dreamed.

Drenschene, *v. inf.* drown, 761.

Drerely, Drerily, *adv.* drearily, 2154, 2969.

Dresce, 550, Dresse, 1072, 2042, 2401, *v.* direct, arrange, adjust, dispose, prepare, array; 3 *s.* dresses, 2026, dresesse, 2833; *pl.* drisses, 2473; *pret.* dressede, 786, 1055, dresside, 579, drissede, 2052, dryssede, 46; *p.p.* dresside, 1252, drissid, 218; dresses vp = rears.

Dreuene, Drife. *See* Dryffes.

Drightene, 4008, Dryghttene, 1278, Dryghttyne, 3799, *s.* the Lord; *gen.* Dryghtyns, 664, Dryghtynez, 1564. A.S. *Drihten.*

Drissede. *See* Dresce.

Dromondaries, *s. pl.* dromedaries, 2286.

Dromowndes, *s. pl.* swift ships, 3615. "Dromon, dromont: Gondole, vaisseau de guerre." *Roquefort.* "Dromones, Naves cursoriæ, expediti cursus navigia." *Ducange.*

Droupe, *v.* lie hid, lie still, 4007. *See* Dare.

Drowghte, *s.* dryness, 3249.

Drowppande, *i. p.* falling, 4053.

Drye, *v.* suffer, 704, 1546, 1632.

Dryffes, *v. pl.* drive, rush, 2757; *pret.* drafe, 787, drife, 3276; *pret. pl.* dreuene, 2914; *i. p.* dryfande, 761, 816; *p.p.* drefene, 3224.

Dryghttene. *See* Drightene.

Drynchene, *v. inf.* to drown, 816.

Drynkles, *adj.* drinkless, 4172.

Drynkyne, *v. pl.* drink, 2028.

Dryssede. *See* Dresce.

Dubbyde, *p.p.* adorned, 3609.

Ducherye, *s.* duchy, 2400, 2937; *pl.* ducherés, 1728, ducheryes, 3614, dowcherys, 49.

Duchez, *s.* duchess, 852, 974, 3044.

Duelle, *v.* dwell, tarry, abide, 3067; *pret.* duellede, 3321, duellyde, 219; *i. p.* duelland, 3443; *p.p.* duellyde, 1200.

Dukkes, Dukkez, *s. pl.* dukes, 723, 2029.

Dule. *See* Dole.

Dule-cotes, *s. pl.* mourning garments, 4336.

Dusperes, 66, 1254, Duspers, 145, Dusseperez, 2029, Duzseperez, 723, Duszeperis, 3751, Dusszeperis, 4336, *s. pl.* peers; lit. twelve peers (Fr. douze pairs). Dussepere, *sg.* one of such peers, 2329, 2642.

Duttez. *Read* Dinttez, *s. pl.* strokes, 787.

Dyaperde, *adj.* 3251.

Dyghte, *v.* order, arrange, dispose, 1253; 1 *s.* dyghttes, 2625; *pret.* dyghte, 2970; *p.p.* dyghte, sent, 3066, dressed, 3251, dighte, adorned, 3353.

Dyked, *p.p.* buried, 975.

Dyme, *adj.* dim, 1723.

Dyne, *s.* din, noise, 2031

Dynned, *v. pret.* sounded, resounded, 2031.

Dynnynge, *s.* noise, 2030.

Dynt, 1073, Dynte, 312, 1118, *s.* stroke, blow; *pl.* dynttez, 1127, dynttys, 332.

Dysfegoures, *v.* 3 *s.* disfigures, 2769.

Dyspens, *s.* spending, 538.

Dyssauyde, *p.p.* deceived, 683.

Dyuerse, *adj.* divers, various, 49, 1935.

Digitized by Google

Dyuysyde, *v. pret.* divided, distributed, 49, 1389.

Efte, *adv.* again, 470, 529, 2349. A.S. *eft.*

Egerly, 1125, 1148, 1411, 1591, Egyrly, 1499, *adv.* sharply, fiercely.

Egge, 2567, 2958, Eghge, 4194, *s.* edge. A.S. *ecg.*

Eghelynge, *adv.* edgewise, 3675.

Eghene, 3790, Eghne, 116, 358, Eughne, 1920, Eyghene, 3985, Eyghne, 1083, 4044, Eyne, 3282, *s. pl.* eyes. A.S. *eáge, pl. eágan.*

Eghge. *See* Egge.

Egle, *s.* eagle, 2067, 2245.

Egree, *adj.* sharp, eager, 507.

Eke, *conj.* also, 44, 572.

Ekkene, *v. inf.* increase, 2009; 3 *s. pres. ind.* ekys, 3965.

Elagere, 2977, is certainly miswritten. The alliteration requires *sl* . . . .; perhaps we ought to read *sleyghte*, skill, dexterity.

Eldare, *adj. comp.* older, 4151.

Elde, *s.* age, 301, old age, 4220. A.S. *yldo.*

Elders, Eldyrs, *s. pl.* ancients, 13, ancestors, 99, 272, 293.

Elfaydes, *s. pl.* animals of some kind, 2288.

Elles, *adv.* else, 1191, 1209, 2020.

Emange, *prep.* among, 375. 1917, 2060. *See* Amange.

Eme, *s.* uncle, 1347. A.S. *eám.*

Enamelde, 2565, 3355, Enameledc, 2027, *p.p.* enamelled.

Enangylles, *v.* 3 *s.* en-angles, i. e. surrounds by troops formed in an angular figure (?), 3781. Comp. en-circles.

Enarmede, *p.p.* 910.

Enbraces, *v. pl.* put on the arm, 4111; enbrassez, 1753; *p.p.* enbrassede, 2459, 2518.

Enbuschement, *s.* ambush, 1407, 3115.

Enbusches, *v.* 3 *s. pres. ind.* sets in ambush, 1981; *p.p.* enbuschede, 1712, enbuschide, 1403, ambushed.

Enclesside. *Read* Enclossede, enclosed, 2396.

Enclined, 479, Enclinede, 1706, *v. pret.* bowed.

Enclines, *s. pl.* bows, 83.

Enclosez, *v.* 3 *s.* 1134; *p.p.* enclosede, 4206, enclosyde, 3238.

Encontre, 1320, 1787, Encountire, 3491, Encowntere, 4180, *v.* encounter; *pl.* enconters, 2158; *pret.* encontrede, 1185.

Encorownmentes, *s. pl.* coronations, 4197.

Encroche, *v.* seize, obtain, 3426; 3 *s.* encrochez, 1243; *pret.* encrochede, 2036; *p.p.* encrochede, 3525.

Encroyssede, *v. pret.* crossed, 4112.

Endente, 3297, Endenttyd, 2052, *p.p.* endented (Her.).

Endittede, *v. pret.* indited, composed, 3420.

Endordide, *p.p.* gilt, 199.

Enewe, 2657, Enowe, 504, *adv.* enough.

Enfeblesches, *v. pl. pres.* become weak, 2484.

Enflureschit, *p.p.* flowered, 198.

Enforce, *v.* exert; enforce 3ow, endeavour, 225; enforsse, strengthen, reinforce, 364.

Engenderde, *p.p.* begotten, 843.

Engendure, *s.* begetting, 3743.

Engeynes. *See* Engynes.

Englaymez, 1131, Englaymous, 3684, *v. pl.* render slimy. "Gleymyn', or yngleymyn'. *Visco, invisco.*" *Promptorium Parvulorum.*

Engowschede, *p.p.* swollen, in-

Digitized by Google

flated, 2053. "Engousser: Enfler, grossir." *Roquefort.*

Engrelede, *p.p.* engrailed (Her.), 4182.

Engynes, 2481, 3036, Engeynes, 2423, *s. pl.* engines.

Engyste, *v.* assign lodgings, 445. "Gister, giter: Assigner un gîte." *Roquefort.*

Enhorilde, *p.p.* surrounded, 3244. See *Enourled* in Alliterative Poems (Reprint), B. 19 and Glossary.

Enis. *See* Eynes.

Enjoynes, 2897, Enjoynys, 4109, *v. pl.* join in battle; *pret.* enjoynede, 2087.

Enkerly, *adv.* ardently, eagerly, 507, 2066, 2222, 2839.

Enmy, Enmye, *s.* enemy, foe, 519, 642, 1952; *pl.* enmyse, 1205, 1240.

Ennelled, *p.p.* enameled, 1294.

Ennoyntede, 50, Ennoynttyde, 101, Enoyntede, 142, Enoynttede, 544, 2447, *p.p.* anointed.

Enowe, *adv.* enough, 504.

Enpeyrede, *p.p.* impaired, damaged, 474.

Enpoysone, *s.* poison, 213.

Ensege, 441, Ensegge, 1337, *v.* besiege; 3 *s.* enseggez, 623; *p.p.* ensegede, 1696.

Enserchede, 3942. *Read* Enserclede, encircled.

Enserches, *v.* 3 *s.* searches, examines, 4311; *pl.* enserches, 2466.

Ensure, *v.* assure, 1689, 2324, 3734.

Entamede, *v. pret.* cut, wounded, 2203; *p.p.* 1160, 2708. "*Entamer*, entamer, trancher, blesser, léser, enlever l'intégrité." *Burguy.*

Entayllide, *p.p.* entailed, 3542.

Entire, *v.* enter, 1967; *ind. pres.* 3 *s.* enteres, 2007, 2387; *pl.* entres, 4309; *pret.* enteride, 2805; *p.p.* entirde, 3448, entrede, 4069, entyrde, 1691.

Enverounes, *v. pl.* environ, surround, 4124; *pret.* enuerounde, went round or about, 2051, 2094; *p.p.* enuerownde, surrounded, 3242.

Enueryde, *p.p.* (?) 1694.

Enuyous, *adj.* 2047.

Enys. *See* Eynes.

Er, *v. pl.* are, 166.

Erberis, *s. pl.* gardens, 3245.

Ercheuesqes, *s. pl.* archbishops, 67.

Ere, *v. pl.* are, 1538, 1582, 2547.

Ere, *adv.* before, 1840.

Erle, *s.* earl, 1659; *pl.* erlez, 1904, erlles, 3528, 3933.

Erledoms, *s. pl.* earldoms, 42.

Erles, *s. pl.* earnest, deposit, 2687.

Erne, *s. pl.* ears, 1086.

Ernestly, *adv.* 2838, 2903.

Errawnte, *adj.* arrant, 2895.

Erthe, *s.* earth, 109, 161.

Erthely, *adj.* earthly, 1664, 4169.

Es, *v.* 3 *s.* is, 16, 88, 89; *pl.* es (= are), 1666, 3448.

Eschape, *v.* escape, 1020, 2957; *pret.* eschappede, 1881, eschappide, 2367; *p.p.* eschapede, 1117, 3576.

Escheffe, *v.* 2301.

Escheue, *v.* attain, 3347; *pret.* escheuede, 3000, eschewede, fell out well, 2956, eschewede, met with good fortune, 1620; *p.p.* escheuyde, 3021, eschewede, 1539, 3027.

Eschewes, *v.* 3 *s.* draws back, retreats, 1116; *pret.* eschewede, 1881; *imp.* 2 *pl.* eschewes, 1750. "*Eschiver, eskiver, escheveir*, éviter, fuir, esquiver." *Burguy.*

Ese, *s.* ease, 3208.

Este, *adj.* east, 1740, 3210.

Esterne, 1006, Estyre, 554, *s.* Easter.

Digitized by Google

Etene, *p.p.* eaten, 2716.

Ethenys, 4163, Ethyns, 4122, *s. pl.* giants. See *Etayn* in *Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight*, ll. 140, 723. A.S. *eóten.*

Ettylle, *v.* purpose, 554; 3 *s.* ettelles, 520, etles, 3077.

Euene, 2073, Euenne, 4055, Euyne, 78, Evyne, 3596, Evynne, 3597, Ewene, 762, Ewyne, 618, 1122, Ewynne, 2961, *adv.* even, straight, right, just.

Euensange, 894, Euesange, 900, *s.* evensong, vespers.

Eueriche a, 2037, Euer-ilk a, 212, *adj.* every.

Euylle, *adv.* ill, 1117.

Ewene. *See* Euene.

Ewyne, *s.* evening, eve, 1006, 1788.

Ewyne, Ewynne. *See* Euene.

Ewyre, *adv.* ever, 8.

Eye-liddis, *s. pl.* eyelids, 3952.

Eyghene, Eyghne, Eyne. *See* Eghene.

Eynes, 1283, 2308, Eynez, 1760, Eynis, 2516, Eynys, 1879, Eynyes, 2275, Enis, 2886, 3376, Enys, 3466, *s. pl.* narrow passages, passes. A.S. *enge*, narrow, Germ. *enge*, a narrow passage.

Faa-mene, *s. pl.* foemen, 303.

Fadire, 3432, Fadyr, 112, Fadyre, 1169, *s.* father.

Fadome, *s.* fathom, 1103.

Faees, *s. pl.* foes, 403.

Faghte. *See* Feghte.

Faire, *adv.* well, 1110, 3247.

Fairely, *adv.* nicely, 954.

Faith, *s.* 1155.

Faithely, Faythely, *adv.* assuredly, 3864, 4031.

Fakene, *v. pl.* coil, 742. "Fake, one of the circles, or windings, of a cable, or hawser, as it lies disposed in the coil. . . . . The fakes are greater or smaller in proportion to the extent of space which a cable is allowed to occupy where it lies." Falconer's *Marine Dictionary*, ed. Burney. Sc. *faik*, a fold (*Jamieson*).

Falle, *v.* betide, 1006; 3 *s.* falles, belongs, 2480.

Falow, *adj.* pale, 1402.

Falowede, *p.p.* turned pale, 3954.

Fals, *adj.* false, 1307.

Falsede, 3918, Falssede, 2860, *s.* falsehood, error.

Falterede, *v. pret.* quivered, 1092.

Fande. *See* Fynde.

Fande, 557, 867, 984, Fannde, 656, *v.* endeavour. *See* Fonde.

Fannge, *v.* seize, take, receive, 425; *ind. pres.* 3 *s.* fangez, 1005, 1249. *See* Fongene.

Fare, *v.* go, 3581; *ind. pres.* 3 *s.* fares, proceeds, behaves, 788.

Fare, *s.* journey, course, 393.

Fare-waye, *s.* course, 1357.

Farlande, *s.* foreland, 880, 984, 1188.

Farly. *See* Ferly.

Faucetez, *s. pl.* taps, 205.

Faughte, Faughtte, Fawghte. *See* Feghte.

Fawcone, 788, Fawkone, 4003, *s.* falcon; *pl.* fawcouns, 925.

Fawe, *adj.* variegated, particoloured, 747. A.S. *fah.*

Fawnelle, 2765. *Read* Fawuelle, *s.* a horse of a yellowish chesnut colour. "Fauvel, fauvau, fauvelle: De couleur rousse, fauve, tirant sur le jaune, *flavus, fulvus.*" *Roquefort.*

Fawntkyne, 2440, 2736, *s.* little child, baby; *pl.* fawntekyns, 845.

Fawte, *s.* lack, 160, fault, 2737.

Fax, *s.* hair, 1078. A.S. *feax.*

Digitized by Google

Fay, *adj.* fated to die, dead, 394, 438, 971, 3828; fey, 121, 517, feye, 2847.

Fay, Faye, *s.* faith, 2842, 2860, 3073.

Fayfully, *adv.* faithfully, 1715.

Fayled, 3308, looks like a mistake through confounding this line with the next; qu. faldede, folded.

Fayne, *adj.* glad, 1160.

Faythefully, *adv.* 1345, 1735, 1913.

Faythely. *See* Faithely.

Feble, *adj.* weak, bad, 226, 2929.

Fecchede, *v. pret.* fetched, 169; *p.p.* fechede, 111, fechyde, 437.

Feedde, *p.p.* fed, 2492.

Feelde. *See* Felde.

Feemene, *s. pl.* herdmen, keepers of cattle, 2488. A.S. *feoh*, cattle.

Feghte, 367, 1715, Fyghte, 1345, 1735, *v.* fight; 3 *s.* feghttys, 789, fyghttez, 2091; *pl.* feghttes, 1495, feghttez, 2163, feghttene, 2555; *pret.* faghte, 1174, faughte, 2164, faughtte, 1898, fawghte, 2799; *i. p.* feghtande, 4257, fyghtande, 4066, 4121; *p.p.* foghtene, 3019, foughtene, 1535, foughttene, 2365.

Feghte, *s.* fight, 4254.

Fegure, *s.* figure, shape, 781, 3301.

Fekille, *adj.* false, 2860.

Felde, 972, 985, Feelde, 1432, *s.* field.

Fele, *adj.* many, 845, 1247, 1496.

Fele, *v.* hide, conceal, 3237. See *felen* in *Stratmann*. O.N. *fela*, M. Goth. *filhan*.

Fele, *v.* feel; *pret.* felede, 1874.

Feletez, 1158, Felettes, 2174, 4237, *s. pl.* fillets.

Felewes, *v. pl.* follow, 2758.

Feleyghes, *s. pl.* felly, circumference of a wheel, 3308. A.S. *felge*.

Felle, *s.* skin, 1081. A.S. *fell*.

Felle, *s.* mountain, 2489, 2509.

Felle, *v.* fell, 1139; 3 *s.* fellez, 1247; *p.p.* fellide, 1851, fellde, 2376.

Felle, *adj.* fierce, cruel, severe, 1401, 2769.

Felly, *adv.* fiercely, 2141.

Felowez, *s. pl.* fellows, companions, 1381.

Felschene, *v. inf.* (?) renovate, 1975. Halliwell has "*Felsh.* To renovate a hat."

Fende, *s.* fiend, devil, 871, 954; *pl.* fendez, 843.

Fente, *s.* (?) 4249.

Fenyste, *p.p.* finished, 4254.

Ferant, 2259, Feraunte, 1811, 2140, Ferawnt, 2451, *adj.* seemly.

Fercostez, *s. pl.* ships of some kind, 743. "Farkost, *Navis.*" *Verelius*, under the word *Kost.* See *Farcost* and *Fercost* in *Jamieson*.

Ferde, *p.p.* afraid, 403, 526, 3227; *s.* fear, 1875, 3069.

Ferdnesse, *s.* fear, 121, 2258.

Fere, *s.* fear, 3918.

Fere, *s.* companion; *pl.* feres, 1608, ferez, 1789, feris, 1578, ferys, 2126. A.S. *gefera*.

Fere, 1232. *See* Ferre.

Fere, *adj.* sound, unhurt, 2796, 3017.

Ferke, *v.* move, go, 984, 1037; ferkke, 4152; 3 *s.* ferkez, 933, 949; *inf.* ferkene, 3907; *i. p.* ferkand, 1452, ferkande, 2452.

Ferly, 2842, Ferlyche, 925, *adj.* strange.

Ferly, 2440, 2947, Farly, 2485, *s.* strange thing, wonder.

Fermes, 425, Fermez, 1005, *s. pl.* rents, tribute.

Fermysone, *s.* (?) some kind of sauce, 180.

Ferre, *adj.* far, distant, 3547; fere,

Digitized by Google

1232; be ferre = by far, 1176; *comp.* ferrere, further, 1496, 3068, 4237; *superl.* ferreste, furthest, 2741.

Ferrers, *s.* a kind of wine, 2714.

Ferriours, 2752. *Read* Forriours, foragers.

Ferrome, *adj.* far, foreign, 3578; o ferrome = afar, 856, 934, 2100.

Fers, 2161, Ferse, 1451, 1537, *adj.* fierce.

Fersely, 1115, 3402, Fersly, 1118, *adv.* fiercely.

Fersenesse, *s.* fierceness, 3826.

Ferthe, *adj.* fourth, 3412.

Ferthynges, *s. pl.* round spots, 3472.

Feryne, *adj.* far, foreign, 3711.

Ferynne, *s.* fern, 1875.

Ferys. *See* Fere.

Fesantez, 925, Fesauntez, 198, *s. pl.* pheasants.

Fesede, *p.p.* worried, 2842.

Feste, *adj.* fast, 2142.

Festenesse, *v.* 3 *s.* fastens, 1118; *pl.* festenez, 934.

Fetche, *v.* 1188.

Feteled, *p.p.* fettled, set in order, 2149.

Fetheris, *s. pl.* feathers, 2098.

Fette, *v.* fetch, 557.

Fettede, *p.p.* fitted, ordered, arrayed, 4067. *See* Fitt.

Feuerȝere, *s.* February, 436.

Fewle, *s.* fowl, bird, 2071; *pl.* feulez, 926.

Fewtee, *s.* fealty, 112.

Fewtere, 1791, Fewtire, 1769, Fewtyre, 1366, *s.* rest for a lance.

Fewters, *v.* 3 *s.* lays in rest, 3775; *p.p.* fewteride, 1711, fewtrede, 1756, with spears in rest.

Fey. *See* Fay.

Feyede, *v. pret.* cleansed, wiped, 1114.

Feyne, (?) foin, 1734.

Feyne = fine, *v.* cease, 1147.

Feyne, *v.* feign, 1913.

Feynte, *adj.* faint, 1874.

Feyntly, *adv.* faintly, 1734.

ff. Words beginning with *ff* are entered under single *F.*

Fichene, *v. pl.* fix, pierce, 2098; *pret.* fichede, 4239.

Fif, *adj.* five, 1756.

Fifte, *adj.* fifth, 3306.

Fillez, 1402, Fillis, 1038, *v.* 3 *s.* fills; *p.p.* fillede, satisfied, 1032.

Filsnez, *v.* 3 *s.* lurks, 881. Compare "Fylskni, *Latibulum.*" *Verelius.*

Filterede, 1078, 2149, Filtyrde, 780, *p.p.* matted, mixed.

Firthe, *s.* wood, 1708, 2144.

Fische-halle, *adj.* sound as a fish, 2709.

Fitt, *v.* fit, set in order, array, 2139; 3 *s.* fittes, 1989, fittez, 1755, 2072; *p.p.* fittyde, 2455.

Flammande, *i. p.* flaming, resplendent, 198.

Flappes, *v.* strikes, 2781.

Flawez, 773, Flawes, 2556, *s. pl.* blasts, gusts.

Flawmande, *i. p.* flaming, 945, 1975, flashing, 1365, 1494.

Flawmez, *v.* 3 *s.* flames, 1037; *pl.* flawmes, 2556.

Flawnke, *s.* flank, 1158, 2174; *pl.* flawnkkes, 2100.

Flay, *v.* frighten, terrify, 2779; *p.p.* flayede, 2441.

Flayre, *s.* flame, 772.

Flede. *See* Flee.

Flee, *v.* 2021; *pret.* fleede, 494, 1432, 2729, fiede, 3236; *p.p.* fiede, 2488.

Digitized by Google

Fleete, *v.* float, 803 ; *pret.* fletyde, 3602.

Flemede, 2738, Flemyde, 1155, *p.p.* banished.

Flemesche, *adj.* Flemish, 743.

Flenges, *v.* 3 *s.* flings, 2762.

Fleryande, *i. p.* gibing, scoffing, 1088, 2778. Sc. *fleer.*

Flesche, *s.* 1160, 2099.

Fleschez, *v. pl.* flit about, 926.

Flete, *s.* fleet, 1189.

Fleterede, *p.p.* (?) fitted for flight, 2097.

Flethe, *s.* (?) 2482.

Flieghes, *v.* 3 *s.* flies, 4002.

Flitt, *v.* shoot (with arrows), 2097.

Flode, *s.* flood, 773, 803, 1189.

Floke, *s.* flock, company, 2849.

Floke-mowthede, *adj.* fluke-mouthed, having a mouth like a flat fish, 2779.

Flones, 3619, Flonez, 2097, *s. pl.* arrows. A.S. *flá, flán.*

Florenez, *s. pl.* florins, 885.

Flores, *s. pl.* fields, plains, 2694, 3249.

Floresche, *v.* flower, flourish, 2555 ; *pret.* floreschede, 3246 ; *p.p.* floreschede, 771, 1708, 3472, floreschte, 924, 1366.

Flour, *s.* flower, 1709, 1990 ; *pl.* flourez, 970.

Flourdelice, *s.* lily-flower, 3333.

Flowe, *v. pret.* flew, 772, 2100.

Floynes, *s. pl.* a kind of small ships, 743. A. Jal in his *Glossaire Nautique* gives "*Flouin.* Nom d'un petit navire ponté qui pouvait naviguer à la voile et à l'aviron."

Flude, *s.* flood, 494.

Fluke, *s.* flounder, or other flat fish, 1088.

Fluriste, *p.p.* flowered, 180.

Flyeande, *i. p.* flying, 2451.

Flyngande, *i. p.* flinging, dashing along, 2757.

Flyschande, *i. p.* slashing, 2141.

Flysches, *v.* slashes, cuts, 2768.

Flyttynge, *s.* shooting (with arrows), 2099.

Foddenid, *p.p.* produced, 3246.

Foghtene. *See* Feghte.

Folde, 315, 2151, Foulde, 1071, Fowlde, 3302, *s.* earth.

Fole, *s.* foal, 449, 2783.

Folily, *adv.* foolishly, 2841.

Folowes, *v.* 3 *s.* follows, 1118 ; *pl.* folous, 1360.

Fomand, 3307, Fomande, 2233, Fomannde, 780, *i. p.* foaming.

Fome, *s.* foam, 1079.

Fonde. *See* Fynde.

Fonde, 3370, (miswritten) Fonode, 205, *v.* try.

Fondene. *See* Fynde.

Fongene, *v. pres. pl.* take, 2799 ; fonngez, 2753 ; *pret.* fongede, seized, 3308.

Fonode. *See* Fonde.

Foo, *s.* foe, 1536, 3395.

Foode, *s.* offspring, child, person, 3776.

Foomene, *s. pl.* foemen, 3020.

Foonde, *v.* go, 366, 2489.

Forbere, *v.* forbear, 1913.

Forbrittenede, *p.p.* cut up, slaughtered, 2273.

Forchipe, *s.* foreship, 3678.

Forcyere, *adj. comp.* stronger, 1176.

Fordremyde, *p.p.* wearied by dreaming, 3392.

Fore, *prep.* for, 256 ; *conj.* for, 1179.

Fore-breste, *s.* front, 1494, 1990.

Fore-brustene, *p.p.* burst, 2272.

Digitized by Google

Foregyffe. *See* Forgyffe.

Forejustyde. *See* Forjuste.

Forelytenede, *p.p.* lessened, 254.

Fore-maglede, *p.p.* mangled, 1534. Sc. *magil*, *maigil*, to mangle (*Jamieson*).

Forestayne, *s.* prow of a ship, 742.

Foretoppe, *s.* forehead, 1078.

Fore-trauaillede, *p.p.* fatigued, 806.

Forfette, *v.* forfeit, 557; *p.p.* forfetede, 1155.

Forfoughttene, *p.p.* wearied with fighting, 3792, 4179.

Forgyffe, 3488, Foregyffe, 4324, *v.* forgive; *p.p.* forgeffene, 2184.

Forheuede, *s.* forehead, 1080.

Forjuste, 2895, Forjustede, 2088, 2134, 2908, Forejustyde, 1398, *p.p.* overcome in a joust, defeated.

Formaylle, *s.* female hawk, 4003.

Forraye, *v.* forage, 2489; 3 *s.* forrayse, 1247; *pret.* forrayede, 3017.

Forreours, *s. pl.* foragers, 2450, 2901.

Forsake, *v.* refuse, 1686, 2734, deny, 1945, 4142.

Forsesy, *adj.* strong, powerful, 3300, 3307.

Forsett, 2012, 2018, Forsette, 1714, 1896, 1979, Foresett, 2161, *p.p.*

Forsterne, *s.* forepart of the stern, 3664.

Fortethe, *s.* front teeth, 1089.

Forthermaste, *adv.* first, 1365.

Forthes, 2827, Forthis, 1850, *v.* 3 *s.* proceeds.

For-thi, 152, 225, For-thy, 1172, Fore-thy, 3009, Fore-thi, 3346, *adv.* therefore.

Forthire, 261, Forthyre, 340, *adv.* further.

Forthire, *v.* afford, furnish, 300, 1509.

Forthirmaste, *adj.* first, 3330.

For-thynkkes, 4252, For-thynkkys, 971, *impers. v.* repents; me f. = I regret, repent.

Fortrodyne, *p.p.* trampled, 2150.

Fote, 801, 1079, Fott, 4058, Fotte, 933, 1855, *s.* foot.

Fote-mene, *s. pl.* infantry, 1989.

Foughtene, Foughttene. *See* Feghte.

Foulde. *See* Folde.

Found, 452, Founde, 495, 1189, *v.* go, proceed; *pl.* fowndes, 3112, fowndys, 2756; *pret.* foundide, 1442.

Foundene, Foundyne. *See* Fynde.

Fourmede, *v. pret.* formed, 3808; *p.p.* 781, 861, 1061.

Fourte, *adj.* fourth, 3300.

Fourtedele, *s.* fourth part, quarter, 946.

Fowlde. *See* Folde.

Fowle, *s.* bird, 4002.

Fowly, *adv.* foully, 1089.

Fowndene. *See* Fynde.

Fowndes. *See* Found.

Foyle, *s.* leaf, 2704.

Foynes, *v. pl.* fence, thrust, 1494, 2141, 2163; *pret.* foynede, 1898.

Fra, *prep.* from, 47, 591.

Fraisez, 1248. *Read* Frayes, terrifies.

Fraiste, Frayste, *v.* try, test, 435, 881, 3395; 3 *s.* fraystez, 1227; *p.p.* fraistede, 2774.

Fraknede, *adj.* freckled, 1081.

Franche, *adj.* French, 1250.

Fransye, *s.* frenzy, 3826.

Frape, 2804, Frappe, 2163, 3548, *s.* company, troop.

Frappez, *v.* 3 *s.* smites, 1115.

Digitized by Google

Frauncnez, *s.* liberty, 1248.

Frawghte, *p.p.* laden, freighted, 3547.

Frawnke, *s.* enclosure, 3247.

Frayede, *p.p.* frightened, 2260.

Fraynes, 507, Fraynez, 337, 954, 1441, *v.* 3 *s.* asks, inquires.

Frayste. *See* Fraiste.

Fre, Free, *adj.* noble, 1711, 3247.

Frechely, *adv.* (?) boldly, (?) freshly, 3691.

Freely, 3330, Frely, 970, Freliche, 2488, 3371, 3808, *adj.* noble.

Freely, *adv.* 2072, 2140.

Freke, *s.* man, fellow, 557, 873, 973; *pl.* frekes, 742, frekkes, 1360, frykis, 2898.

Freke, 2759, 2821, Frekk, 2139, Frekke, 2454, *adj.* bold; *superl.* frekkeste, 1536, 2164.

Frekly, 1360, 1451, Frekkly, 3927, *adv.* boldly.

Freliche, Frely. *See* Freely, *adj.*

Fremdly, 2738, Fremedly, 1250, Fremydly, 3405, *adv.* strangely.

Fremmede, *adj.* strange, foreign, 3343.

Frenchepe, *s.* friendship, 656.

Frendez, *s. pl.* friends, 1442.

Frendely, *adj.* friendly, 3343.

Frendles, *adj.* friendless, 3305.

Freschely, 1367, 1441, Freschelichе, 4249, Frescly, 2097, Fresclyche, 2900, *adv.* freshly, briskly, vigorously.

Freschene, *v.* refresh, 1452.

Fresclyche, *adj.* fresh, 2502.

Fresone, *s.* (?) Friesland horse, 1365.

Fretene, *p.p.* (?) adorned, 2142. A.S. *frætwian*, to adorn.

Frette, *p.p.* (?) rubbed, 2708. Fr. *frotter*, to rub.

Fretted, *p.p.* 1364.

Fretyne, *p.p.* devoured, 844.

Frithez, *s. pl.* woods, forests, 924.

Frithed, *p.p.* wooded round, hemmed in with forest, hedged, 3247. Occurs in *Piers the Plowman*, ed. Skeat, Text B, v. 590.

Fro, *prep.* from, 3, 376, 1138.

Fromonde, *s.* (?) 1112.

Froske, *s.* frog, 1081. A.S. *frosc*.

Frount, 1080, Frounte, 1711, 1756, Frownte, 2455, Frunt, 1112, Fronte, 1495, *s.* brow, forehead, front.

Frountere, 2861, Frowntere, 2898, *s.* front of an army.

Frowarde, *adj.* perverse, 3345.

Froyte, *s.* fruit, 2492, 2707; *pl.* froytez, 3246.

Frumentee, *s.* a dish made of wheat and various other things, 180. See the recipe in *Liber Cure Cocorum*, ed. Morris, p. 7.

Frunt. *See* Frount.

Frusche, *s.* dash, charge, swift attack, 2900.

Fruschene, *v. pl.* dash, smite, 2804. "*Froisser, fruisser*, écraser, froisser, briser." *Burguy*.

Frykis. *See* Freke, *s.*

Frysthez, 1248. *Read* Frythez, spares.

Frythes, *v. pl.* spare, 2159; *imp.* 2 *pl.* 1734; *p.p.* frythede, 656.

Fude, *s.* food, 160, 2486.

Fulfille, *v.* fill up, 3438.

Fulle, *adv.* foul, 1154, 2436.

Fulsomeste, *adj.* foulest, 1061.

Fundene. *See* Fynde.

Furlange, *s.* furlong, 873, 946, 1538.

Furthe, *adv.* forth, 262, 632, 1229.

Furthe, *s.* path, ford, 1227, 1525, 1714, 1897, 2144.

Digitized by Google

Fute, *s.* foot, 461.

Fyche, *v.* fix, 2162.

Fyfe, *adj.* five, 844, 856.

Fyfte, *adj.* fifth, 3414.

Fyghtande. *See* Feghte.

Fygured, *p.p.* 2151.

Fylede, *p.p.* defiled, 978.

Fylth, *s.* foul lust, 1032, 1071.

Fynde, *v.* find; *pl.* fyndez, 1357; *pret.* fande, 1160, fonde, 2775; *p.p.* fundene, 1176, fondene, 675, 808, foundene, 92, 163, foundyne, 435, fowndene, 3339.

Fyrthe, *v.* spare, 3370.

Fyrthe, *s.* wood, forest, 1409, 1850, 1875, 1897, 2159.

Fysnamye, 1114, Fyssnamy, 3331, *s.* physiognomy, face.

Gaddes, 3621, Gaddys, 3683, *s. pl.* goads, pricks.

Gaderide, *p.p.* gathered, 3295; *pret.* gadyrede, 594.

Gadlynges, 2443, 2728, Gadlyngez, 2854, Gedlynges, 2884, *s. pl.* fellows, worthless fellows.

"So is mony gedelyng,
godlyche on horse,
and is þeyh lutel wurþ;
wlonk bi þe glede,
and vuel at þare neode."
The Proverbs of Alfred, Jesus Coll. MS. 29, leaf 264.

A.S. *gædeling*, companion.

Gafe, *v. pret.* gave, 2628, gavest, 1018; gaffe, gave, 85.

Galaye, *s.* galley, 3724; *pl.* galays, 3096.

Galede, *v. pret.* sang, 927. A.S. *galan*.

Galte, *s.* swine, 1101.

Galyarde, *adj.* gay, 721, 1265, 1279. Fr. *gaillard*.

Gamene, *s.* game, sport, 2811; *pl.* gamnes, 1730, 3174.

Ganggynge, *s.* going, 706.

Gardwynes, *s. pl.* guerdons, rewards, 1729.

Garette, *s.* watch-tower, 562, 3104.

"þe *garettes* oboven þe yhates bryght
Of þe ceté of heven, I lyken þus ryght,
Tylle þe *garettes* of a ceté of gold,
þat wroght war, als I before told,
Of fyne curalle and rych rubys,
And of other stanes of gret prys, . . ." *Hampole's Pricke of Conscience*, ll. 9101-9106.

Garneschit, 722, Garnescht, 563, 1000, *p.p.* garnished, furnished.

Garnisone, 3105, Garnysone, 2471, 2655, Garysone, 3007, *s.* garrison.

Garte. *See* Gere.

Gas. *See* Goo.

Gate, *s.* going, 4144, road, 4308.

Gayliche, Gaylyche, *adv.* gaily, 913, 2655, 3462, 3684.

Gayne, *v.* avail, 165; 3 *s.* gaynes, 4303; *pl.* gaynez, 1731.

Gayneste, *adj.* nearest, 487, 1041, 3006.

Gayspande, *i. p.* gasping, 1462.

Geant, 3410, Geante, 2889, Gyaunt, 1122, 1222, *s.* giant; *pl.* geauntez, 375, gyawntis, 2908.

Gedlynges. *See* Gadlynges.

Gedyre, *v.* gather, 592.

Gemows, *s. pl.* hinges, 2893. "Gymowe of a sperynge. *Vertinella, gemella.*" *Promptorium Parvulorum.* See Way's notes on this word.

Genatours, *s. pl.* riders on jennets, light horsemen, 2897. "Génetaire, génesteur, génete, génitaire: Sorte de cavalier, suivant Philippe de Commines." "Genitaires: Cavalerie légère." *Roquefort.*

Gentille, *adj.* gentle, well-born, &c., 987, 1161, 2088; *superl.* gentileste, 862.

Digitized by Google

Genyuers, *s. pl.* (?) 375.

Gere, *v.* make, cause, 3640; 3 *s.* gers, 3572, 3921; *pret.* garte, 1886, 3709, gerte, 1780, 1946, 1975; gerte kepe hym = caused him to be kept.

Gere, *s.* gear, tackle, 2539, 3008.

Gerefawcone, *s.* gerfalcon, 4004.

Gers. *See* Gere, *v.*

Gersoms, *s. pl.* treasures, 165, 1729.

Gerte. *See* Gere, *v.*

Gessenande, (?) 2521.

Gesserawnte, 2892, Jesseraunt, 904, Jesserawnte, 4238; *s.* coat of jazeran; *pl.* gesserawntes, 2909. "Jazeran. Particular kind of armour, so called from the Italian ghiazerino, being made of overlapping plates of iron rivetted on canvass covered with velvet, red, black, or blue, and ornamented externally with brass studs." *Meyrick, Glossary of Military Terms.* "*Jaserant, jazerant,* . . . . cotte de petites mailles." *Burguy.*

Gestes, *s. pl.* stories, 2876.

Gettlesse, *adj.* without getting anything, 2727.

Getyne, *p.p.* gotten, 886.

Ghywes, *s. pl.* gyves, fetters, 3621.

Gife, 2630, Giffe, 2632, *conj.* if.

Gife, 1179, Giff, 1060, Giffe, 2321, *v.* give; *p.p.* gifene, 1729.

Girde, *v.* smite, 3709; 3 *s.* girdez, 1792, gyrdes, 1370, gyrdez, 1470, gyrdis, 2563; *pret.* gyrd, 2971; *p.p.* girde, 3938.

Girdille, Girdylle, *s.* girdle, 3458, 3923.

Girse, *s.* grass, 3944.

Gladchipe, *s.* gladness, 59, 928.

Gladdez, 2883, Gladdis, 2852, *v.* 3 *s.* gladdens, encourages; *pl.* gladdene, 928.

Glade, *adj.* glad, 1386.

Glade. *See* Glydez.

Glauerande, *i. p.* talking foolishly, 2538.

Glayfe, *s.* 3761. "*Glaive.* A weapon composed of a long cutting blade at the end of a staff. . . ." *Meyrick, Glossary of Military Terms.*

Gledys, *s. pl.* sparks, live coals, 117.

Glent, *s.* stroke, 3863.

Glentes, 4244, Glentis, 2563, Glenttys, 2780, *v.* 3 *s.* glances, glides.

Gleterande, *i. p.* glittering, 595, 1280, 2853.

Gliftis, 3949, Glyftes, 2525, *v.* 3 *s.* looks.

Gloppynyng, *s.* fright, amazement, 3863.

Glopyne, *v.* terrify, 2580, be terror-struck, 3 *s.* glopyns, 3949; *pret.* glopnede, 1074; *imp. pl.* 2. gloppyns, 2853; *i. p.* gloppynnande, 4329.

Glorede, *v. pret.* stared, 1074.

Glotone, *s.* glutton, 1074.

Glydez, *v.* 3 *s.* glides, 1371; *pret.* glade, 2972; *i. p.* glydande, 799.

Glyftes. *See* Gliftis.

Gobbede, *adj.* full of gab or derision, 1346. Sc. *gabbed,* loquacious.

Gobelets, *s. pl.* glove-ornaments of some kind, perhaps little cups, 913. Compare *Gobelot de gland* = acorn-cup. (*Roquefort.*)

Gobone, *v.* (?) 4164.

Gode, *adj.* good, 3476.

Gole, *s.* 3725. "A ditch or small stream." *Halliwell.*

Golet, *s.* gullet, 1772.

Gome, 85, 1209, Gume, 3409, *s.* man; *pl.* gomes, 1461, gomys, 3683, 3684. A.S. *guma.*

Digitized by Google

Goo, *v.* go, 213, 1279; 3 *s.* gas, 3006, gos, 3727, gosse, 3104; *pl.* gosse, 497; *imp.* 2 *pl.* gose, 1266.

Gorge, *s.* throat, 3760.

Gorgere, *s.* gorget, piece of armour for the throat, 1772.

Gorre, *s.* gore, 1130, 1370.

Gos, Gose. *See* Goo.

Gosesomere, *s.* gossamer, 2687.

Gosse. *See* Goo.

Gossehawke, *s.* goshawk, 4001.

Gouernour, *s.* 1201.

Gowces. *Read* Gowtes, drops, spots, 3759.

Gowke, *s.* cuckoo, 927. A.S. *geac.*

Gowles, 3646, 3759, Gowlles, 3945, *s.* gules (Her.).

Gracious, *adj.* 187.

Grame, *s.* anger, 1077, 3008. A.S. *grama.*

Granes, *v.* groans, 2562.

Grape, *v.* grope, search, 2725.

Grassede, *p.p.* fattened, fat, 1091.

Grauene, *p.p.* engraved, 3462.

Graunt, 2820, Graunted, 1202, *p.p.* granted.

Grayhondes. *See* Grehownde.

Graynes, *s. pl.* 913, 3463.

Graythe, *v.* make ready, prepare, equip, 1279, convey, 4303, proceed, hasten, go, 1266; 3 *s.* graythes, goes, 1353, 1384, 3761; *p.p.* graythede, equipped, 589, 602, graythide, 373.

Graythelyche, 722, Graythely, 1369, 1384, 1387, Graythly, 1000, *adv.* readily, speedily.

Graytheste, *adj.* readiest, promptest, 1201.

Gre, 2748, Gree, 1936, 2645, *s.* will, pleasure.

Gree, *s.* (degree) ascendancy, 3706, 4298.

Grees, *s.* grease time, the time when deer are fat and fit for killing, 658. See *Grease* in Halliwell.

Greesse-growene, *adj.* grown over with fat, 1101.

Grefe, 1077, Greefe, 1471, 2562, Greffe, 3007, 4324, *s.* grief, anger, vexation, pain, sorrow.

Grefe, *v.* grieve, 705; *p.p.* grefede, hurt, 1282, greffede, 1463. *See* Greue.

Grefes. *See* Greue, *s.*

Grehownde, 3464, Grewhounde, 1075, Grewhownde, 4001, *s.* grayhound; *pl.* grewhoundez, 1730, grayhondes, 2521.

Grekkes, *adj.* Greek, 594.

Grene, *adj.* green, 1266, 1281.

Grennede, *v. pret.* grinned, showed his teeth, 1075.

Gresse, *s.* grass, 1131.

Gret, 256, Grete, 207, Grett, 1, 165, Grette, 539, *adj.* great; *comp.* gretter, 3243; *superl.* gretteste, 1469.

Grete, *v.* greet, 1282; 3 *s.* gretez, 1077; *pl.* gretes, 1233; *pret.* grette, 84, 3476.

Grete, *v.* weep; 3 *s.* gretes, 2962; *pret.* grette, 3790; *i. p.* gretand, 951, 3912.

Gretez, *v.* 1774. Qu. gredez, calls.

Greue, *s.* grove, 2540; *pl.* greues, 1874, greuez, 927, grefes, 2881.

Greue, *v.* grieve, vex, annoy; *pret.* greuyde, was vexed, 1352; *p.p.* greuede, 134, 266, 1173, greuyde, 1022.

Grewhounde, Grewhownde. *See* Grehownde.

Gripe, *v.* seize, gripe, grasp, 3008; 3 *s.* grypes, 1163, 2526, gryppes, 1369.

Grisely, 3105, Grysly, 1075, Grysely, 951, Gryeslye, 1469, Gry[s]lych, 1101, *adj.* horrible, grisly.

Digitized by Google

Grisely, 1462, 3950, Grysely, 3912, Gryselyche, 1373, *adv.* horribly.

Groffe, 3850, Grouffe, 3944, Growffe, 3869, *s.* On g. = flat, sprawling.

Grome, *s.* groom, 2526, 3489.

Gronande, *i. p.* groaning, 1373, 3938.

Grouche. *See* Gruche.

Grouffe. *See* Groffe.

Groundene, 1371, 2972, Growndene, 1281, Grundyne, 1461, *p.p.* ground, sharpened.

Growffe. *See* Groffe.

Growndene. *See* Groundene.

Gruche, 706, 2644, Grouche, 2819, *v.* be dissatisfied, grudge; *pret.* grychgide, 2557; *i. p.* grucchande, 1076, 1353, 1462.

Grundyne. *See* Groundene.

Grychgide. *See* Gruche.

Gryeslye. *See* Grisely.

Gryffoune, *s.* griffin, 3869.

Grygynge, *s.* (graying) dawn, 2510.

Grylych, 1101. *Read* Gryslych, *and see* Grisely.

Gryme, *adj.* grim, 3621, 3760; *superl.* grymmeste, 3419.

Grymly, *adv.* grimly, fiercely, 1471, 2558, 3813.

Grypes, Gryppes. *See* Gripe.

Grysely, Gryselyche, Grysly. *See* Grisely.

Guchede. *Read* Guthede = goutted, goutté, bedropped, spotted, 3937.

Gud, 2851, 2853, Gude, 559, 563, *adj.* good.

Gudes, 295, Gudez, 1213, 1249, *s. pl.* goods.

Gudly, *adv.* well, 677, 3005.

Gumbaldes, *s. pl.* (?) dainties, 187.

Gume. *See* Gome.

Guschez, *v. pl.* gush, 1130.

Guttes, 1130, Guttez, 1370, *s. pl.* guts.

Guyte, *s.* child, 2963. See *Get* and *Gyte* in Jamieson.

Gwerdones, 4277, Gwerddouns, 2820, *s. pl.* guerdons, rewards.

Gyaunt, Gyawntis. *See* Geant.

Gydes, *v.* 3 *s.* guides, 3005.

Gydes, *s. pl.* guides, 3006.

Gye, *v.* guide, 4; *pret.* gyede, 3860.

Gyf, 3058, Gyfe, 1598, Gyffe, 4, *v.* give; 3 *s.* gyffes, 1774; *p.p.* gyfene, 4277, gyffene, 1202; gyffes = makes account of, 539.

Gyrd, Gyrdes, &c. *See* Girde.

Haa, *int.* 133.

Habite, *s.* dress, 3917.

Habydes, *v.* 3 *s.* abides, waits for, 596; *pl.* habyddez, remain, 1431.

Hade. *See* Hafe.

Hafe, 252, 286, Haffe, 1616, *v.* have; 2 *s.* has, 100, 140, hase, 1805; 3 *s.* has, 846; *pl.* has, 12, 369; *pret.* hade, 26, 52.

Hailsez, *v.* 3 *s.* greets, salutes, 1058.

Hakenayes, 484, Hakkenays, 2284, Haknays, 734, *s. pl.* hackneys.

Halde, *v.* hold, 424; 3 *s.* haldes, 64, haldez, 1135; *pret.* helde, 1196; *p.p.* haldene, 387, 1456.

Hale, *v.* draw, haul, 748.

Hale, 1260, 2108, Halle, 2651, *adj.* whole.

Halely, 764, Hally, 1001, 1085, Holly, 748, *adv.* wholly, entirely.

Halfe, *s.* half, part, side; *pl.* halfes, 1853, halfez, 1979, halues, 1966, 3530.

Halowes, *v.* 3 *s.* shouts, hollas, 3319.

Hals, *s.* neck, throat, 764; *pl.* halses, 4120, halsez, 1798.

Digitized by Google

Haly, 297, 309, Holy, 348, *adj.*

Hame-holde, *adj.* domestic, 1843. See *Hamald* in Jamieson.

Hanche, 1100, 1119, Haunche, 1157, *s.* haunch.

Handez, *s. pl.* hands, 1137.

Handilez, *v. pl.* handle, feel, 1156.

Handsomere, *adj. comp.* more handy, 2128.

Hannde-brede, *s.* handbreadth, 2229.

Hansemane, *s.* henchman, page, 2662; *pl.* hansemene, 2743. See *Henseman* in Jamieson.

Hape, 1937, Happe, 2446, *s.* hap.

Happe, *v.* have good fortune, succeed, 2630.

Happene, *v.* 1269, obtain, 3433; *p.p.* hapnede, happened, 1154, 3304.

Happy, *adj.* fortunate, 1741, 2974.

Happynge, *s.* good fortune, success, 3958.

Harageous, *adj.* 1645, 1742, 1834, 2248, violent, stormy. (Wright.)

Harawde, 2294, 3029, Hawrawde, 3013, *s.* herald.

Harbergage, *s.* quarters, 2475.

Hardare, *adj. comp.* harder, 4194.

Harde. *See* Here, *v.*

Hardly, *adv.* closely, 1084.

Hardynes, *s.* boldness, courage, 3959.

Hare, *s.* hair, 1001.

Hare, *s.* 2504.

Harlotte, *s.* ribald, rascal, low fellow, 2446; *pl.* harlottez, 2743. Not used in the modern sense.

Harmes, 2437, Harmez, 1842, *v.* 3 *s.* harms.

Harnayse, *s.* armour, 2629.

Harrawnte, *v.* (?) 2449.

Harske, *adj.* harsh, hard, 1084.

Has, Hase. *See* Hafe.

Hastyly, *adv.* hastily, quickly, 167.

Hathelle, *adj.* noble, 358, 1659, 1662; *superl.* hathelest, 988, hathelieste, 2109.

Hawberke, *s.* hauberk, coat of mail, 1156, 2078, 2552. Ger. *halsberg*.

Hawe, *s.* (?) 3704.

Hawle, *s.* hall, 3879.

Hawrawde. *See* Harawde.

Hawtayne, *adj.* haughty, 1058, 2612, 2910.

Hawtayne, (?) 3029.

Haylede, *v. pret.* projected, 2077.

Haythemene, *s. pl.* (?) heathen men, 2295.

Haythene, 1260, 2274, Hathene, 1284, Heythene, 2285, 3642, Hethene, 1834, *adj.* heathen.

Hedde, *v.* behead, 2311.

Heddys-mene, *s. pl.* headmen, chief men, 281.

Hede. *See* Heuede.

Hede-rapys, *s. pl.* head-ropes, 3668.

Hedire, *adv.* hither, 2614.

Hedlyngs, *adv.* headlong, 3829.

Hedoyne, *s.* (?) 184.

Hedyrwarde, *adv.* hitherward, this way, 25.

Hedys. *See* Heuede.

Heghe = hethe, heath, 2476.

Heghe, 158, 167, 499, Heyghe, 3471, Hey, 3467, 3485, Hye, 39, 58, Hyghe, 3014, *adj.* high; *superl.* hegheste, 3369.

Heghe, 1261, 1832, Hye, 194, 1119, *adv.* high.

Heghe, *s.* high place, height, 1146.

Heghely, *adv.* hastily, 2294.

Heghte = aughte, *adj.* eight, 2830.

Heghte = hethe, *s.* heath, 2295.

Digitized by Google

Heghte, 1157, 2613, Highte, 3626, *s.* height; *pl.* heghttez, 798.

Hekes, *s. pl.* horses, 2284.

Heldede, *v. pret.* bowed down, inclined, 3368.

Hele, *s.* health, prosperity, 2630, 3958.

Hele, *v.* hide, conceal, 3286; *pret.* hillid, 1120; *p.p.* hillyd, 3606.

Hele, *v.* heal, be healed, recover, 3688; 3 *s.* heles, 2209; *pret.* helyde, 1825; *p.p.* helyd, 3030.

Helme, *s.* helmet, 1832; *pl.* helmes, 380, 730, hellmes, 2551.

Helmede, *adj.* having helmets, 1647, 3626.

Helpene, *v. inf.* help, 1646; *p.p.* holpene, 2631, 2661.

Helych, *adv.* loudly, 1286.

Hemmes, 1359, 1648, Hemmys, 2219, *s. pl.* borders.

Hende, *adj.* courteous, 167, 1135, 1283.

Hente, *v.* seize, take, receive; 3 *s.* hentez, 1132, hentes, 2917; *pret.* hente, 2973; *p.p.* hente, 1842, 3319.

Herbariours, *s. pl.* harbingers, men who went forward to find places for others, 2448.

Herberde, *p.p.* harboured, lodged, 158, 166, 2650.

Herbergage, *s.* lodgings, quarters, 1285, 2285.

Here, *v.* hear, 12; *pret.* herde, 1285, harde.

Herede, *adj.* haired, 1083.

Heretyke, *s.* heretic, 1307.

Herkene, *v.* hearken, 1646, 3899; *imp.* 2 *pl.* herkenes, 25, herkynes, 15.

Herne-pane, *s.* brain-pan, skull, 2229.

Herte, *s.* heart, 251, 262.

Herte, *v.* take courage, 1181.

Hertelyche, 2551, Hertly, 1835, *adj.* severe.

Hertly, 3642, Hertely, 2991, *adv.* heartily, severely.

Heslyne, *adj.* of hazel, 2504.

Heste, *s.* command, 2294, 3368, 4307.

Hetches, *s. pl.* hatches, 3682.

Hete, 2127, 3030, Hette, 2631, 3369, *v.* promise, assure.

Hethe, 1834, 2308, Heghe, 2476, Heghte, 2295, Heyghe, 2651, *s.* heath.

Hethely, *adv.* scornfully, 268.

Hethynge, *s.* scorn, 1843.

Hette. *See* Hete.

Heuande, *i. p.* rising, 3704.

Heuede, 262, 1178, 1354, *s.* head; chief, 1344; *pl.* hedys.

Heuedede, *p.p.* beheaded, 463.

Heuen, *v.* raise, 1937. See *Heuen* in the Glossary to *Allitera-tive Poems*, ed. Morris.

Heuene, 1167, 1261, Hewene, 705, Hewyne, 2184, *s.* heaven.

Hewe, *s.* hue, colour, 207, 768, 2524.

Hewede, *adj.* coloured, 3252.

Hewene, *v. pl.* hew, 1860; *p.p.* hewene, 1825, 2663.

Hewys, *v.* 3 *s.* raises, 4156; *p.p* hewede, 4091.

Hey, *adj.* *See* Heghe.

Hey, *s.* *See* Hye.

Heyghe, *adj.* *See* Heghe.

Heyghe, *s.* *See* Hethe.

Heyly, *adv.* quickly, 464, 2663, 2920.

Heyndly, *adv.* courteously, 15.

Heynne, *adv.* hence, 2436.

Heynȝous, *adj.* heinous, 268.

Heythene. *See* Haythene.

Highte, *p.p.* called, named, 2899.

Hillid, Hillyd. *See* Hele, *v.*

Digitized by Google

Hilte, *s.* hilt, handle of a sword, 1121; *pl.* hiltes, 2239, hiltez, 1056, 1149.

Hiltede, *adj.* 2274, 2911.

Hir, 84, 980, Hire, 956, *pron.* her.

Hirste, *s.* wood, forest, 3369.

Hittez, *v.* 3 *s.* hits, 1112, 1125, 1149.

Hode, *s.* hood, 3459.

Hodles, *adj.* hoodless, bareheaded, 2308.

Holdene, *v. pl.* hold, 4128; *p.p.* holdene, 1579, holdyne, 40, 166.

Hole, *adj.* hollow, 1083.

Hole, 1647, 2661, Holle, 3687, 4128, *adj.* whole, all. *See* Hale.

Holly, *adv.* wholly, entirely, 748, 3368, 3590.

Holpene. *See* Helpene.

Holte, *s.* wood, 1283, 1645; *pl.* holtez, 1259.

Hom, *adv.* home, 3014.

Homager, *s.* one who does homage, 3147.

Hondene, *v.* (?) serve with hands, 3209.

Hondrethe, 844, Howndrethe, 2108, Hundrethe, 930, *s.* hundred; *pl.* hundrethes, 281, hunndrethez, 1879.

Honeste, *adj.* honourable, good, 3245.

Honnde, *s.* hand, 1807; *pl.* hondes, 2255, hondez, 1114.

Honourliche, *adj.* honourable, 2298.

Hope, *v.* suppose, 2209.

Hopes, *s. pl.* (?) 2503.

Horde, *s.* treasure; *pl.* hordes, 3145.

Hore, *adj.* hoar, hoary, 1082.

Hornez, *s. pl.* horns, 1286.

Horsse, *s.* 463; *pl.* horsez, 734, horsesys, 3721.

Horsede, 1179, Horsesede, 2944, Horsesyde, 1647, *adj.* horsed, mounted.

Hostaye, *v.* lead a host, or make war, 555.

Hotchene, *v. pl.* hack, chop, 3687.

Houe, Hufe, 1688, *v.* tarry; 3 *s.* houys, 915, howes, 2010, hufes, 1260; *pl.* houez, 1283, houys, 377, 2118; *pret.* houede, 2031; *i. p.* houande, 1648.

Hoursches, *v. pl.* (?) rush, 2110.

House, *v.* dwell, 4284.

Howes. *See* Houe.

Howge. *See* Huge.

Howndrethe. *See* Hondrethe.

Howntes, *v. pl.* hunt, 4258.

Howselde, *p.p.* houseled; be h.= receive the housel, or consecrated host, 4315.

Howsynge, *s.* dwellings, quarters, 1284, 2285.

Hufe. *See* Houe.

Huge, 1086, Hugge, 583, 1634, Howge, 2889, *adj.* huge.

Hukes, *s. pl.* 734. Miswritten for *hakes*, or *hekes*, horses.

Huke-nebbyde, *adj.* hooknosed, 1082.

Hulke, *s.* a great awkward fellow, 1058, 1085, 1121, 1149.

Hunde-fisch, *s.* houndfish, 1084.

Hundrethe, Hunndrethez. *See* Hondrethe.

Hurdace, *s.* fence, palisade, barrier, 3626.

Hurdez, *v.* 3 *s.* (?) lurks, 1010.

Hurles, *v.* 2 *s.* rushest, 262.

Hurtez, *v.* 3 *s.* thrusts, 1772.

Hy. *See* Hye.

Hyde, *s.* skin, 1157.

Hydede, *p.p.* hided, skinned, covered, 1001.

Digitized by Google

Hye. *See* Heghe.

Hye, 463, 2108, Hy, 2109, Hey, 166, *s.* haste.

Hye, *v.* hasten, 1645.

Hyely, *adv.* hastily, quickly, (or perhaps) loudly, 1058.

Hyene, *adv.* hence, 2582, 2744.

Hyled, *p.p.* hidden, 184. *See* Hele.

Hyme, *pron.* him, 1133, 1134.

Hymlande, (?) 2503.

Hyndire, *s.* hindpart, 3626.

Hynge, *v.* hang; 3 *s.* hynnges, 3473; *pret.* hyngede, 281; *i. p.* hyngande, 1083; *p.p.* hynggyde, 3590.

Hynter, *s.* hindpart, 3605.

Hyrdez, *s. pl.* shepherds, 3245.

Hyre, *pron.* her, 854.

Hyttez, *v.* 3 *s.* hits, 1122, 1387.

Iche. *See* Ilke.

Iche, *v.* sally forth, rush out, 1412. O. Fr. *issir.*

Idene, (?) 3061.

Ife = if, 420, 2438.

Ile, *s.* isle, 4309; *pl.* ilez, 575, illes, 2359.

Ilkane, 279, Ilkone, 3691, *pron.* each one, each.

Ilke, *adj.* same, 65, 232, 1311. A.S. *ilc.*

Ilke, 1006, 1093, Ylke, 2460, 2480, Iche, 589, 1004, Yche, *adj.* each. Often followed by *a:* ilke a, 83, 194, iche a, 2144, 3062, yche a, 3634.

Illes. *See* Ile.

Imangez, *prep.* amongst, 3169.

In-come, *s.* coming in, 2009, 2171.

Ine = in, 1797.

Inewe. *See* Inowe.

Inglisce, *s.* English, 2529.

Inns, *s. pl.* dwellings, 3041.

Inowe, 3095, Inewe, 3161, Ynowe, 1626, Ynewe, 1360, 1970, *adv.* enough.

Irene, 1186, Iryne, 2104, Yryne, 1182, *s.* iron.

Iresche, 3934, Irische, 4123, 4161, *adj.* Irish.

Irous, 1329, Irows, 1592, Irus, 1957, *adj.* wrathful.

Irouslye, *adv.* wrathfully, 2530.

Ischewe, *s.* issue, 1943.

Isschewis, *v.* 3 *s.* issues, 4060; *pl.* ischewis, 3116.

I-wis, 3339, I-wys, 2020, 2332, 2828, I-wysse, 322, 546, 2685, *adv.* certainly.

Jaggede, *v. pret.* jagged, chopped, 1123, 2087; *p.p.* 905, 2909.

Jambe, 2894, Jamby, 373, *adj.* active, nimble; lit. leggy, from Fr. *jambe,* leg.

Japez, *s. pl.* tricks, 1398.

Jentille, Jentylle, *adj.* gentle, 115, 904, 3411.

Jerodyne, *s.* (?) 905.

Jerownde, *adj.* gyronny (Her.), 2891.

Jeryne, *s.* (?) 903.

Jesseraunt, Jesserawnte. *See* Gesserawnte.

Jocunde, *adj.* 2896.

Jogges, *v.* 3 *s.* jogs, thrusts, 2891, 2893.

Jolily, Jolyly, *adv.* gaily, handsomely, 245, 373, 2088, 4109.

Joly, *adj.* gay, trim, handsome, jolly, 3414; *comp.* jolyere, 4110; *superl.* jolyeste, 1658.

Jonede, *p.p.* joined, 2890.

Jopowne, 4238, Jupone, 905, *s.* jupon.

Jorné, 3411, Journé, 2875, Journee, 340, 372, 825, Jurnee, 2894, *s.* a day's travel, a day's fight, a day's work.

Digitized by Google

Jowelle, *s.* jewel, 862.

Joye, *s.* 1161.

Joyes, *v.* 3 *s.* rejoices, 2896.

Joynenyge, *s.* joining, encounter, 2133.

Joynez, *v. pl.* join, 2112.

Joynter, *s.* joint, 2893.

Juggede, *p.p.* judged, 2877.

Juggez, *s. pl.* judges, 246.

Jumette, *s.* 1122. *Read* Inmette, *s.* intestines. See *Inmeats* in *Jamieson.*

Juny, *s.* June, 345.

Jupone. *See* Jopowne.

Jurnee. *See* Jorné.

Just, *adv.* 1123.

Justere, *s.* jouster, 3412.

Justyfye, *v.* execute justice upon, punish, 663.

Justynge, *s.* jousting, 1657, 2875.

Kabane. *See* Cabane.

Kaghte. *See* Cachene.

Kaire. *See* Cayre.

Kalander, *s.* calendar, roll, 2640.

Kalendez, *s. pl.* calends, 2371.

Kambe, *s.* comb, 3351.

Kampe, *s.* fight, 3670, 3701.

Kane, *v.* can, 2750.

Karede, *v. pret.* 2882. *See* Cayre.

Kare. *See* Care.

Karfuke, *s.* place where four roads meet, 2003. A well-known cross-road at Oxford is called *Carfax.* See *Carfoukes* in the *Romans of Partenay*, ed. Skeat, also a note in *Notes and Queries*, Series III, vol. x. p. 184. O. Fr. *carrefourg.*

Kariede, 1887, Karyed, 4010, *v. pret.* carried.

Karpe. *See* Carpe.

Karyage, *s.* baggage, luggage, 2282.

Kaughte. *See* Cachene.

Kaunt, *adj.* stout, bold, 2195.

Kay, 3111, Keye, 1867, *s.* key; *pl.* kayes, 3064.

Kayere, Kayre. *See* Cayre.

Kaysere, *s.* emperor, 1651, 1959; *pl.* kayseres, 1894, kaysers, 2391.

Kele, *v.* cool, 1839; *pret.* keled, 2712.

Kelle, *s.* caul, net (which ladies wore over their hair), 3258.

Kembede, *v. pret.* combed, 3351.

Kempe, *s.* warrior; *pl.* kempis, 1003. A.S. *cempa.*

Kempe, *v.* fight, 2633.

Kene, *v.* tell, 2619, 3521, show, 876; *pret.* kende, 481, 2194, kend, handed over, 1590.

Kene, *adj.* keen, sharp, 47, 1106, bold, 641, 1152, 1725, 1785, fierce, 3669; *comp.* kenere, 4194; *superl.* keneste, 2721, 3490.

Kenely, 935, 1243, 1271, Kenly, 943, *adv.* sharply, boldly.

Kenetez, *s. pl.* kennets, small hounds, 122.

Kepare, *s.* keeper, 3512.

Kepe, *s.* care, heed, attention, 156, 1682, 1746.

Kepe, *v.* keep, 1138, 1780, wait, watch, 2003, heed, regard, care, 2398, 3522, 4021; *imp.* 2 *pl.* kepys, await, 628; *pret.* kepede, 919, kepyde, 838, 2263; *p.p.* kepede, 1586, kepide, 998, kepyd, 2171.

Keppe, *v.* catch, seize, 3484.

Kepynge, *s.* keeping, 4205.

Kerfe, *s.* cutting, 4194.

Kerfes, 4231, Kerues, 2567, *v.* 3 *s.* cuts; *p.p.* coruene, 211, 3335, 3673.

Keste. *See* Caste.

Ketille-hatte, *s.* helmet, 3516, 3995; *pl.* ketelle-hattes, 2993.

Digitized by Google

Keye. *See* Kay.

Kidd, 3673, Kydd, 1272, 1390, Kydde, 96, 232, Kyde, 65, 1651, *adj.* celebrated, famous.

Kirke, 4016, Kyrke, 1219, *s.* church.

Kithe, 3866, Kythe, 28, 51, 542, Kyghte, 3996, *s.* nation, country.

Kleuys. *See* Clewes.

Klokes, *s. pl.* claws, paws, 792.

Knafe, 2621, Knaffe, 2637, *s.* servant; *pl.* knafes, 2632, knaues, 3484; knaue = male, 850, 1025.

Knawe, *v.* know, 1003, 1581, 1672, acknowledge, 2637; 3 *s.* knawes, 1317; *pret.* knewe, 2177; *p.p.* knawene, 475, 1654, knowene, 3259.

Knee, *s.*; *pl.* kneesse, 956, kneys, 4274.

Knele, *v.* kneel; 3 *s.* knelis, 3951; *pl.* knelis, 3046; *pret.* knelyd, 1199, 2312; *i. p.* kneland, 1137, 4337.

Knyghte, *s.* 1138; *pl.* knyghttez, 1161.

Knyghthede, 1320, 1581, 2619, Knyghthode, 1682, 3883, *s.* knighthood.

Knyghtly, 2395, Knyghtlyche, 506, 1218, 4083, Knyghttly, 1649, *adj.* knightly.

Knyghtly, 1707, 1724, Knyghttly, 1692, 1790, *adv.* knightly, like a knight.

Knylles, *v. pl.* ring, 2353.

Kombide, *p.p.* combed, 1003.

Konynge, *s.* cunning, skill, knowledge, 3883.

Konyngeste, *adj.* most knowing, 3177.

Kosyne. *See* Cosyne.

Koueride, *p.p.* covered, 2381.

Kowardely, *adv.* cowardly, 1923.

Krafty. *See* Crafty.

Kraftes, *s. pl.* crafts, 2543.

Krakede, *v. pret.* cracked, 3269.

Krayers. *See* Crayers.

Kreuelleste, Krewelle. *See* Crewelle.

Krisome, 2636. *See* Crysume.

Krispane, *i. p.* crisping, 3352.

Kroke, *s.* crook, curl, 3352. Dan Michel uses the verb *croki*, to curl: "Of þise ydelenesse / ne byeþ naȝt quitte þe men þet doþ zuo grat payne ham to kembe and to pouri ine sseaweres and ine hare here wel to *croki* an to bleue be strengþe." —*Ayenbite of Inwyt*, ed. Morris, p. 176. See *Havelok the Dane*, ed. Skeat, Preface, p. vii, footnote.

Krouelle. *See* Crewelle.

Krysome. *See* Crysume.

Krysomede. *See* Crysmede.

Kwne, *v.* can, know, 1565; kwne thanke = return thanks.

Kydd, Kydde, Kyde. *See* Kidd.

Kyghte. *See* Kithe.

Kynde, *s.* nature, kind, 125, 2385, 3049, race, 3867.

Kyndly, *adj.* natural, proper, good, 3883, 4188.

Kyndlyche, 714, Kyndly, 2712, Kyndely, 3521, *adv.* naturally, kindly.

Kyne, *s.* kin, 2618.

Kyngryke, *s.* kingdom, realm, 24, 1272; *pl.* kyngrykes, 649, kyngrykez, 820.

Kynredene, *s.* kindred, 2604.

Kynsemane, 3898, Kynyse-mane, 1778, *s.* kinsman.

Kyrke. *See* Kirke.

Kyrnelles, *s. pl.* battlements, 3046.

Kyrtille, 998, Kyrtylle, 1024, 1191, *s.* kirtle.

Kyste, *s.* chest; *pl.* kystys, 2302, 2336, kystis, 2342, 2355.

Kythe. *See* Kithe.

Kythe, *v.* show, 1652, 4193.

Digitized by Google

Lacchene, 750, Lachene, 2541, *v. pl.* catch, take; *pret.* laghte, 2693, 2702, laughte, 2226, 2292, lached, 1515; *p.p.* laghte, 874, laughte, 1817, 1828, 1902.

Ladde, *s.* lad, 4302.

Lade-sterne, *s.* loadstar, the polar star, 751.

Ladily, *adj.* ladylike, 3254.

Ladysse, *s. pl.* ladies, 3081.

Laggene, *v. pl.* (?) get ready, 2542.

Laghte. *See* Lacchene.

Laghtirs, *s. pl.* laughters, 2673.

Lake, *s.* lack, 163.

Lakes, *s. pl.* lakes, pools, 960, 2149.

Lamede, *v. pret.* lamed, disabled, 4302; *p.p.* 3281.

Langage, *s.* language, speech, 3477.

Lange, *adj.* long, 1103, 1269; one lange = along, 1045, 2703.

Lange, *adv.* long, 868, 1200; *comp.* langere, 550, 587, lengere, 736, 889.

Lange, *v.* belong; 3 *s.* langes, 402, lengez, 2082; *pl.* langez, 1244, langys, 244, lengez, 1410, 1479; *pret.* lengede, 1492, 2221.

Lannges, *v.* 3 *s.* longs, 383.

Langoure, *s.* languor, 4268.

Languessande, *i. p.* languishing, 4338.

Lappe, *s.* lappet, 3254, rag, 3286.

Lappe, *v.* wrap, fold, enclose, 3292; *pret.* lappede, 2300.

Lapynge, *s.* lapping, 3235.

Large, *adv.* wide, away, 1040, deep, 1120, greatly, freely, 1376.

Largesce, *s.* liberality, bounty, 163.

Lasschene, *v. pl.* lash, smite, 2801.

Lat, 3639, Late, 420, 1189, Latt, 4001, Latte, 398, 1139, 1321, *v.* let; 3 *s.* lattes, lets go, dismisses, disperses, 1819; *pret.* lete, 3886.

Lates, 118, 248, 536, 2054, Latez, 1076, *s. pl.* features.

Lathe, *s.* (?) displeasure, 458.

Latheliche, 3279, Laythely, 4302, *adj.* loathly, ugly, hateful.

Latte, Lattes. *See* Lat.

Laughene, *v. pl.* laugh, 3698; *pret.* lughe, 248.

Laughte. *See* Lacchene.

Launce, *s.* lance, spear, 1379; *pl.* launcez, 1459, 1754, lawnces, 2462.

Launches, *v.* 3 *s.* leaps, springs, 2560; *pret.* launschide, 194.

Launchez, *v. pl.* launch, throw out (?), 750.

Launde, 1517, Lawnde, 2084, *s.* plain, lawn.

Laundone, *s.* (?) field, 1768. "Landon: . . . petite lande, pâturage; terres remplies de broussailles." *Roquefort.*

Lawe, *adj.* low, 154, 3720; *superl.* laweste, 2431; on lawe = down, 2281.

Lawe, *adv.* low, 1270.

Lawnches, *v.* 3 *s.* cuts, 3831.

Lawnde. *See* Launde.

Laye, *s.* (?) 3721.

Laye, *s.* law, religion, 2593.

Layere, *s.* lair, camp, 2293.

Layke, *s.* game, 1599, 3386, 4093.

Layne, *v.* conceal, 419, 2398, 2593.

Laysere, *s.* leisure, 2430, 3095.

Laythely. *See* Latheliche.

Layttede, *v. pret.* (?) 254. pursued or

Leberalle, *adj.* liberal, 2318. learned?

Leburde, *s.* lee-board, 3624.

Leche, *s.* jelly, 194.

Lechene, *v.* heal, 2388.

Digitized by Google

Lechyde, *p.p.* cut into slices, 188.

Lede, *s.* nation, man, person, 138, 430, 997; *pl.* ledes, 195, 1902, ledys, 2801.

Lede, *s.* lead, 750, 2300, 3954.

Lede, 1268, Leede, 154, *v.* lead, treat; *pl.* ledes, 303; *pret.* ledde, 1515, lede, 3380; *p.p.* lede, 1827, 1903.

Ledynge, *s.* rule, 3536, conduct, 3880.

Lee, *s.* shelter, 1446.

Leefe, 2479, 3093, Lefe, 1035, 1335, Leue, 350, *adj.* dear, lief; *comp.* leuer, 872, 1344, 1573.

Leefe, 3432, Lefe, 72, 429, Leue, 2082, *s.* leave, permission.

Lefe, *v.* leave, 1340; *pl.* leues, remain; *pret.* lefte, 1516; *p.p.* lefede, 1397, leuede, 848, 978, leuyde, 394, 1900, 2208.

Lefulle, *adj.* allowable, lawful, 130.

Lege, 1901, Liege, 1200, Lige, 1768, 3080, Ligge, 2221, 2389, Lygge, 1518, *adj.* liege.

Legyaunce, *s.* allegiance, 2594.

Lele, *adj.* leal, honest, faithful, true, 14, 420, 647.

Lelely, 672, 2328, Lelly, 1102, Lely, 3084, *adv.* faithfully, honestly, truly.

Lemande, *i. p.* shining, gleaming, 2462, 2463, 2672.

Lemete, *p.p.* limited, 457.

Lenand. *See* Lene.

Lende, *v.* abide, 1970.

Lendez, *s. pl.* loins, 1047.

Lene, *v.* lean; *pret.* lenede, 2703; *i. p.* lenand, 1045, 2672.

Lenge, *v.* abide, remain, dwell, 72, 128, 152; 3. *s.* lengez, 129; *inf.* lengene, 1588.

Lengede, Lengez. *See* Lange, *v.*

Lengere, 736, 889, 1055, Lengare, 2154, *adv.* longer.

Lenghe, *s.* length, 1102, 1126.

Lenghene, *v.* lengthen, 2845.

Leppe, *v.* leap, 2084; *pl.* leppyne, 3697, lepys, 3696; *pret.* lepe, 3427; *i. p.* leppande, 1460.

Lere, *v.* teach, 1035.

Leskes, *s. pl.* loins, 1097, 3279.

Lesse, *conj.* lest, 2300, 2439.

Lesse, *adj.* false; withowttyne lesse = truly, certainly, 139.

Lesynge, 3079, Lesynng, 3721, *s.* losing.

Let. *See* Lette.

Letande, *i. p.* (?) appearing, 3831.

Lete. *See* Lat.

Letherly, *adv.* wickedly, 1268.

Lett, *v.* cease, desist, 2325.

Lette, *v.* hinder, prevent, 473, 1269, 1721; *pret.* let, 3720.

Lette, *s.* hindrance, 92, 458.

Lettyng, *s.* hindrance, 371.

Leue. *See* Leefe.

Leue, *v.* believe, 702, 1097; 2 *s.* leues, 2593.

Leuenynge, *s.* lightning, 2463.

Leuere. *See* Leefe.

Leueré, *s.* delivery; hence, granted or assigned place, 241, livery or uniform; and hence, the different parts of an army, 3078. See *Livery* in Halliwell.

Leues, *s. pl.* leaves, 1708.

Leuetenaunte, *s.* lieutenant, viceroy, 646.

Leuez, *v.* 3 *s.* lives, 1731.

Life, 3723, Liffe, 1036, *v.* live; *pret.* lifede, 3961; *p.p.* liffyde, 252.

Lifeliche, *adj.* (?) real, actual, 3427.

Liffe, *s.* life, 430, 1820.

Lifte, *v. pret.* lifted, 3349.

Lige, Ligge. *See* Lege.

Liggez. *See* Lygge.

Digitized by Google

Lighames. *See* Lyghame.

Lightly, *adv.* 3287.

Likez. *See* Lyke.

Likynge, *s.* pleasure, 130, 3381.

Lire, 3281, 3954, Lyre, 4272, *s.* face, visage. A.S. *hleor.*

Liste, *s.* desire, pleasure, 12.

Liste, *v. pret.* desired, 4270.

Lofte; on lofte = aloft, 163, 916, 942; appone lofte = aloft, 2800, 3623.

Loge, 421, Lugge, 152, 454, *v.* lodge; *pl.* lugegez, 2280; *pret.* luggede, 486; *i. p.* lugande, 1045.

Loke, 1643, Luk, 3209, Luke, 135, *v.* look; 3 *s.* lukez, 113; *pl.* lukkes, 751; *pret.* luked, 119, lukede, 1313; *imp.* 2 *pl.* lokez, 1640; *i. p.* lukande, 3108.

Lokerde, *p.p.* curled, 779. Sc. *lokker*, to curl (Jamieson).

Lokkes, *s. pl.* locks, 778, 3280.

Lond, *s.* land; *pl.* londes, 878, londez, 427, 1691, 1933.

Londis, *v.* 3 *s.* lands, 3922.

Longez, *v. pl.* belong, 2828; *pret.* lonngede, 3080.

Loo, *int.* lo, 974, 1349.

Loos, 254, Loosse, 474, *s.* praise, renown, good name.

Lordcheppez, 1727, Lordchipez, 253, 646, Lordechippez, 1970, *s. pl.* lordships.

Lordliche, 3638, Lordlyche, 570, 2032, 2281, 2541, *adj.* lordly.

Lordly, 2230, 2479, Lordely, 1818, 2227, *adv.* in a lordly manner.

Lorne, *p.p.* lost, 1153.

Losels, *s. pl.* rascals, wretches, 252.

Losse, 1599, Lossene, 2845, *v.* lose.

Lotes, *s. pl.* features, 1462. *See* Lates.

Lothely, *adj.* loathly, horrid, ugly, 778, 3234.

Lothely, *adv.* horridly, 2074, 3849.

Lothene, 778, Lothyne, 1097, *adj.* hateful, detestable.

Loue, *v.* praise, 369; *p.p.* louede, 4305.

Louely, 3478, Louelyly, 2292, *adv.* in a loving manner, kindly.

Louerde, *s.* lord, 3918.

Lowde; on l. = aloud, 1781, 2032.

Lowe, *s.* flame, 194.

Lowkkide, *p.p.* closed, 3953.

Lowrande, *i. p.* lowering, looking sad, 1446, 4338.

Lowttes, *v. pl.* bow, 505; *pret.* lowttede, bowed before, 2634, 3285, 3408.

Loyotour, *s.* embroidery (Perry), 3253.

Lufe, *s.* some part of a ship, 744, 750. "Loof. The windward side of a ship. . . . It is not easy to make out exactly what part of the ship the *loof* originally was. Du. *loef* is a rullock or oar-pin, scalmus, but the loof was a timber of considerable size, by which the course of the ship was directed; it would seem to be the large oar used by way of a rudder, or perhaps the tiller." *Wedgwood's Dictionary of English Etymology.*

Lufe, 703, 705, Luffe, 1256, 3381, *s.* love, sake.

Luffe, *v.* love, 1597; *pl.* luffes, 12.

Lufliche, 3623, Lufly, 1459, *adj.* lovely.

Lufly, 505, Luffly, 248, Lufflyche, 2674, *adv.* in a lovely manner.

Lugande, Lugegez, Lugge, Luggede. *See* Loge.

Lughe. *See* Laughene.

Digitized by Google

Luk, Lukande, Luke, Lukkes. *See* Loke.

Lukynge, *s.* looking, 139.

Lumpe, 1819, Lumppe, 1814, 2230, *s.* crowd, throng.

Lunggez, *s. pl.* lungs, 2168.

Lussche, *s.* (?) thrust, 3848.

Lutterde, *adj.* bowed, bent, 779. Sc. *luttaird.* (Jamieson.)

Luyschene, *v. pl.* (?) lash, 1459; *pret.* luyschede, 2226.

Lyarde, *adj.* gray, 2542, 3280. "*Liart, liarde*, gris, gris-pommelé." *Burguy.* See *Liart* in Jamieson.

Lyefe, 2845, Lyffe, 1269, *s.* life; *pl.* lyfez, 1217.

Lyf, *v.* live, 1903; 3 *s.* lyffes, 405, 537; *p.p.* lyffede, 868.

Lyfte, *s.* sky, 4272.

Lygeaunce, *s.* allegiance, 244.

Lygge, *v.* lie; 2 *s.* lygges, 1060; 3 *s.* lyggez, 805, lys, 3938; *pl.* lygges, 459, lyggez, 1184, liggez, 1773.

Lyghame, *s.* body, 3281, 3286; *pl.* lighames, 4269. A.S. *lichama.*

Lyghte, *v.* light, alight, 1270; 3 *s.* lyghttez, 933; *pret.* lyghte, 3594; *p.p.* lyghttede, 1782.

Lyghte, *v.* lighten, 2846; 3 *s.* lyghttys, 368; *pl.* lyghttys, 251.

Lyghtenande, *i. p.* lightening, flashing, 2463.

Lygmane, *s.* liegeman, 420; *pl.* lyggemene, 1518.

Lyke, *v.* be pleased, rejoice, 195; *usually an impers. v.* likez, 383, lykes, 55, lykez, 1190, lykys, 32, 186, pleases; *pret.* lykede, 599; *i. p.* lykande, being pleased, 248, pleasing, 497, 2406.

Lykynge, *s.* pleasure, 701, 2673.

Lyme, 459, 1097, Lymme, 1046, *s.* limb.

Lympe, *v.* happen, befall, 1643; *pl.* lymppene, incur, 3119; lympede, gained, 3415, lympyde, 292 *p.p.* lymppyde, incurred, suffered, 875.

Lynd, *s.* tree, 454, 486.

Lynkwhyttez, *s. pl.* linnets, 2674. Sc. *lintwhite;* A.S. *linet*, flax; *linet-wig*, flax-finch, linnet.

Lyone, *s.* lion, 139; *pl.* lyouns, 3234.

Lyppe, *s.* lip, 119; *pl.* lyppys, 1011, lippis, 3954.

Lyre. *See* Lire.

Lys. *See* Lygge.

Lythe, 1653. *Read* Kythe.

Lythe, *adj.* gentle, 1517, 1600.

Lythe, *v.* listen, 12; *pl.* lythes, 1810.

Lytherly, *adv.* badly, 1448.

Lythes, *s. pl.* (?) leases, tenements, 994. See *Lith* in Glossary to *Havelok the Dane*, ed. Skeat, and *Lud* in Glossary to *William of Palerne*, ed. Skeat.

Lythyre, *adj.* wicked, bad, 23.

Lytille, 1021, Litylle, 1719, Lyttille, 754, *adj. or adv.* little.

Lytte, (?) little, 550.

Lyue, *s.* life, 1775, 3067, 3520.

Lywynge, *s.* living, 5.

Ma, *adj.* more, 1829.

Mace, *s.* 4210.

Mache, *s.* match, 4070.

Machede, *p.p.* matched, 1533, 2904.

Maches, *s.* (?) 2950.

Mad, *v. pret.* made, 50, 112; *p.p.* mad, 77.

Made, *s.* madness, 4271.

Magestee, 1236, Maiestee, 1303, *s.* majesty.

Maister, 990, 2870, Mayster, 938, 3652, *s.* master.

Maisterede, *v. pret.* mastered, 2683.

Digitized by Google

Makk, *s.* companion, fellow, 1166.

Makles, *adj.* peerless, matchless, 3875.

Malle, *v.* hammer, beat, 3038, 4037; 3 *s.* mallis, 3841.

Maluesye, *s.* a kind of wine, 236.

Malyncoly, *s.* 2204, 4209.

Man, *adj.* *See* Mayne.

Manace, *s.* menace, threatening, 3383.

Manacede, *v.* *pret.* threatened, 1383.

Manere, *s.* manor, 4310.

Manere, *s.* manner, 1383.

Mangere, *s.* 1588. Qu. Maugree, ill will.

Manhede, *s.* manhood, 399, 434, 4278.

Manliche, *adj.* manly, 2417.

Manrede, *s.* homage, service, 127.

Manykyne, *adj.* of many kinds, 3174.

Manys = man's, 76.

Marasse, 2505, Marras, 1534, Marrasse, 2014, *s.* morass, marsh.

Marche, *s.* frontier, boundary, 318, 1588; *pl.* marches, 631, marchez, 1232, marchys, 77.

Marchez-mene, *s.* *pl.* bordermen, borderers, 1237.

Marras, Marrasse. *See* Marasse.

Marre, *v.* mar, 2015.

Marters, *s.* *pl.* martyrs, 1066.

Martyre, *v.* kill, 560.

Mase, *v.* 3 *s.* makes, 960.

Masondewes, *s.* *pl.* hospitals, 3038. Fr. *maison-dieu*, lit. house of God, a name suggested by Matthew xxv.

Maugree, 1238, Mawgree, 426, in spite of.

Maundement, *s.* commandment, order, 1587.

Mawene, *p.p.* mown, 2507.

Mawgree. *See* Maugree.

Mawncelet. *Read* Mawntelet, *s.* mantling, or lambrequin, 3632. "*Mantling*, or *Lambrequin*:—a small Mantle, generally of crimson velvet or silk and lined with ermine, with tassels, attached to the Basinet or Helm, and hanging down over the shoulders of the wearer."—*Boutell's Heraldry* (3rd edit. 1864), p. 115. In the present instance the mantelet was of silver mail.

Mayles, 2250, Maylez, 904, 1487, 1764, *s.* *pl.* chain or ringed armour.

Mayne, *s.* might, power, 4326.

Mayne, 427, 434, Man, 4071, *adj.* main.

Maynoyrede, *p.p.* worked, 2507.

Mayntene, *v.* maintain, 399; *p.p.* mayntenyde, 4278.

Mayster. *See* Maister.

Maysterfulle, *adj.* victorious, 3413.

Mede, *s.* meed, reward, 666, 1068.

Mede, *s.* mead, 1290, 2506.

Medille, *s.* middle, waist, 2205, 4168.

Medille-erthe, 2951, Medillerthe, 3239, *s.* world.

Medillewarde, 2904, Medilwarde, 3766, Medylwarde, 1988, *s.* centre of an army.

Mekille, Mekylle, *adj.* great, 1236; *adv.* much, greatly, 711, 1314, 1382.

Mele, *v.* speak, talk, 990; 3 *s.* meles, 382, 679, 1781; *pl.* mellys, 3652; *imp.* 2 *pl.* melys, 2871.

Melione, *s.* million, 3144.

Melle, *v.* mix, join, meddle, deal with, 938; *pl.* mellis, 2904.

Melles, *v.* 3 *s.* hammers, smites, 2950. *See* Malle.

Mellyd, *adj.* (?) made like a *mall* or hammer, hammer-headed, 4210.

Mellys, Melys. *See* Mele.

Digitized by Google

Mendement, *s.* amendment, 989, 1236.

Mendynantez, *s. pl.* (?) mendicants, beggars, 667.

Mene, *v.* speak, tell, 3556, speak of, mention, 2869; 3 *s.* menys, talks, 3478, 3653.

Menede, *v. pret.* meant, 891.

Mengene, *v. pl.* mingle, join, 4173; *p.p.* mengede, 3632.

Menske, *s.* honour, 126, 399, 433.

Menskes, *v.* 3 *s.* honours, 1303, 2871.

Menskfully, *adv.* honourably, 631, 940, 1233, 1988.

Mereswyne, *s.* dolphin, 1091. "Hic delfis. þis mere-swin." *Ælfric's Grammar*, Cotton MS. Julius A ii, leaf 31.

Merke, *v.* proceed, 351, 427, 4320, assign, 1068; 3 *s.* merkes, cuts, 2206; *pl.* merkene, 4168; *p.p.* merked, formed, made, 1304, merkyde, 952.

Merkes, *s. pl.* bounds, 461, 1147.

Merrede, 1238, 3555, Merride, 3322, *p.p.* marred.

Meruaile, Meruayle, *s.* marvel, wonder, 2682, 2906.

Meruailles, *v.* 3 *s.* marvels, 1314.

Meruailous, 260, Meruaylous, 428, Meruayllous, 2287, Meruelyous, 236, *adj.* marvellous, wonderful; *superl.* meruelyousteste, 129.

Mery, *adj.* merry, cheerful, 260; *comp.* meriere, 3175; *superl.* meryeste, 3239.

Messes, *s. pl.* masses, 4018, 4333.

Mett, *v. pret.* dreamed, 3223.

Mette, 2491, *s.* meat, food; *pl.* metes, 75, metez, 1298.

Mette, *v.* meet, 434; *pret.* mett, 1175, 3841.

Mette-fulle, *adj.* measure-full, in good measure, 2343.

Mette while, *s.* measured time, or scanty time, 3903. A.S. *mǽte*, moderate, little.

Meue, *v.* move, 2001.

Misdoo, *v.* ill-use, wrong, 126.

Mo, 844, 885, Moo, 856, 2500, *adj.* more.

Mobles, *s. pl.* movable goods, 666.

Mode, *s.* mind, 3222, 3382, 3454.

Modyr, Modyre, *s.* mother, 2, 983, 1211.

Mofes, *v.* 3 *s.* moves, 3323.

Molde, *s.* mould, earth, 129, 952, 975.

Mone, *v.* must, shall, 813, 1155, 2186, 2436, 2820.

Monee, *s.* money, 2343.

Monethe, *s.* month, 318.

Montayngnes, 3238, Mowntaygnes, 4259, *s. pl.* mountains.

Monte, *s.* mountain, 938, 1069; *pl.* montez, 874, 1175, mowntes, 3535, 3556.

Mony, *adj.* many, 3623, 3671.

Moo. *See* Mo.

More, *adj.* greater, 1018.

Morne, *s.* morning, morrow, 1223.

Morne-while, *s.* morning time, 2001, 3223.

Morthires, *v.* 2 *s.* murderest, 1315; *pl.* mourtherys, 4259; *p.p.* morthirede, 976.

Morwene, *s.* morning, 3476.

Moste, *v.* must, 250, 263, 449; *impers. v.* 2491.

Moste, *adj.* greatest, 3322, 4221.

Mot, 346, Mote, 4104, Mott, 136, 1306, Motte, 227, *v.* must, may.

Mournande, *i. p.* mourning, 4333.

Mourtherys. *See* Morthires.

Mowe, *v. subj. sg.* be able, may, 3812.

Digitized by Google

Moyllez, *s. pl.* mules, 2287.

Muskadelle, *s.* a kind of wine, 236.

Myche, *adj.* great, 1166, 1214, 2033; *adv.* much, greatly, 1068.

Myde, *adj.* mid, 3841.

Myddes, 1293, Myddys, 2176, *s.* midst.

Mylde, *adj.* mild, 1211.

Mynde, *s.* memory, 1221.

Mynsters, *s. pl.* monasteries, 3038.

Myrthez, *s. pl.* mirths, 1532.

Myschefe, *s.* trouble, misfortune, 667, 3437.

Myse-bide, *v.* offer injury, 3083.

Mysese, *s.* trouble, grief; and hence, those who are in trouble, 667.

Myshappene, *v.* meet with misfortune, 3454.

Myskaries, *v.* 3 *s.* comes to grief, 2872; *p.p.* myscaryede, 1778, myskaryede, 1237.

Mysse, *s.* wrong, injury, 1315, 3057.

Myste, *s.* mist, 2001.

Myx, *s.* vile wretch; lit. dung, 989. A.S. *meox*, dung, muck.
"Ne mylte þe *mixes* þo wurse don,
Bute a-mong þeoues on rode anhon."
Jesus Coll. MS. 29, leaf 265, back.

Na, *adj.* no, 160, 310, 1644.

Nakyne, *adj.* of no kind, 2350.

Nane, *adj.* no, 213, 565; *pron.* none, 657, 2613.

Nauylle, *s.* navel, 979.

Naye, *s.* a naye = an aye, an egg, 3283. Compare *Neiȝ* in *William of Palerne*, ed. Skeat, l. 83.

Ne, *adv.* not, 230, 1117; *conj.* nor, 10, 161.

Nedes, 263, 1266, Nedez, 1329, Nedys, 470, *s. pl.* business.

Nedylle, *s.* needle (of a compass), 753.

Neghe, *v.* draw nigh, approach, 2433.

Neghe, *adv.* closely, exactly, 2658.

Neke-bone, *s.* neckbone, 2771.

Nere, *adv.* nearly, almost, 805, 1127, 1135.

Nese, *s.* nose, 2248.

Neuewe, *s.* nephew, 689.

Newȝere, *s.* new-year, 78.

Newȝers daye, *s.* new-year's day, 90.

Nextte, *adj.* nearest, 2422.

Neynesome, nine in all, 523. See *Sum* in Richthofen's *Altfriesisches Wörterbuch.*

Nobille, Nobylle, *adj.* noble, 16, 18, 68; *superl.* nobileste, 3439, 3935.

Nobilly, *adv.* nobly, 1815.

Noblay, *s.* splendour, 76, 2433.

Noghte, *pron.* naught, 1191; *adv.* not, 135, 419, 1174.

Nokyne, *adj.* of no kind, 430.

Nombirde, 2887, Nowmerde, 2658, *p.p.* numbered.

Nombyre, 2831, 3068, Nowmbre, 2884, Nowmbyre, 2942, 3438, Nowmer, 884, *s.* number; *pl.* nommers, 591, nowmbirs, 3935.

Nomene, 1437, Nommene, 1868, 1872, 2477, *p.p.* taken.

Nommers. *See* Nombyre.

None, *s.* the ninth hour of the day (at the equinox, none = 3 P.M.), 78.

Nonis, 3297, Nonys, 1927, *s.* nonce; for the nonce, for the occasion.

Nonkyns, *adj.* of no kind, 2363.

Nonne, *adj.* no, 3365.

Nonnes, *s. pl.* nuns, 3539.

Noo, *adj.* no, 4149.

Digitized by Google

Not, *v.* 1 *s.* know not, 977.

Notez, *v. pl.* make use of, 1815. A.S. *notian.*

Nother, 2367, Nothyre, 10, Nowthire, 161, 429, *conj.* neither.

Notte, *s.* use; hence, business, 1816. A.S. *notu.*

Nowene, 1806; thi nowene = thine own.

Nowmbirs, Nowmbre, Nowmbyre, Nowmer. *See* Nombyre.

Nowmerde. *See* Nombirde.

Nowthire. *See* Nother.

Noyes, *v.* 3 *s.* harms, grieves, 1816, 2248.

Nurree, *s.* nursling, 689.

Nyghtgale, *s.* nightingale, 929.

Nyghttes, *v.* 2 *s.* gettest benighted, 451.

Nynne = nine, 3439

O, 656, 1217, 3480, Oo, 3907, *prep.* on, in.

O, *prep.* of, from, 3906.

Occedente, *s.* occident, west, 2360.

Occyane, *s.* ocean, 31.

Oches, *v.* 3 *s.* hacks, breaks, 2565; *pl.* ochene, 3675; *pret.* ochede, 4245. "*Oscher, ocher,* ébrécher, entailler, briser." *Burguy.*

Ocupyes, *v.* 3 *s.* holds, occupies, 1663, 2360.

Of = from, 2540.

Oghte, *pron.* aught, 1014, 1269, 2802.

Okene, *adj.* oaken, 2722.

Olawe, *adv.* below, down, 1517.

Olyfaunte, *s.* elephant, 2339; *pl.* olyfantez, 1286, olyfauntez, 2288.

Olyfe, *adv.* of life, from life, 802, 1139; bringe olyfe = kill.

One = on, *prep.* 74, 116, 753.

One, *adv.* alone, only, 826, 937, 2519, 2592. A.S. *áne.* Myne one, by myself, 3230; by myne one, by myself, 704; be oure one, by ourselves, 1345; thyne one, thyself, 466; with hyme one, with himself, 597; of hyme one, of himself, 1793; be thame one, by themselves, 3195.

Ones, 135, 179, Onez, 1109, 1756, *adv.* once.

One-seeande, *i. p.* looking on, 525.

Onone, *adv.* anon, quickly, soon, 571, 1178, 1231.

Ony, *adj.* any, 2519, 3489, 4215.

Oo. *See* O.

Opyne, *adj.* open, 2147.

Or, *prep.* ere, before, 1269, 1788; *conj.* ere, before, 374, 529, 1680.

Ordaynede, *v. pret.* arranged, 1991; *p.p.* ordande, ordained, 1621.

Orfraeez, 902, Orfrayes, 2142, *s.* gold embroidered work, or fringe of gold. "*Orfrais,* . . . étoffe brochée d'or, broderie en or, frange d'or." *Burguy.*

Orrible, *adj.* horrible, 1240.

Oryent, 2289, Oryentte, 1904, *s.* orient.

Osay, *s.* a kind of drink, 202.

Oslante, *adv.* aslant, 2254, 3923.

Ostage, *s. pl.* hostages, 3187, 3208.

Ostayande, *i. p.* warring, or leading an army, 3502. "*Ostoier, osteier, osteer,* faire la guerre, guerroyer, mener ost, attaquer son ennemi." *Burguy.*

Oste, *s.* host, 1624; *pl.* ostes, 1240, ostez, 2387.

Other-while, *adv.* at another time, 1145.

Othire, *adj.* other, 3973; *pron. pl.* others, 3932.

Ouer-charggede, *p.p.* overburdened, overpowered, 1749.

Ouer-fallene, *p.p.* fallen upon, 1154.

Digitized by Google

Ouergylte, *p.p.* gilded over, 207.

Ouer-hande, *s.* upper hand, mastery, 4300.

Ouerkeste, *v. pret.* overthrew, 3932.

Ouerlynge, *s.* superior, lord, 289, 520, 710.

Ouer-rane, *v. pret.* overran; *p.p.* ouer-ronne, 1206.

Ouer-reche, *v.* reach over, afford, 1508; *pl.* ouerrechez, reach over, 921.

Ouer-rydez, *v. pl.* ride over; *p.p.* ouer-redyne, 1415, 1524.

Ouersette, *p.p.* overthrown, 111, 2815, 4136.

Ouer-swyngene, *v. pl.* overthrow, overturn, 1466.

Ouer-whelme, *v.* overturn, 3261.

Oundyde, 765, Ownde, 193, *adj.* wavy. Her. *ondee.*

"Hire *ownded* here, that sonnyssh was of hewe,
She rente . . ."
Chaucer, *Troylus & Cryseyde*, bk. iv. stanza cii.

Ovyre-fallys, *v. pl.* fall over, 3677.

Ower, *prep.* over, 747.

Ownde. *See* Oundyde.

Owte-iles, 30, Owtt illes, 2359, *s. pl.* foreign islands.

Owte landes, 2607, Owte-londes, 2723, Owt-londys, 3697, *s. pl.* foreign countries.

Owte-mowntes, *s. pl.* far off mountains, 3909.

Owte ouer, 903, Owtt ouere, 2339, *adv.* outside, above.

Owther, 110, 2413, Owthire, 964, *conj.* either.

Owttraye, *v.* finish, overcome completely, ruin, do violence against, 642, 1010, 1328; 3 *s.* owtrayes, 1664; *p.p.* owterayede, 1952, owtrayede, 2617, owttrayede, 2840.

Pacokes, *s. pl.* peacocks, 182.

Pales, 503, Palesse, 3913, Palez, 636, 718, *s.* palace; *pl.* palaisez, 1287.

Palfray, *s.* 3143.

Palle, *s.* a kind of rich silk or cloth, 1288, 2478, 3142.

Palyd, 1287, Palyde, 1375, *p.p.* paled (Her.).

Pape, *s.* pope, 229, 2327.

Pare, *v.* (?) 4047.

Parlement, *s.* parliament, 146.

Party, *s.* part, 212; *pl.* partyes, parts, countries, 2596.

Pas, *s.* pace, 3496.

Passande, *i. p.* passing, more than, 2741, passant, 4184.

Pastorelles, *s. pl.* herdmen, 3120.

Patriarkes, *s. pl.* 3807.

Paume, *s.* palm, 776.

Paunsone, *s.* (?) piece of armour covering the paunch, 3458. "*Pancire, panchire*, la partie de l'armure qui couvre la panse ou le ventre." *Burguy.*

Pauys, 3460, properly means a large shield, but it is by no means clear what is meant in this passage.

Pauysers, *s. pl.* men who bore the *pavis*, a large shield used to cover archers, 2831, 3004.

Pavelyouns, 2624, Pauyllyons, 2478, *s. pl.* tents.

Pawnce, *s.* piece of armour for the belly, 2075.

Pawnche, *s.* paunch, 2076.

Paye, *v.* satisfy, please, 4049; 3 *s.* payes, 2646; *p.p.* payede, 230.

Payganys, *s. pl.* pagans, 4046.

Payne, *s.* penalty, 2329; *pl.* paynez, 1546, 1632.

Paynyme, *s.* pagan, 1377; *pl.* paynymes, 2835, paynymnez, 1544.

Digitized by Google

Payses, *v. pl.* weight, load, 3037; *pret.* paysede, overloaded, weighed down, 3042.

Payvese, *s. pl.* pavises, 3625.

Pecez, *s. pl.* pieces, 1825.

Pechelyne, *s.* (?) 1341.

Pekille, *s.* a kind of sauce made of dripping, wine, mustard, and onions, 1027. See the recipe *For Pykulle* in the *Liber Cure Cocorum*, ed. Morris, p. 31.

Pelid, *v. pret.* thrust, drove (?), 3042.

Pelours. *See* Pylours.

Pendes, *v.* 3 *s.* belongs, 1612; *pl.* 2624.

Penowne, *s.* pennon, flag, 2917; *pl.* penouns, 2460.

Penselle, *s.* small pennon, streamer, 2076, 2411; *pl.* penselles, 2460, pensels, 1289.

Percede, *v. pret.* pierced, 2075.

Peres, 146, Perez, 637, Peris, 1637, *s. pl.* peers.

Perfournede, *p.p.* performed, 672.

Perrie, 4184, Perrye, 2460, 3461, *s.* precious stones, jewelry.

Persayfes, *v.* 3 *s.* perceives, 4224; *pret.* persayfede, 1631, persayuede, 2811.

Persewes, *v.* 3 *s.* pursues, 2155; *pret.* persewede, 1476, persuede, 1377.

Pertly, *adv.* openly, 2917.

Pes, 2411, Pesse, 1542, *s.* peace.

Pesane, *s.* (?) 3458.

Peté, *s.* pity, 2812, 3043.

Peyne. *See* Payne.

Pighte, Pyghte, *p.p.* pitched, 1287, 1290, set (with stones, &c.), 212, 3354, 3460; adorned (?), 3364.

Pilgram, *s.* pilgrim, 3475.

Pilgremage, *s.* 3496.

Pillione hatt, *s.* 3460. A kind of hat, at one time worn only by doctors in theology, but afterwards more generally. See Pecock's *Repressor*, ed. Babington, pp. 88, 89, and Glossary.

Pilouur, *s.* robber, 2533.

Plas, *s.* place, 4013.

Plasche, *s.* marshy place, 2798.

Platers, *s. pl.* dishes, 182.

Platez, *s. pl.* plates, 2075.

Plattes, *s. pl.* purple cloths, 2478. "Platta, purpura, vel pannus purpurei coloris." *Ducange.* Or more probably *plattes* is a *pl. v.* meaning, strike, beat. A.S. *plættian.*

Playne, *adj.* level, smooth, 1290.

Playsterede, *adj.* plastered, 3042.

Plenerly, *adv.* fully, 2608, 3498.

Plenteuous, *adj.* abundant, 1028.

Plesande, *i. p.* pleasing, pleasant, 11, 4049.

Plesaunce, *s.* delight, enjoyment, 3140.

Pleyne, *v.* complain, 1217.

Plumpe, *s.* crowd, 2199.

Plyande, *adj.* flexible, 777.

Plytte, *s.* condition, 683.

Pomarie, *s.* fruit-garden, orchard, 3364.

Pome, *s.* globe, 3354.

Pomelle, *s.* small globe (probably used as an ornament on a flag-staff), 1289.

Pontyficalles, *s. pl.* (?) bishops, 4335.

Pople, 100, 1204, Popule, 11, 52, *s.* people.

Porke despyne, *s.* porcupine, 183.

Porkes, *s. pl.* swine, 3121.

Porte, *s.* port, 2609; (?) 3625; *pl.* portes, gates, 503, 568, portez, portholes, 749.

Postles, *s. pl.* apostles, 2413.

Potestate, *s.* power, potentate, 2327.

Digitized by Google

Poueralle, *s.* poor folk, 3120.

Pouere, *adj.* poor, 3540.

Pouerte, *s.* poverty, 1545.

Pourpour, *s.* purple, 1375.

Powere, *s.* forces, 1635, 1925, 2155.

Poyne, *v.* work upon, toil at, 2624.

Poyntez, *s. pl.* points, 767.

Praye, *s.* prey, booty, 3003, 3010.

Prekande, Prekes, Prekys, Prekkande, &c. *See* Prike.

Preker, Prekkers. *See* Prikkere.

Presant, *adj.* present, 1257.

Presante, *s.* present, 1021.

Prese, *v.* press, 1583; 3 *s.* presez, 1374; *pret.* presede, 2199.

Presone, 1546, Presonne, 1632, *s.* prison.

Presonere, *s.* prisoner, 2536; *pl.* presoners, 1583, 1636.

Presse, *s.* crowd, 1477, pressure, difficulty, 1522.

Preué, *adj.* privy, secret, 2005.

Preuely, 213, 896, 2648, Preualye, 1609, *adv.* privily, secretly.

Price, 94, 355, Pris, 500, 569, Pryce, 230, 746, Prys, 2, 718, Pryse, 1636, Prysse, 1545, *adj.* precious, worthy, good.

Prike, *v.* prick, ride, 2844; 2 *s.* prykkes, 2533; 3 *s.* prekez, 2156, prekys, 718; *pl.* prekes, 503; *imp.* 2 *pl.* prekez, 1609; *i. p.* prekande, 1545, prekkande, 2836; *p.p.* prykkyd, pricked, 2648, prykkyde, stitched, 3608.

Prikkere, 2649, Preker, 1374, *s.* rider, horseman; *pl.* prekers, 355, 1479; prekkers, 2835.

Pris. *See* Price.

Priste, *adj.* ready, 1021, 4106.

Pristly, *adv.* readily, quickly, 2762.

Profire, *v.* offer battle, 2534; 2 *s.* profers, 2533; 3 *s.* profers, 1376, 3141.

Profire, 2857, Profyre, 1257, *s.*

Profitabille, *adj.* 11.

Proudely, 1374, Proudliche, 1287, Prowdliche, 3607, *adv.* proudly, splendidly.

Proue, *v.* prove, try, test, 1341; 3 *s.* proues, 1478; *pl.* prouene, 746, proues, 2464; *p.p.* prouede, 2596.

Proueste, 1611, 1889, Prouoste, 1632, *s.* provost.

Prowde, *adj.* proud, 2536, gay, splendid, 2076.

Prowesche, *s.* advantage, 1958.

Pryce, *adj.* *See* Price.

Pryce, 1924, 2788, Prys, 2751, Pryse, 2649, *s.* praise, prize.

Prykkes, Prykkyde. *See* Prike.

Pryme, *s.* the first hour of the day, 95, 4105.

Prys, Pryse, *s.* *See* Pryce.

Prys, Pryse, Prysse. *See* Price.

Prysonere, 1478, Pryssonere, 1610, *s.*

Purchese, *v.* gain, acquire, obtain, 3497.

Purpos, 687, Purposse, 2848, *s.*

Purpre, 4184, Purpur, 3142, Purpure, 1288, Pourpour, 1375, *s.* purple.

Purtrayede, *p.p.* pourtrayed, 3607.

Puruayede, *v. pret.* provided, furnished, 2832; *p.p.* puruayede, 1925, 2477.

Purueaunce, *s.* provision, providing, 688.

Put, *v.* 2535; put of = ward off.

Pygges, *s. pl.* pigs, 183.

Pyghte. *See* Pighte.

Pyke, *s.* pike, staff, 3475; *pl.* pykes, points, claws, 777.

Pyke, *v.* pick; 2 *s.* pykes, 2534; pyke vp, 1636.

Digitized by Google

Pylotes, *s. pl.* pellets, stones used as missiles, 3037.

Pylours, 3004, Pelours, 2831, *s. pl.* (?) archers, or men who worked the engines.

Pyment, *s.* a kind of drink, 1028.

Pyne, *s.* suffering, 3043.

Pynne, *v.* pin, 4047.

Pypez, *s. pl.* pipes, fifes, 2030.

Quarte, 552, Qwerte, 3810, *s.* health, prosperity.

Quarterde, *p.p.* quartered, 1736.

Quod, *v. pret.* quoth, said, 140, 259, 1559.

Quytte, *v.* requite, 1788.

Qwarelles, *s. pl.* bolts (for the cross-bow), 2103.

Qwarters, *s. pl.* 3389.

Qwaste, *p.p.* quashed, crushed, 3389.

Qwat, 3868, Qwate, 4008, *pron.* what.

Qwayntly, 2103, Qwayntely, 3261, *adv.* cunningly.

Qwen, 1222, Qwene, 26, 736, Qwenne, 48, Qwhene, 407, *adv.* when.

Qwene, 2189, 2871, Qwenne, 3998, *s.* queen.

Qwerte. *See* Quarte.

Qwhene. *See* Qwen.

Qwhilles, 4160, Qwhyle, 553, Qwhylles, 3480, 3651, 3810; Qwylls, 3505; *adv.* whilst, while; qwylls, 4047, qwylles, 4007, until.

Qwyke, 1736, Qwykke, 3810, *adj.* alive.

Qwylls, Qwylles. *See* Qwhilles.

Qwyne, *adv.* whence, 3503.

Qwythene, 4157, properly means *whence;* in this passage it seems to be miswritten for *Qwyne* = O that! Compare "Whyne myghte I" = "O that I might," l. 703. See the preface to Hampole's *Pricke of Conscience*, ed. Morris, pp. xxv and xxvi.

Raas, *v.* tear, pluck away, 362; *pret.* rasede, tore, 2984.

Racches, *s. pl.* hounds, 3999.

Rade, *adj.* frightened, 1995, 2881.

Rade, *s.* fear, dread, 3896.

Rade. *See* Ryde.

Radly, *adv.* quickly, 1529, 3815. A.S. *hrædlice.*

Radnesse, *s.* fear, dread, terror, 120, 310.

Raghte. *See* Reche.

Raike, 1525, Rayke, 2985, *s.* course, path.

Raissede, *p.p.* raised, 2057.

Rane. *See* Ryne.

Ranez, *s. pl.* thickets, brushwood, 923. See *Ronez* in *Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight*, ed. Morris, l. 1466.

Ranke, 2271, Rannke, 1474, 1764, 2138, *adj.* rank, strong.

Rankour, *s.* 1666.

Raply, *adv.* swiftly, 1763.

Rappyd, *v. pret.* rapped, smote, 785.

Rarede, *v. pret.* roared, 784, 1124.

Rasches, *v. pl.* dash, 2107.

Rasede. *See* Raas.

Raskaille, *s.* rabble, 2881.

Rathe, *adj.* swift, quick, 2550.

Rathe, *adv.* quickly, speedily, 1275, 1332, 1668, 2022.

Rathly, 237, Raythely, 2880, *adv.* quickly.

Raughte. *See* Reche.

Raunsake, *v.* search, 4304; 3 *s.* ransakes, 3939; *pl.* ransakes, 1884; *imp.* 2 *pl.* rawnsakes.

Raunsone, *s.* ransom, 1528.

Digitized by Google

Raunsone, 466, 1276, 1508, Rawnsone, 3275, *v.* ransom, levy ransom upon; *pret.* raunsounde, 293, 329; *p.p.* raunsound, 100, rawnsonede, 2667.

Rauyschett, *v. pret.* ravished, 294.

Rawe, *s.* row; on rawe = in a row, in order, one after the other, 238, 633, 1292.

Rawghte. *See* Reche.

Rawmpyde, *v. pret.* ramped, 794.

Rawndoune, *s.* swiftness, violence, impetuosity, 2985. See *Randon* in Roquefort.

Rawnsakes. *See* Raunsake.

Rawnsone. *See* Raunsone.

Rayke, *v.* proceed, go; 3 *s.* raykes, 1762, raykez, 889, 1057; *pret.* raykede, 237; *i. p.* raykande, 3469.

Rayke, *s.* *See* Raike.

Raylide, *p.p.* clothed, covered, 3263.

Raymede, *p.p.* (?) 100. Halliwell has, "*Rame.* To rob, or plunder."

Raythely. *See* Rathly.

Reale, 524, Realle, 179, 221, 411, Rialle, 1993, Ryalle, 53, 74, 2138, Ryealle, 17, *adj.* royal, kingly, noble; *superl.* realeste, 175, 1410.

Realtee, *s.* royalty, 155, 228, 423; *pl.* ryalltes, 3214, ryalltez 1665, royaltez, 4005.

Rebanes, *s. pl.* ribbons, 3255.

Rebawde, *s.* ribald, rascal, vagabond, 1333; *pl.* rebawdez, 1416, 1705.

Rebawdous, *adj.* ribald, 456.

Rebelle, *adj.* rebellious, 2040.

Rebuke, *v.* 1333; *p.p.* rebukkede, 4283, rebuyked, 1445, rebuykkyde, 2234, rebuykyde, 867, 1705, 2153.

Reche, *v.* reach, stretch forth the hand in giving or receiving; hence, hand over, give, take, draw, &c., 3 *s.* reches, 1111, 2252, rechez, 792; *pret.* raghte, 2766, raughte, 1527, 1884, 3352, rawghte, 3456, rechede, 1090, 3350, 4218; *p.p.* raghte, 2666, rechide, 1043.

Reched, *s.* (?) richness, 3263.

Reches, *s.* riches, wealth, 2667, 3571.

Recheste, *adj.* richest, 155.

Reconsaillez, *v.* 3 *s.* reconciles, 3130.

Recreaunt, *adj.* recreant, 2334.

Red, 2932. *See* Rede, *v.*

Reddour, *s.* fear, dread, 109, 485, 1418. Su. Goth. *rædde*, fear.

Reddour, *s.* rigour, 1456. O. Fr. *redour, reddur*, rigour, severity.

Rede, 550, 2369, Red, 2932, *v.* advise; interpret, 3228; *p.p.* rede, discerned, 2921.

Rede, 995, 2144, Reedde, 3457, Reede, 795, 1526, *adj.* red.

Redely, 1472, 2070, Redily, 363, Redyly, 1207, 1526, *adv.* readily, quickly.

Redene. *See* Ryde.

Redy, *v.* make ready, prepare, 4137; *pl.* redyes, 1427.

Redyne. *See* Ryde.

Reedde. *See* Rede.

Refe, *v.* rob, take away, deprive of; *pret.* refede, 959, refte, 295, 1475; *p.p.* refede, 1820, refte, 1206, 1733, rewede, 3315.

Regale, *s.* regalia, 4207.

Regestre, *s.* register, 113.

Reghte, *adv.* right, 1057, 1668, just, 1301.

Reghttes, *v.* 3 *s.* rights, puts to rights, 3815; *pl.* reghttez, 1454, ryghttene, 3618.

Regne, 398, Regnne, 4005, Ryngne, 3214, *v.* reign; 3 *s.* regnes, 310, regnez, 287, ryngnes, 2266; *pl.* rengnez, 865; *pret.* regnede, 293, 3273, rengnede, 3272, reynede, 175, ryngnede, 228; *i. p.* regnande, 2665.

Digitized by Google

Rehersene, *v.* relate, tell, say, 3229; 3 *s.* rehersys, 3206; *pret.* rehersede, 1666.

Rehetes, 411, Rehetez, 3198, *v.* 3 *s.* cheers; *pret.* rehetede, 221. O.Fr. *rehaiter.*

Reke, *s.* smoke, 1041.

Rekeneste, *adj.* (?) quickest, readiest, 4081. A.S. *recene,* soon, quickly.

Rekenyng, 1678, Rekkynynge, 102, *s.* reckoning, account.

Rekke, *v.* reck, care, 995, 2040; *pret.* roughte, cared for, 3275.

Rekkene, *v.* reckon, 1275, 2334.

Reklesse, *adj.* reckless, careless, 922, 1670.

Relayes, *v. pl.* relax, slacken, 1529.

Releuis, *v. pl.* rally, 2278; *pret.* releuyde, 2234; *p.p.* releuede, 1207.

Relikkes, *s. pl.* relics, 4207.

Relyes, 4291, Relyez, 1882, *v. pl.* rally; *pret.* relyede, 1391.

Relys, *v.* 3 *s.* reels, 2794.

Remenaunt, *s.* remnant, remainder, 1553.

Remmes. *See* Rewme.

Remmes, 2197, Remys, 4155, *v.* 3 *s.* shouts, cries out; *pret.* remyd, 3894.

Remowes, *v.* 3 *s.* removes, 1761.

Renayede, *adj.* renegade, having renounced their faith, 2913, 3572, 3892.

Rengnede, Rengnez. *See* Regne.

Renke, *s.* man, 1057; *pl.* renkes, 1410, renkkes, 391, 1994, renkys, 17, 147, rennkkez, 2135.

Rennene, *v. pl.* run, 200.

Rente, *s.* rent, tribute, 465; *pl.* rentez, 103, 995, renttez, 1509, 1667.

Rependez, *v. pl.* hang back, 2107.

Repent, *v. pret.* repented, 3894; repent, *impers. v.* 1392.

Requit, *p.p.* paid, 1680.

Rere, *v.* move, 2810. Cf. Dan. *röre sig,* to bestir oneself.

Rereage, *s.* arrears, 1680.

Rerebrace, *s.* 2566. "From the French arriere-bras. That part of plate armour which covered the arm from the shoulder to the elbow. In the reign of Edward II. only one plate at first protected the arm outside, being put on the sleeve of mail; but afterwards the rerebrace became a cylinder, consisting of two halves joined with hinges and clasps." Meyrick, *Glossary of Military Terms.*

Rererys, *v.* 3 *s.* rears, 4249; *p.p.* rereryde, 4280.

Rerewarde, *s.* rearguard, 1430, 1527, 1762.

Resaywe, *v.* receive, 3587.

Rescewe, 1752, Reschewe, 2243, Rescowe, 4131, *v.* rescue; *p.p.* reschowede, 363.

Reschewe, 3859, Reschewes, 433, Rescowe, 1953, Rescows, 4137, *s.* rescue, deliverance.

Resonabillye, *adv.* reasonably, 1508.

Resone, 2041, Resoune, 174, 1668, *s.* reason, account.

Restreynede, *p.p.* restrained, 2041.

Retenewys, 3572, Retenuz, 1334, 1655, 2664, *s. pl.* retainers, followers.

Retournes, *v. pl.* turn back, 1395.

Reuare, 62, 1455, Reyuere, 424, Ryuere, 1292, *s.* river.

Reuaye, 3275, Ryvaye, 3999, *v.* hunt by a river. "*Rivoier, riveier,* chasser en rivière." *Burguy* under *Rive.*

Reuelle, *s.* 1667.

Digitized by Google

Reuelle, *v.* 1969.

Reuengyde, *p.p.* avenged, 1204.

Reuerssede, *v. pret.* turned down, 2070; *p.p.* reuersside, turned up, trimmed, 3255.

Reuertede, *v. pret.* turned over, 2918.

Reueste, *p.p.* dressed, clothed, 4334.

Rewdly. *See* Ruydly.

Rewe, *v.* have pity, 866; cause regret, 1678; 3 *s.* rewes, 3272.

Rewede. *See* Refe.

Rewfulle, *adj.* rueful, pitiful, sad, 1049.

Rewfully, *adv.* ruefully, sadly, 1523.

Rewghe. *See* Rewthe.

Rewllez, 1672, Rewlys, 509, *v.* 3 *s.* rules, governs; *pl.* rewles, 1455, rewlys, 726; *p.p.* rewlyde, 52.

Rewme, *s.* realm, 1207; *pl.* rewmes, 52, 66, 425, remmes, 49.

Rewthe, 888, 1430, 2197, Rewghe, 3859, *s.* pity, compassion, sorrow; rewthe werkes, sorrowful deeds, 3453, 3894.

Reynede. *See* Regne.

Reyuere. *See* Reuare.

Rialle. *See* Reale.

Riatours, *s. pl.* ravagers, 2034.

Richely, *adv.* 173.

Richeste, *adj.* 147.

Rigge, *s.* back, 800. A.S. *hrycg.*

Rightene, *v. pl.* put right, 1525.

Rightewissly, *adv.* righteously, 1554.

Rightwis, *adj.* righteous, 3989.

Riotes. *See* Ryot.

Riotous. *See* Ryotous.

Riste, 1969, Ryste, 108, 423, *v.* rest; 3 *s.* rystez, 2170; *pret.* risted, 485, rystede, 53; *p.p.* riste, 2235, ryste, 1428.

Rittez, 2138, Rittis, 3753, *v. pl.* break, tear.

Roche, *s.* rock, 1146, 3601.

Rochelle, *s.* a kind of wine, 203.

Rode. *See* Ryde.

Rode, *s.* rood, cross, 3217, 3559. A.S. *ród.*

Rog, *s.* (?) crowd, 3272. See *roge* in Ihre.

Roggede, *v. pret.* shook, 784.

Rollede, *p.p.* enrolled, 2641.

Romawns, *s. pl.* romances, 3200.

Romede, *v. pret.* roared, 784.

Romyez, *v.* 3 *s.* roars, 888; *pret.* romyede, 1124.

Rongene. *See* Rynge.

Ronnene. *See* Ryne.

Roo, *s.* rest, peace, quiet, 1751, 3362, 4304. A.S. *row.*

Roò, *s.* wheel, 3374. Fr. *roue*, Lat. *rota.*

Roo, *s.* roe, 922, 4000. A.S. *rá.*

Roode. *See* Ryde.

Roselde, 2880, Rosselde, 2793, *adj.* (?) brandished, shaken. Cf. Sw. *ruskla*, to shake; E. *rustle.*

Rosers, *s. pl.* rosetrees, 923.

Rosse, *s.* rose, 3457.

Rosselde. *See* Roselde.

Rossete, *adj.* russet, 237.

Rostez, *s. pl.* roasts, 1049.

Roughte. *See* Rekke.

Roungene. *See* Rynge.

Rowelle, *s.* wheel, 3262. "*Roele, rouele, roelle*, roue, petite roue, rond, cercle; de *rotula.*" *Burguy.*

Rowm, 1454, Rowme, 391, 432, Rowmme, 3470, *adj.* roomy, spacious.

Rowte, *v.* sleep; lit. snore, 108.

Rowte, 719, 1763, Rowtt, 1656, Rowtte, 390, 456, *s.* company, troop.

Digitized by Google

Rowtte, *s.* road, way, 379.

Roy, 411, 1670, Roye, 3200, 3273, *s.* king. Fr. *roi*, Lat. *rex*.

Royaltez. *See* Realtee.

Rungene. *See* Rynge.

Rusche, *v.* rush, fall; cast, hurl, 1339, thrust, 2880; 3 *s.* rusches, falls, 2241, 2794, ruschez, rushes, 392, ruysches, 2983; *pl.* rusches, 2550, ruyssches, hurl, dash, 2913; *pret.* ruschede, 2792, 2879, ruschte, 120.

Rusclede, *adj.* (?) ruckled, wrinkled, 1096. Cf. *ruck* in Wedgwood.

Ruyd, 1096, Ruyde, 1049, 1057, 1332, *adj.* rude.

Ruydly, 785, 794, Ruydlyche, 1877, Rewdly, 2810, *adv.* rudely.

Ruysches, Ruyssches. *See* Rusche.

Ryalle. *See* Reale.

Ryalltez. *See* Realtee.

Ryally, *adv.* royally, 1472, 3613.

Rybbez, 1134, Rybbys, 1151, *s. pl.* ribs.

Ryche, *adj.* 108, 833.

Rydde, *adj.* fierce, 4117. See *Rid* in Jamieson.

Ryde, *v.* ride, 1876; 3 *s.* ryddis, 3540; *pl.* ryddez, 2849, rydene, 2809; *pret.* rade, 294, 853, rode, 1953, roode, 920; *pret. pl.* redene, 485; *p.p.* redene, 2598, redyne, 52, 100.

Ryealle. *See* Reale.

Ryfe, 362, Rywe, 2439, *v.* rive, rend, split, pierce; 3 *s.* ryfez, 794, 1474, ryvys, 3824; *pl.* ryffes, 2913.

Ryghte, *adv.* straight, 889.

Ryghttene. *See* Reghttes.

Ryghttez, 894, 1439, Ryghtys, 610, *s. pl.*

Ryghtwise, *adj.* righteous, 866.

Ryndes, 3363, Ryndez, 921, 1884, *s. pl.* trees.

Ryne, *v.* run, 109, 3990; 3 *s.* rynnez, 1121, rynnys, 31, 62, 540; *pret.* rane, 1526, 2881, rynnyde, 2965, rynnyd, 920; *pret. pl.* ronnene, 922; *i. p.* rynnande, 392, 795.

Rynge, *v.* ring, 4332; *p.p.* rungene, 462, roungene, 1587, rongene, 976.

Ryngne, Ryngnede, Ryngnes. *See* Regne.

Rynisch, *adj.* either Rhenish, or strange, foreign, 203. See *Runisch* in Glossary to *Alliterative Poems*.

Rynnande, Rynnez, Rynnyde, &c. *See* Ryne.

Rynsede, *p.p.* rinsed, 3375.

Ryot, 456, 785, Ryott, 341, Ryotte, 923, 1883, *v.* ravage; (with the reflexive pronoun) run riot; 3 *s.* ryottez, 619, riotes, 3172.

Ryotous, 379, 432, Riotous, 363, *adj.*

Ryotte, *s.* uncontrolled license, riot, 294, 412; *pl.* riotes, 388, ryotes, 3893.

Rype, *v.* search, 1877; 3 *s.* rypes, 3940.

Rysses, *v.* 3 *s.* rises, 3660.

Ryste, Rystede, &c. *See* Riste.

Ryues, *s. pl.* (?) 1764.

Ryvaye. *See* Reuaye.

Ryve (= aryve), *v.* land, 3896.

Ryvys, Rywe. *See* Ryfe.

Sa, *adv.* so, 3796, 3870.

Sabylle, 771, Sable, 2027, *s.* sable, black.

Sadde, *adj.* satisfied, 847. Ger. *satt*.

Sade, *adj.* sad, 3948; *comp.* saddare, 3289.

Sadilles, 1801, Sadylles, 1855, *s. pl.* saddles.

Sadly, 331, 1685, 2466, Saddly, 1458, *adv.*

Digitized by Google

Safe, *v.* save, 3051.

Sagge, *adj.* sage, wise, 814.

Saghetylle, *v.* become reconciled, 330.

Saise, *v.* 3 *s.* says, 1162; *imp.* 2 *pl.* saise, 1267.

Sakles, 3986, 3992, Sakeles, 3399, *adj.* innocent.

Sale, *s.* hall, 82, 91, 134, 409.

Salle, 1364. *Read* Sable.

Salle, *v.* shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.

Salue, *v.* salute; 3 *s.* saluz, 87; *pret.* saluȝed, 82, saluȝede, 953.

Salue, *s.* salve; *pl.* saluez, 2691.

Salue, *v.* heal, 932; *p.p.* saluede, 2907.

Sandes, 513. Perhaps a mistake for *sandesman.*

Sandes-mane, *s.* messenger, 1419; *pl.* sandismene, 266.

Sare, *adv.* sore, sorely, 134, 2248.

Satanase, *s.* Satan, 3812.

Satilles, *v. pl.* settle, descend, 2465.

Saughte, *s.* peace, reconciliation, 1007, 1548, 3052.

Saule, 666, 1062, Saulle, 2192, Sawle, 1169, *s.* soul.

Saunke, *s.* blood, 179.

Sawghte, *adj.* at peace, reconciled, peaceable, 3194, 4042.

Sawle. *See* Saule.

Sawtere, 3316, Sawtire, 3421, *s.* psalter.

Sawturoure, *s.* saltire, one of the ordinaries in heraldry, 4182.

Sayne, *v.* bless, cross (oneself), 969; *pret.* sayned, 1042, saynned, 966.

Scathylle. *See* Skathelle.

Schadande, *i. p.* shedding, flowing, 3845.

Schafte, *s.* shaft (of a spear), 2169.

Schaft-monde, *s.* 2546, 3843, 4232. "A measure, from the top of the extended thumb to the utmost part of the palm, which in a tall man is about six inches, or half a foot."—Bosworth's A.S. Dict. under *Scæft-mund.*

Schake, *v.* shake, proceed, 1213, 1992.

Schakke, *s.* sudden movement, 1759.

Schalke = chalk, 1226, 1363.

Schalke, *s.* man, 1098, 2170, *pl.* schalkes, 1857, schalkez, 2211.

Schalle, *v.* shall, 7, 148, shalt, 102.

Schalyde, *p.p.* scaled, 766.

Schamely, *adv.* shamefully, 2616.

Schamesdede, *s.* deed of shame, 3.

Schanke, *s.* shank, leg, 3845; *pl.* schankez, 1099.

Schape, *v.* shape, form, prepare, 342, 1324, 2588, 3400; *pret.* schoupe, 3599.

Schappely, *adv.* fitly, 2333.

Schappes, *v.* 3 *s.* shapes, destines, 1716.

Schare. *See* Schere.

Scharlette, *s.* scarlet, 3459.

Scharpe, *s.* 3841.

Scharpely, *adv.* sharply, smartly, 1212, 2429, 2456.

Schathe. *See* Skathe.

Schawe, 2406. *Read* Schewe.

Schawe, *s.* wood, 1765; *pl.* schawes, 1723, 1760.

Schaylande, *adj.* (?) scaly, 1098.

Schede, 2922, Schedde, 3398, *v. pret.* shed, poured.

Scheene, 1760, 2457, Schene, 2429, 3747, Schenne, 2676, *adj.* fair, beautiful.

Scheftene, Scheftys. *See* Skyfte.

Schelde, 914, 1110, Schilde, 3714, Schylde, 2984, *s.* shield; *pl.* scheldez, 595, scheldys, 2545.

Digitized by Google

Schelde, *v.* shield, 3.

Scheldyde, *adj.* having shields, 1856.

Scheltrone, 2106, 2922, Schiltrone, 1856, Sheltrone, 1992, *s.* troop, band; *pl.* schiltrounis, 1765, schiltrouns, 1813, 2210. The older form is *schiltrum*. A.S. *scyld*, shield, *truma*, troop.

Schenchipe, *s.* disgrace, 4299.

Schende, *v.* ruin, disgrace, confound, 2435.

Schene. *See* Scheene.

Schepe, *s.* sheep, 2922.

Schere, *v.* shear, cut, 2546; 3 *s.* scherys, 3600; *pret.* schare, 3843, scherde, 1856, 2545.

Scherenkene. *See* Schrenkys.

Schethede, *p.p.* sheathed, 3852.

Scheuerede, *v. pret.* shivered, split, 1813; *p.p.* scheueride, 3748.

Schewe, *v.* show, 191, 1183, appear, 1717; *inf.* schewene, 2457.

Schewynge, *s.* showing, manifestation, 3401.

Schifte, Schiftys. *See* Skyfte.

Schilde. *See* Schelde.

Schiltrone, Schiltrounis. *See* Scheltrone.

Schippemene, *s. pl.* shipmen, sailors, 1212.

Schire, 1760, 2169, Schyre, 1213, 3600, *adj.* bright.

Schirreues, *s. pl.* sheriffs, 725.

Schq, *pron.* she, 853, 860.

Schoderede, 3844, Schoderide, 2106, Schodirde, 4234, Schodyrde, 2169, *v. pret.* shuddered, shook, quivered.

Schokke, *v.* shock, jog, move or throw with violence, 4114; 3 *s.* schokkes, 3816, 3852, 4235; *pl.* schokkes, 1759.

Scholde, 1031, 1719, Schoulde, 3611, *v.* should.

Schone, *s. pl.* shoes, 3471.

Schone, 1717, 1719, Schoune, 314, *v.* shun, avoid, get or keep out of the way; 3 *s.* schownnes, 3599.

Schonte, Schontez. *See* Schountes.

Schore, *s.* score, 2344, 3577.

Schorte, at the, shortly, soon, 1325.

Schotande. *See* Schotte.

Schotene, *v. pl.* shut, 749.

Schotte, *v.* shoot, 1992; *pl.* schottes, 2426; *pret.* schotte, 1765; *i. p.* schotande, 1766.

Schotte, *s.* shot, shooting, 2105, 2428; *pl.* schotys, 3627.

Schotte-mene, *s. pl.* shooters, 2467.

Schouelle-fotede, *adj.* shovel-footed, 1098.

Schouene, 2333, Schoue, 2335, *v. pret. pl.* shaved.

Schoulders, *s. pl.* shoulders, 2546.

Schoune. *See* Schone.

Schountes, 3816, Schownttes, 3715, 3842, Schuntes, 1055, *v.* 3 *s.* turns aside, shrinks away, hesitates, delays; *pl.* schontez, 1759; *pret.* schonte, 2106, 2428, schounte, 736; *imp.* 2 *s.* schunte, 1324.

Schoupe. *See* Schape.

Schove, *v.* shove, thrust, 3847.

Schowande, *i. p.* (?) shuffling, 1099.

Schownnes. *See* Schone.

Schownttes. *See* Schountes.

Schragges, *s. pl.* jagged ends, 3473.

Schrede, *v. pret.* cut, 2211, 4167; *p.p.* schrede, 2688.

Schrede, 3991, Schreede, 767, *p.p.* clothed.

Schredez, 905, Schredys, 3473, *s. pl.* shreds.

Schrenkys, *v.* 3 *s.* shrinks, 4234; *pl.* scherenkene, 2105; *p.p.*

Digitized by Google

schrenkede, wrinkled, 2211; *i. p.* schrenkande, wrinkling, 1857.

Schrewe, *s.* wicked person, 2779.

Schrifte, *s.* shrift, confession, 2588.

Schrinkande, *i. p.* shrinking, wrinkling, 767.

Schrowde, *s.* dress, 3628. A.S. *scrúd*, garment.

Schryfe, *v.* confess, 3400.

Schrympe, *s.* deformed creature, monster (applied to a dragon), 767.

Schrynede, *p.p.* shrined, 3991.

Schulde, *v.* should, 3183, 3791.

Schuldrez, 1157, Schuldyrs, 3294, Schoulders, 2546, *s. pl.* shoulders.

Schunte, Schuntes. *See* Schountes.

Schwede = schewede, showed, 4233.

Schyfte. *See* Skyfte.

Schylde. *See* Schelde.

Schynbawde, *s.* 3846, seems to mean the *greave* or shin-plate; but the form of the word leads one to think that it originally meant *shin-belt*, probably a piece of chain-armour or other defence bound round the leg. See Glossary to *Syr Gawayne*, ed. Madden. Compare Eng. *baldrick* and Lat. *balteus*.

"He, and his gambesoūns, glomede als gledys,
With graynes of rubyes, that gray-thede were gaye
And his schene schynbawdes, scharpe for to schrede."
The Awntyrs of Arthure, ed. Madden, stanza xxxi.

Schyre. *See* Schire.

Scoulders, 766. *Read* Schoulders.

Scrippe, *s.* 3474.

Seche, Sechis. *See* Seke.

See, *s.* seat, 3291, 3350.

See, *s.* sea, 490, 1402.

Seegge, *s.* seat, proper place, 2478.

Seegge. *See* Segge.

Seese, *v. pl.* see, 1405.

Segge, 134, 1043, Seegge, 1574, *s.* man; *pl.* seggez, 1420, 1422. A.S. *secg*.

Segge, 355, *s.* siege.

Seggede, *v. pret.* besieged, 3011.

Segnourry, *s.* lordship, 528.

Sekadrisses, *s. pl.* 2283. There is surely some mistake here; perhaps we ought to read *cokadrilles* = crocodiles (compare Span. *cocodrillo*) or *cokatrisses*, which may have the same meaning, since Roquefort gives, "*Cocatrice, cocatrix*: Crocodile." Either suits the alliteration, gives some sense, and might by a slight mistake of the scribe be turned into *sekadrisses*, which gives no sense at all. Crocodiles in a Roman camp are not more out of place than camels and elephants are when crossing the Alps with coffins on their backs! See p. 69.

Seke, *adj.* sick, 1574.

Seke, 105, 937, 1296, Seche, 3233, *v.* seek, make for, go (towards); 2 *s.* sechis, 3507; *pret.* soghte, 1041, soughte, 720, 2170; *inf.* sekene, 898; *p.p.* soghte, 1171.

Sekere, 1173, 1458, Sekire, 4313, Sekyre, 478, 551, *adj.* sure, safe, trusty; *comp.* sekerare, 3289; *superl.* sekereste, 1492.

Sekerly, 441, 969, Sekirly, 3499, Sekyrly, 439, 1420, *adv.* surely, certainly, safely.

Sekire, *v.* ensure, 2585, 3804.

Sektour, *s.* executor, 665.

Selcouthe, 75, 1298, 3531, Selkouthe, 1948, *adj.* strange, rare.

Seldene, *adv.* seldom, 1163.

Sele, *s.* seal, 85.

Selfene, 331, 338, Seluene, 1, 8, Seluyne, 10, 34, self.

Selkouthe. *See* Selcouthe.

Digitized by Google

Selkouthely, *adv.* strangely, 3252.

Selkylde, 3356. Perhaps miswritten for 'Serkylde,' encircled.

Seluene, Seluyne. *See* Selfene.

Semblant, *s.* show, splendour, 75, 410.

Semble, *v.* assemble, gather, meet, 63, 967; *pl.* sembles, 3748; *pret.* semblede, 409, 1457; *p.p.* semblyde, 70.

Semes, 1672, Semez, 133, 1162, Semys, 1418, *impers. v.* seems; *pret.* semede, 123, semyde, 193. It is often used with the objective case of the personal pronouns: the semes = thou seemest, 1672; them semyde = they seemed, 193.

Semliche, 3947, Semlyche, 655, Semly, 410, 1949, *adj.* seemly, comely, goodly.

Semliche, 3316, Semlyly, 3787, *adv.* in a comely manner, well.

Sen, 127, 142, Sene, 526, 952, *adv. or conj.* since.

Sendelle, *s.* fine linen, 2299.

Sengely, 2434, Sengilly, 471, 2592, Sengly, 3729, *adv.* singly, alone.

Sent, *s.* scent, 1040.

Sent, *s.* assent, consent, 1628, 2615, 3065.

Sepulture, *s.* burial, 4340.

Sere, *adj.* various, diverse, separate, 192, 607, 1576, 3195.

Serfe, *v.* serve, 1220; *pret.* serfede, 892.

Serfede, 1068. *See* Serues.

Sergeaunt, *s.* servant, 632; *pl.* sergeantes, 1173.

Serte, *s.* desert, 2926; *pl.* sertes, 513. Compare *serve* for *deserve*.

Seruez, *v. pl.* serve, 1168.

Serues, *v. pl.* deserve, 1315; *p.p.* seruede, 2590, serfede, 1068.

Ses, *v.* 3 *s.* sees, 3941.

Sesez, *v.* 3 *s.* seizes, 1500.

Seside, *v. pret.* put in possession, 3065; *p.p.* sessede, 2608.

Sessede, *v. pret.* ceased, 2132.

Sesyne, *s.* seizin, 3588.

Sete, 3315, Sette, 1305, *s.* seat.

Seterdaye, *s.* Saturday, 1550, 3176.

Sethene. *See* Sythene.

Setille, *s.* settle, seat, 3270.

Seuende, *adj.* seventh, 488.

Seuenschore, seven score, 3788.

Seuenyghte, *s.* week, 153, 380, 3182.

Sewes, *s. pl.* stews, pottages, 192.

Sewe, *v.* follow, 2927; *pret.* sewede, 3288; *i. p.* sewande, 81.

Sex, *adj.* six, 354, 380; sex sum = six in all, 471.

Sexte, *adj.* sixth, 3316, 3416.

Sextene, *adj.* sixteen, 81, 105.

Sexti, Sexty, *adj.* sixty, 179, 210, 601.

Sexti-faulde, *adj.* sixtyfold, 2299.

Seyne, *s.* sign, 2055, 2870.

Seyne, *p.p.* seen, 3985.

Seyne, *adv.* afterwards, 188, 192, 282, 1591.

Seyngnour, 3313, Seynȝowre, 2419, *s.* lord; *pl.* seynowres, 1577.

Seynt, *s.* saint, 1169; *pl.* seyntez, 1163, 1168.

Sheltrone. *See* Scheltrone.

Sibb, 3984, Sybb, 645, 3891, Sybbe, 681, *adj.* related, akin.

Siche. *See* Swylke.

Siluere, *s.* 1165.

Silueryne, *adj.* made of silver, 185.

Singulere, *adj.* single, by himself, 172.

Sir, 3288, Syr, 3312, Syre, 3134, *s.* lord.

Digitized by Google

Sittande, *i. p.* becoming, suitable, 953, 1501.

Sittandly, *adv.* becomingly, 159.

Sittene, *p.p.* sat, 3291.

Skalopis, *s. pl.* scallop-shells, 3474.

Skape, *v.* escape, 1562.

Skathe, 1643, 1841, 3119, Schathe, 292, *s.* hurt, damage.

Skathelle, 1642, Scathylle, 32, *adj.* hurtful.

Skathlye, *adj.* hurtful, 1562.

Skayles, *v.* 3 *s.* scales, 3034.

Skayres, *v. pl.* scare, frighten, 2468.

Skewe, *v.* eschew, escape, 1562.

Skiftez. *See* Skyfte.

Skilfulle, *adj.* reasonable, right, 1561.

Skomfite, *s.* discomfit, 2335.

Skomfite, *p.p.* discomfited, 1644.

Skomfitoure, *s.* discomfiter, one who discomfits, 1644.

Skomfyture, *s.* discomfiture, 1561.

Skorne, *v.* scorn, 1642; *pret.* skornede, 1840.

Skornefulle, *adj.* 1840.

Skotiferis, 3034, Skottefers, 2468, *s. pl.* shield-bearers. Compare Lat. *scutiferi*, squires.

Skouerours, *s. pl.* explorers, scouts, 3118.

Skoulkery, *s.* lurking, ambush, 1644.

Skowtte-waches, *s. pl.* sentinels, 2468.

Skrogges, 1641, Skroggez, 1642, *s. pl.* stunted bushes, shrubs. Sc. *scrog*.

Skulker, *s.* 3119.

Skyfte, 1643, Schifte, 1213, 1325, *v.* shift, dispose, manage; 3 *s.* skiftez, 1561, skyftys, 32; *pl.* skyftes, 3117, schiftys, 725, schefftene, 3627, scheftys, 2456, schyfte, 3847; *imp.* 2 *s.* schyft, 1717.

Skylle, *s.* reason, skill, 32.

Skyrmys, *v. pl.* fight, skirmish, 2467.

Slade, *s.* green valley, 2978.

Slakes, *v.* 3 *s.* slackens, loosens, 3220.

Slakkes, *s. pl.* (?) pools of water in slack or hollow places, 3719.

Slale, *adj.* (?) 3117.

Slaughte, *s.* slaughter, 2675.

Slawe, *adj.* slow, dull, 4044.

Slawyne, *s.* slavein, pilgrim's mantle, 3474.

Slayne, *p.p.* slain, 1824, 2977.

Sleghe, *adj.* sly, cunning, clever, 2978.

Sleghte, 3220, Sleyghte, 3418, 4045, *s.* sleight, skill, craft.

Sleghte, *p.p.* slipped, 2675.

Slely, 3855, Sleyghly, 2975, Sleyghely, 4321, *adv.* slily, prudently, cleverly.

Slepe, *v.* sleep, 4044.

Sleppes, *v.* 3 *s.* slips, 2976; *pret.* sleppid, 3854.

Slewe, *v. pret.* 3418.

Slewthe, *s.* sloth, 3221.

Sleyghly, Sleyghely. *See* Slely.

Sleyghte. *See* Sleghte.

Slode, *v. pret.* slid, 3854.

Slomowre, *s.* slumber, 3221.

Slomyre, *v.* slumber, 4044.

Slongene, *p.p.* slung, 2978, 4321.

Sloppes, *s. pl.* pools, 3923.

Slote, 2254, Slotte, 2975, *s.* pit of the stomach.

Slottede, *p.p.* stabbed in the pit of the stomach, 3853.

Sloughe, 23, Slowghe, 4045, Slewe, 3418, *v. pret.* slew.

Slowde, *s.* slush, sludge, 3719.

Digitized by Google

Slowghe. *See* Sloughe.

Slydande, *i. p.* sliding, 2976.

Slyke, *adj.* such, 3719. *See* Swylke.

Slynges, *v.* 3 *s.* slings, throws, 3220, 3855.

Slytte, *s.* slit, 3853.

Slyttes, *v.* 3 *s.* slits, 2254, 2975.

Smyttes, 2564, Smyttez, 1148, *v.* 3 *s.* smites.

Snelle, *adj.* swift, 57.

Socoure, *v.* succour, 2276.

Socoure, 2317, Socure, 1438, *s.* succour.

Sodanly, 80, 599, 1422, Sodaynliche, 3270, Sodaynly, 632, 1980, *adv.* suddenly.

Softe, *adj.* softening, melting, 3983.

Softene, *v.* soften, ease, 2691.

Soghte. *See* Seke.

Soiorne, 4027, Soiourne, 4042, *v.* sojourn.

Solauce, *s.* solace, recreation, 239, 659.

Solemply, 3196, 3805, Solempnely, 1948, Solempnylye, 525, *adv.* solemnly.

Solempnitee, *s.* solemnity, 514.

Som, *adj.* some, 3683.

Somercastelle, *s.* wooden tower, 3033.

Somme, *s.* sum, 448, 2347.

Somond, 1212, Somounde, 525, *v. pret.* summoned; *p.p.* somonde, 140, sommonde, 267.

Somouns, *s.* summons, 91, 104.

Sonde, *s.* something sent, 2511.

Sonde, *s.* sand, 3728, 3745.

Sondire, 2182, Sondre, 1123, Sondyre, 1388, 1482; in s. = asunder.

Sondirwise, *adv.* separately, 3529.

Sone, *s.* son, 1945.

Sone, 170, 1022, Sonne, 2222, *adv.* soon.

Songene, *v. pret. pl.* sang, 745, 2674.

Sonne, 1978, 2511, Sone, 4035, *s.* sun.

Sonondaye, *s.* Sunday, 501, 2482.

Soo, *adv.* so, 1841.

Sope, *s.* sup, hasty meal, 1890.

Soppe, *s.* crowd, company, troop, band, 1493, 2818, 3729.

Sore, *s.* disease, 932.

Sore, *adv.* sorely, 1173; *comp.* sorere, 1163.

Sorowe, *s.* 1138, 2224.

Sorte, *s.* troop, company, band, 63, 410, 1575; *pl.* sortes, 606.

Sothe, *adj.* true, 1686; for sothe, truly, 1087.

Sothe, *s.* truth, 3229.

Sothely, *adv.* truly, 172, 239, 319.

Sott, 1044, Sotte, 847, 1060, *s.* sot.

Soueraygne, *adj.* 1167.

Soueraygne, 1298, 1330, Soueraygne, 141, *s.* sovereign; *pl.* soueraygez, 1960.

Soughte. *See* Seke.

Souppe. *See* Sowpe.

Sowdane, *s.* soldan, sultan, 590, 1295; *pl.* sowdanes, 593.

Sowdeours, *s. pl.* hired warriors, mercenaries, 551, 593, 2925, 2938.

Sowe, *s.* some warlike engine, 3033. See *Sow* in Jamieson.

Sowmes, *s. pl.* sums, 1627.

Sownde, *adj.* 1577.

Sowpe, 1298, Souppe, 3805, *v.* sup; 3 *s.* sowppes, 1025; *pret.* sowpped, 409; *i. p.* sowpande, 1044.

Sowper, *s.* supper, 1022.

Digitized by Google

Sowre, 1041. *Read* Sowrs, source.

Sowte. *See* Soyte.

Soyte, 81, 3931, Sowte, 3941, *s.* suit, company.

Spakely, *adv.* swiftly, quickly, 2063.

Spalddyd, *p.p.* split, 3699.

Spanne, *s.* span, 2060.

Spayre, *s.* the spare or thin part of the body, the waist, 2060.

Specyalle, *adj.* 999.

Spede, *v.* fare, succeed, 2414, speed, hasten, 2416; *pret.* spede, 1794; *p.p.* spede, 3016.

Speke, *v.* speak, 2415; 3 *s.* spekes, 2063.

Spekes, *s. pl.* spokes (of a wheel), 3264, 3311.

Speltis, *s. pl.* thin streaks or splinters, 3264.

Spencis, *s. pl.* expenditure, 3163.

Spendyde, *v. pret.* spent, 235.

Spere, *s.* spear, 1794; *pl.* sperys, 1898.

Spere-lenghe, *adj.* spearlength, of the length of a spear, 3311.

Speryt, *s.* spirit, 4327.

Spille, *v.* perish, 2415; *pl.* spillis, destroy, 3159.

Spleene, *s.* 2061.

Splent, *s.* splint, 2061. "Splents. In ancient armour, several little plates that run over each other, and protected the inside of the arm." *Halliwell.* They were also worn on the leg (see Jamieson under *Splentis*), and probably on other parts of the body.

Splentide, *p.p.* splinted, adorned with splinters, 3264.

Sponene, *p.p.* spun, 999.

Spoures, 483, Spurres, 2416, *s. pl.* spurs.

Spraddene. *See* Sprede.

Sprangene. *See* Sprynges.

Sprede, *v.* spread, 3158; *pret.* sprede, 2062; *pret. pl.* spraddene, 3310.

Sprente, 2062, 3310, Sprentyde, 3700, *v. pret.* sprang, leapt.

Springande, Sprongene. *See* Sprynges.

Sproulez, *v.* 3 *s.* sprawls, 2063.

Sprynges, *v.* 3 *s.* springs, 3162; *pl.* spryngene, 3158; *pret. pl.* sprangene, 483; *i. p.* springande, 3265; *p.p.* sprongene, 1943, burst, 1794, spronngene, 3699.

Spycerye, *s.* 162.

Spytte, *s.* spite, 270.

Sqwyere, *s.* squire, 1179.

Stade, *p.p.* set, placed, 1926.

Stake, *v.* put on a stake, 1178.

Stale, *s.* company, troop, 377, 1355, 1435, 1932; *pl.* stales, 1980.

Stalkis, *v.* 3 *s.* 3466.

Stam, *s.* foreship, 3664.

Stamyne, *s.* some part of a ship, 3658.

Standerde, *s.* 2080.

Statte, *s.* state, rank, 157.

Stedde, *p.p.* beset, 2824, 4133.

Stede, *s.* stead, place, 1748, 2824.

Stede, *s.* steed, horse, 1355; *pl.* stedes, 1280, stedys, 1488, 1647.

Stekes, *v. pl.* stick, stab, 3126; 3 *s.* stekys, 3822; *pret.* stekede, 1488.

Stele, *s.* steel, 1371, 1487.

Stelene, 1488, 2129, Stelyne, 1354, *adj.* steelen, made of steel.

Stepes, *v.* 3 *s.* steps, 1229.

Sterape, 2692, Sterepe, 916, *s.* stirrup; *pl.* sterapes, 3823.

Stere-bourde, 745, Stere-burde, 3665, *s.* starboard.

Sterenefulle, 3824, Sterynfulle, 2692, *adj.* stern, fierce.

Digitized by Google

Steride, Steris. *See* Stire.

Stertez, 1104, Sterttes, 1355, Stirttez, 1932, Styrtez, 1152, *v.* 3 *s.* starts; *pl.* stirttes, 2692; *pret.* sterte, 916.

Steryne, 157, 377, 735, Sterynne, 3622, *adj.* stern; *superl.* sterynneste, 3872.

Sterynly, *adv.* sternly, 745, 2130.

Sterys. *See* Stire.

Steuen, *s.* voice, 2531, 4269.

Stewede, *v. pret.* enclosed, 1489. "Estuier: Serrer, mettre dans un étui, cacher, enfermer, renfermer, envelopper, emprisonner."—*Roquefort.*

Stire, 2823, Styre, 4038, *v.* stir, move; 3 *s.* sterys, 917; *pl.* steris, 2923, 3658; *pret.* steride, 1793; *imp.* 2 *pl.* stirrez, 1748.

Stirttes, Stirttez. *See* Stertez.

Stiȝttelys, *v. pl.* arrange, 3622.

Stodde, Stode. *See* Stondez.

Stokes, *s. pl.* (?) estocs, or stabbing swords, 1436.

Stokes, *v. pl.* stab, 2554. "*Estoquer, estoquier:* Frapper, pousser, casser, rompre, briser." *Roquefort.*

Stokkes, *s. pl.* 3665.

Stonays, *v. pl.* stuns, hits stunning blows, 2118; *p.p.* stonayede, 1933, 3873.

Stondez, 2090, Stonndys, 3623, *v. pl.* stand; *pret.* stode, 1489, 2923, stodde, 4133.

Stotais, 1435, Stotays, 3467, 4271, *v.* 3 *s.* becomes foolish, mad, dizzy, or stupid. "Estoutir, estoutoyer: Être fou, imprudent, avoir de la témérité, être insensé; *stultescere.*" *Roquefort.* Burguy gives the forms "*estoteier, estouteier, estuteier, estoutoier, estotoier,*" but with the meaning "*maltraiter.*"

Stour, 377, 1747, Stoure, 1488, Stowre, 2086, *s.* battle.

Stownde, *s.* time, 3974; *pl.* stowndys, 3888.

Stownntynge, *s.* stopping, delay, 491.

Stowre. *See* Stour.

Strake. *See* Stryke.

Strandez, 598, 883, 947, 1227, 1337, Strandys, 3626, Strondes, 4067, *s. pl.* waters.

Strates, 561, Straytez, 3009, *s. pl.* straits, narrow places.

Strayte, 1933, Straytt, 1230, *adj.* strait, narrow.

Streke, *adv.* straight, 1792, 3101.

Strekes, Strekyne. *See* Stryke.

Strekez, *v.* 3 *s.* stretches, 1229, 2085.

Streme, *s.* stream, 755; *pl.* stremes, 1224.

Strenghe, 258, 376, Strenghte, 796, *s.* strength; strong place, 1230, 1435; *pl.* strenghes, forces, 1475, 2242, strenghez, 1827, strenghethis, 3322.

Strenghely, *adv.* strongly, 4096.

Strette, *s.* street, road, 3467.

Streynez, *v.* 3 *s.* exerts, 917.

Strondes. *See* Strandez.

Stroye, 1927, Struye, 561, *v.* destroy; *pl.* stroyene, 3127; *p.p.* stroyede, 1933, struyede, 1205.

Stryke, *v.* strike, smite; 3 *s.* strykez, 1124, strykkes, 1480; *pl.* strykkys, 1411, strekes, 3101; *pret.* strake, 2080, 2129; *pret. pl.* strekyne, 755, 3659.

Studyande, *i. p.* studying, 3467.

Stuffe, *v.* furnish, 1932; *pl.* stuffene, 2369; *pret.* stuffede, 3616.

Sturdely, *adv.* sturdily, 1104.

Stye, *s.* path, 3466.

Styghtylle, *v.* order, arrange, 157.

Stynte, *v.* cease, 3127.

Styre. *See* Stire.

Digitized by Google

Styrtez. *See* Stertez.

Subarbe, *s.* suburbs, 4043; *pl.* subarbis, 3122, subbarbes, 2466.

Subgettez. *See* Sugett.

Suerddes. *See* Swerde.

Sugett, 87, Sugette, 3138, *s.* subject; *pl.* subgettez, 2314.

Suggourne, *v.* sojourn, 153, 354, 1335; 3 *s.* suggeourns, 54, suggournez, 624.

Sulayne, *adj.* alone, 2592.

Sulde, *v. subj. pret.* should, 72, 213, 214.

Sundyre, *v.* part, separate, 7.

Suppowelle, *v.* support, 2818.

Supprisede, 2616, Supprissede, 1845, Supprysede, 3797, Supprysede, 1951, Supprysside, 1420, *p.p.* taken unawares, overtaken, surprised.

Surcott, 3252, Surcotte, 2434, *s.* surcoat.

Surepel, *s.* cover, 3317.

Surgyne, *s.* surgeon, 4311.

Surrawns, *s.* assurance, security, 3181.

Surs, *s.* rising, rise, 1978, 2511, 3468.

Suteleste, *adj.* subtlest, 808.

Suyche. *See* Swylke.

Suyte, 179, 210, 528, Suytte, 3139, *s.* suit.

Swafres, *v.* 3 *s.* staggers, 3970. Sc. *swaver*, to walk feebly. *Jamieson.*

Swalters, *v.* 3 *s.* (?) 3924.

Swange, *s.* loins, 1129.

Swangene, *v. pret. pl.* swung, 2146.

Swanke, *v. pret.* toiled, 2961, 3361.

Swape, *s.* blow, stroke, 314.

Swappes, 4244, Swappez, 1126, 1129, *v.* 3 *s.* smites, strikes; *pl.* swappene, 1464, swappez, 1465; *pret.* swappede, 1795.

Swarthe, *s.* sward, grassy ground, 1126, 1466, 2145, 2960.

Swathes, *s. pl.* 2508.

Swayne, *s.* 3360.

Swefene, *s.* dream, 812; *pl.* swefennys, 3228.

Swefnynge, *s.* dreaming, 759.

Swelte, *v.* die, 716, 813; 3 *s.* sweltes, 2961, faints, 3969; *pl.* swelltez, 1466; *pret.* swelte, 2982; *i. p.* sweltand, 2146, swelltande, 1465.

Sweperly, *adv.* quickly, nimbly, 1128, 1465. Sc. *swipper*, quick, swift, nimble. *Jamieson.*

Sweppene, *p.p.* swept, 2508.

Swerde, *s.* sword, 47, 715; *pl.* swerddez, 1253, suerddes, 314.

Swete, 3703, 4223, Swett, 2145, Swette, 3360, *s.* life.

Swetly, 3970, Swettly, 1297, *adv.* sweetly.

Sweyftly, *adv.* swiftly, 3703.

Sweys, *v.* 3 *s.* sways, 57; *pl.* 1467, 3676, 4273.

Swiche. *See* Swylke.

Swoghe, *s.* swaying motion, 759.

Swoghe, *s.* swoon, 1467.

Swoughe, *s.* whirr, 1127.

Swoune, *s.* swoon, 3969.

Swounes, *v.* 3 *s.* swoons, 1127; *i. p.* swounande, 1467, 2960.

Swowynge, *s.* sound, 931.

Swyer, *s.* squire, 2959, 3703.

Swykede, 1795, Swykkede, 3361, *v. pret.* deceived.

Swylke, 403, Swiche, 3000, Suyche, 529, Slyke, 3719, Siche, 967, 1031, Syche, 76, 226, *adj.* such.

Swym, *s.* swoon, 4246.

Swynge, *s.* swing, 3360, 3676, 4223.

Digitized by Google

Swyre-bane, *s.* neckbone, 2959.

Swythe, *adv.* quickly, swiftly, 185, 409, 715, very, 1949; as swythe = immediately, 813.

Sybb, Sybbe. *See* Sibb.

Sybredyne, *s.* kindred, 691, 4145.

Syche. *See* Swylke.

Sydlyngs, *adv.* sidelong, sideways, 1039, 1043.

Sydys, *s. pl.* sides, 2148.

Syene. *See* Syne.

Syghande, 3794, Sygheande, 3891, *i. p.* sighing.

Syland, 1297, Sylande, 3794, 4340, *i. p.* flowing.

Syluerene, *adj.* silvern, made of silver, 1949.

Sylure, *s.* canopy, 3194.

Symple, *adj.* mean, 684, few, 967.

Syne, *s.* sin, 3315, 3986.

Syne, 85, 1182, 3216, Syene, 4083, Synne, 3435, *adv.* afterwards.

Synechalle, 1871, Syneschalle, 1910, *s.* seneschal.

Synglere, *s.* boar, 3123.

Syngne, *s.* sign, 3075.

Syngulere, *adj.* single, 826.

Synkande, *i. p.* sinking, 3705.

Synne. *See* Syne.

Syr, Syre. *See* Sir.

Syte, 1060, Sytte, 1305, *s.* grief, sorrow.

Sythene, 184, 1336, Sythine, 159, Sythyne, 56, 169, Sethene, 1977, *adv.* afterwards.

Sythis, *s. pl.* times, 2216.

Syttyne, *p.p.* sat, 511.

Tabylle, *s.* table, 53.

Tachementez, *s. pl.* attachments, 1568.

Tachesesede (?), 821.

Tacle, 3679, Takle, 2444, Takelle, 3618, *s.* tackle.

Taghte, 178, Tawghte, 3202, *adj.* taught, trained.

Tak, *v.* take, 144; take, 307, proceed, go; 3 *s.* tase, 1890, takes; *pl.* tas, 3203; *pret.* tuke, 328, 1359, 2242; *p.p.* takyne, 73, gone.

Tale, *s.* number, 317, 335, 2933, account, 4094.

Talmes, *v.* 3 *s.* falters, 2581. Du. *Talmen*, to loiter, linger, haggle, waver, act tediously, be irresolute or in suspense. *Sewell's Dictionary.*

Talounez, *s. pl.* talons, claws, 800.

Targe, *s.* round shield; *pl.* targez, 732. The targe was often emblazoned, hence at line 89, targe = arms on a seal.

Tarsse, *s.* kind of cloth, 3189.

Tarye, *v.* tarry, 1703.

Tas, Tase. *See* Tak.

Tauernez, *s. pl.* taverns, 1568.

Taulde, *p.p.* told, 2618.

Tawghte. *See* Taghte.

Temez, *v.* 3 *s.* empties, 1801.

Temperalle, *s.* 2409.

Tempeste, *v.* 2408.

Temporaltee, *s.* 1570.

Tende, *adj.* heedful, attentive, intent, 1916. Sc. *tent.*

Tende, *adj.* tenth, 73.

Tene = ten, 1421.

Tene, *s.* injury, wrong, grief, vexation, 1396, 1956. A.S. *teona.*

Tenefulle, *adj.* harmful, grievous, 4280.

Tenefully, *adv.* grievously, 272, 2345.

Tenes, *v. pl.* harm, vex, annoy, 264. A.S. *teonan.*

Tente, *s.* heed, attention, 3586, 4094.

Digitized by Google

Tentyly, *adv.* heedfully, attentively, 3618.

Teraunt, *s.* tyrant, wicked or cruel man, 842; *pl.* terauntez, 583, tirauntez, 1801, tyrauntez, 2408.

Terez, *v.* 3 *s.* tears, 800; *pl.* terez, 1143.

Teris, 3886, Terys, 3794, *s. pl.* tears.

Tha, 77, 157, 377, Thaa, 1993, *pl. of* the.

Thai, 1141, 1144, Thay, 1160, They, 22, *pron. n. pl.; gen.* thaire, 1143, 1396, theire, 13, 20, thiere, 160, 3191, thire, 19; *obj.* thaime, 396, thame, 329, 923, thaym, 2276, 2280, theme, 169, theym, 1886, theyme, 1889.

Than, 1212, 2153, Thane, 64, 196, *adv.* then.

Thar, 881, Thare, 60, 102, *adv.* there; thare = where, 59, 1185.

Thare, *impers. v.* 403; hym thare = he needs.

Thare-aftyre, *adv.* thereafter, after that, 1495, 2028.

Thareby, 190, Thar-by, 1186, *adv.* thereby, beside.

Thare-fore, *adv.* therefore, 2042.

Thare-in, 1242, Thare-ine, 1254, *adv.* therein.

Thas, 58, 432, Thase, 236, 434, *adj.* those.

Thedyre, *adv.* thither, 2488.

Thee, *s.* thigh, 1046; *pl.* theese, 1100.

Theeffe, *s.* thief, 1150.

Thees, Theis, Theise. *See* This.

Then, 315, Thene, 1344, *conj.* than.

Ther, *adv.* there, 884; where, 1131, 1219; there = where, 476.

Ther-aftyre, *adv.* thereafter, 1115, according to it, 339.

Ther-to, *adv.* thereto, also, 181.

Ther-vndyre, *adv.* under it, 1156.

Thes. *See* This.

Thethene, *adv.* thence, 4345.

Thewes, *s. pl.* virtues, good qualities, 21.

Theyne = thine, 3403.

Theys. *See* This.

Thie = thee, 104.

Thiere, Thire. *See* Thai.

Thies, Thiese. *See* This.

Thikke, *s.* thick, dense part of a crowd, 3755; *pl.* thykkys, 2216.

Thir, Thire. *See* This.

Thirllede, Thirllez. *See* Thyrle.

This, *pron. or adj.* 410; *pl.* thees, 154, 167, theis, 1604, theise, 2044, thes, 48, 1356, theys, 2810, thies, 104, 264, thiese, 2723, thise, 152, 263, thys, 52, thir, 1161, 1164, thire, 993.

Thof. *See* Thoghe.

Thoghe, 477, 1329, Thof, 2443, Thofe, 109, 460, Thoffe, 2688, *conj.* though.

Thoghte. *See* Thynkes.

Thole, *v.* suffer, endure, permit, 676, 4022, 4150.

Thoos, 156, 158, Thos, 42, 2200, *pron.* those.

Thorowe, Thorughe. *See* Thurghe.

Thorowely, *adv.* thoroughly, 3294.

Thorowowte, *prep.* throughout, right through, 2170, 2986.

Thosande, 1400, Thosannde, 1537, Thowsande, 1421, *s.* thousand.

Thourghe. *See* Thurghe.

Thourghe-gyrde, *p.p.* smitten through, pierced, 3683.

Thra, 3295, Thraa, 249, *adj.* vehement, eager; *superl.* thraeste, 3756.

Thrange, *s* throng, 2217.

Thrawe, *s.* throe, pang, 1150.

Threpide, 930, Threppede, 2216, *v. pret.* strove.

Digitized by Google

Threttе, *v.* threaten, 3295; 3 *s.* thretys, 249.

Thretty, *adj.* thirty, 3295.

Thristis, *v. pl.* thrust, 3755.

Throly, *adv.* vehemently, 1150, 2217, 4332.

Thronge, *v.* press, 3755.

Throo, *adj.* vehement, 3294.

Throstilles, *s. pl.* throstles, 930.

Throwene, *p.p.* thrown, 3694.

Throwghe, Thrughe, Thrughte. *See* Thurghe.

Thryftye, *adj.* 317.

Thryngez, *v.* 3 *s.* presses, squeezes, 1150, 2217.

Thrystez, *v.* 3 *s.* thrusts, 1151.

Thryttene, *adj.* thirteen, 2216.

Thurghe, 1, 215, 499, Thourghe, 1792, 2253, Thorughe, 495, Thorowe, 5, 24, Throwghe, 1772, Thrughe, 1413, Thrughte, 390, *prep.* through. A.S. *þurh.*

Thurghe-girde, *p.p.* smitten through, 1461.

Thursse, *s.* giant, 1100. A.S. *þyrs.*

Thykkys. *See* Thikke.

Thynkes, 366, 1335, Thynkys, 350, Thynkkys, 2440, *impers. v.* seems; seems good, 996; *pret.* thoghte, 495, 2479, thoughte, 3230.

Thyrle, *v.* pierce, 1413; 3 *s.* thirllez, 2167; *pret.* thirllede, 1858, 3890; *p.p.* thyrllede, 2238, 2688.

Thyȝandez. *See* Tydandis.

Tide, *s.* time, 3902; *pl.* tydez, 753.

Til, 6, 36, Tille, 10, 130, Tylle, 3608, *prep.* to.

Tiltine, *v. pl.* tilt, topple, 1144.

Tite, 3886, 3887, Tyte, 737, 841, Tytt, 744, Tytte, 1891, 2583, *adv.* quickly; alls tite = as quickly, at once, immediately.

Tittez, *v.* 3 *s.* makes totter, 1801.

To, *adv.* too, 957, 1200.

To, *conj.* till, 3182.

To-briste, *v.* burst asunder, 3982.

To-geders, 1050, To-gedirs, 1000, To-gedyre, 2718, *adv.* together.

Togers, *s. pl.* clothes, 178.

Toges, *s. pl.* togas, 3189.

Toile, *s.* tussle, broil, 1802. Sc. *tuilyie.*

Tolle, *s.* customs, 1568.

Tolowris, *s. pl.* (?) tool-makers, 3618.

To-morne, *adv.* to-morrow, 1587.

Tonges, *s. pl.* tongues (of a dragon's tail), 821.

Toppe, *s.* top, 1144, head, 801.

Toppe-castelles, *s. pl.* 3616.

To-rattys, *v. pl.* rend asunder, 2235.

Torfere, 1956, 3451, 3567, Tourfere, 2582, *s.* harm, mischief.

Tornys, 3015, Tournes, 1891, *v.* 3 *s.* turns; *pret.* tornede, 3203, tournede, 1052.

To-ruscheez, *v. pl.* dash asunder, 1428.

To-stonayede, *p.p.* utterly stunned, 1436.

Tother, *adj.* other, 234, 3283. The first *t* is really part of the article, for *the tother* = that other, just as *the tone* = that one.

Toure, *s.* tower, 245, 1890; *pl.* toures, 39, towrez, 1569, towrres, 3153.

Tourfere. *See* Torfere.

Towche, *v.* touch, 2067, concern, tell; 3 *s.* towchez, 800, 1570, 1591; *pret.* towchede, 770, towchide, 841; *i. p.* towchande, 263.

Towne, *adj.* trained, 178.

To-wrythes, *v.* 3 *s.* writhes, 3920.

Towyne, *v. pl.* draw, haul, 3655.

Digitized by Google

Toylez, 732, Toyelys, 3616, *s. pl.* (?) gear, tools.

Traise, *v.* 3 *s.* draws, 1629.

Traistely, 3568, Traystely, 1976, *adv.* safely, securely.

Traistez. *See* Trayste.

Trappede, *p.p.* covered with trappings, 1757, 2150.

Trauaillede, *p.p.* who have toiled, 1947.

Trauaylande, 1684, Trauelande, 1630, *i. p.* travelling.

Trauayle, *s.* labour, 3566.

Traylede, *p.p.* 250.

Trayne, *s.* stratagem, 1630, 3901, 4192.

Trayne, *v.* entice, deceive, 1683.

Trays, *s.* trace, track, 4055.

Trayste, *v.* trust, 669; 3 *s.* traistez, 1987, 2870; *pret.* traystede, 1955, 3569.

Traystely. *See* Traistely.

Traytoure, *s.* traitor, 2173, 4055.

Trayuellede, *p.p.* toiled, laboured, 2357.

Trebute, 114, 2611, Trebutte, 2344, Tribute, 271, Tributte, 2357, *s.*

Tremlande, *i. p.* trembling, 3899.

Trenchande, *adj.* trenchant, sharp, 3856.

Tresone, *s.* treason, treachery, 1629, 2017.

Tresoure, *s.* treasure, 668, 886, 991.

Trete, *s.* (?) row, 3655.

Trett, 250, Trette, 263, 878, 2932, *v.* treat; *p.p.* tretyd, 407, tretide, 3191.

Treunt, *v.* steal a march, 1976; *pret.* treuntede, 3900; *p.p.* treunt, 2017.

Trew, 263, 992, Trewe, 879, 2932, *s.* truce.

Trewage, *s.* tribute, 2358.

Trewe, *adj.* true, 16.

Trewghe. *See* Trewthe.

Trewly, *adv.* truly, 2610.

Trewthe, 3437, Trewghe, 3929, *s.* truth.

Treyntis (?), 4056.

Trine. *See* Tryne.

Trippe, *v.* trip, move lightly, 3713.

Trisene, *v. pl.* trice (nautical term), 832.

Tristily, 407, Trystily, 2357, *adv.* trustily, faithfully.

Tristly, 731, 1262, Trystly, 832, *adv.* confidently, boldly

Trofle, 2932, Trofulle, 1702, *v.* trifle; *i. p.* trofelande, 1683.

Trome, *v.* troop, 3592. A.S. *truma*, a troop.

Trompede, *adj.* having trumpets, 3713.

Trompes, 1757, Tromppez, 1484, 1947, Troumppes, 4107, Troumppez, 1702, Trumppez, 832, *s. pl.* trumpets.

Trouflynge, *s.* trifling, 114.

Trouthe, 164, 1314, Trowthe, 1063, 1807, Trowhe, 3804, *s.* troth, fidelity; *pl.* trowhes, 2325.

Trow, 89, Trowe, 250, 887, 1693, *v.* believe.

Trowhe. *See* Trouthe.

Trowmpynge, *s.* trumpeting, 3191.

Trufles, *s. pl.* trifles, 89.

Trumppede, *v. pret.* trumpeted, 407.

Trumppez. *See* Trompes.

Trusse, *v.* truss, pack up, 3592, stow; *inf.* trussene, 1976; *pl.* trussez, 731, trvssene, 3655; *p.p.* trussede, 1702.

Trvsselle, *s.* packs, bundles, 3655.

Tryede, *v. pret.* picked out, selected, 1947. Fr. *trier*.

Digitized by Google

Trymblyde, *v. pret.* trembled, 270.
Tryne, *v.* go, proceed; trine, 1757; 3 *s.* trynes, 3592, trynys, 4055, trynnys, 3901; (?) *pret. pl.* tryne, 3192; *i. p.* trynande, 4189.
Trystily. *See* Tristily.
Trystly. *See* Tristly.
Tuke. *See* Tak.
Tumbellez, *v. pl.* tumble, 1143.
Tunge, *s.* tongue, 1250, 1891.
Turmenttez, *v.* 2 *s.* tormentest, 1954; 3 *s.* turmentez, 3153.
Tuskes, 1075, 3234, Tuskez, 791, *s. pl.* teeth.
Twa, *adj.* two, 171, 335.
Twys, *adv.* twice, 716.
Tydandis, 3450, 3899, Tythdands, 264, Thyȝandez, 1567, *s. pl.* tidings.
Tyde, *v.* betide, happen, 879; 3 *s.* tyddes, 1703; *p.p.* tydd, 3654, tydde, 3451.
Tydez. *See* Tide.
Tykes, *s. pl.* dogs, 3642, 4258.
Tylle. *See* Til.
Tymbyrde, *p.p.* built, devised, 3742.
Tymede, *v. pret.* happened, 3150.
Tyne, *v.* lose, 2933; 2 *s.* tynnez, 1954; *p.p.* tynt, 272, 770, tynte, 1917, 2345, = perished, 4281.
Tyrauntly, *adv.* like a tyrant, 271.
Tyseday, *s.* Tuesday, 3900.
Tyte, Tytt. *See* Tite.
Tythdands. *See* Tydandis.

Valyaunt, *adj.* valiant, 2093.
Vassallage, *s.* service, 2048.
Vawewarde, *s.* vanguard, 1981.
Velany, *s.* villany, 298, 326.
Vencows. *See* Venquyse.
Venemus, 299, Venymmos, 4124, *adj.* venomous.
Venge, *v.* avenge, 867; *p.p.* vengede, 298, 2264.
Venquyse, 1984, Vencows, 4297, *v.* vanquish; *pret.* venqwiste, 2093; *p.p.* venqueste, 3765, venquiste, 325, venqwyste, 2065.
Ventelde, *v. pret.* spread sail to the wind, 737.
Venymmos. *See* Venemus.
Vernacle, *s.* a handkerchief said to have the print of Christ's face upon it, 297, 307.
Vernage, *s.* a kind of drink, 204, 3166.
Verrayely, 3765, Verreilly, 308, *adv.* truly.
Verrede, *p.p.* spotted, 2573.
Vertely, *adv.* readily, 3168.
Vertous, Vertouous. *See* Vertuouse.
Vertue, *s.* virtue, 215, 4297.
Vertuouse, 204, Vertuus, 297, Vertouous, 3055, Vertous, 5, *adj.* virtuous.
Vescounte, Vescownte. *See* Vicounte.
Vesage, *s.* visage, 137, 3055.
Vesare, 910, Vesere, 3054, *s.* visor.
Vesettez, *v.* 3 *s.* visits, 1726.
Vesselle, *s.* 3071.
Vestoure, *s.* clothing, 3071.
Vetaile, *s.* victuals, 3071.
Vetaile, *v.* victual, 353; 3 *s.* vetailles, 3165.
Viage, *s.* journey, expedition, 2037, 2493.
Vice, *s.* fault, defect, 911.
Vicounte, 3167, Viscownte, 2047, Vescounte, 2024, Vescownte, 1984, Vyscownte, 2050, *s.*
Visez, *v.* 3 *s.* purposes, 3167.
Vmbeclappes, *v.* 3 *s.* embraces, 1779.

Digitized by Google

Vmbegrippys, *v.* 3 *s.* grasps, 3758; *pret.* vmbegrippede, 3944.

Vmbelappes, *v.* 3 *s.* surrounds, 1819; *pret.* vmbylappyde, 3785.

Vmbrere, *s.* part of a helmet, the movable part which shelters the face, 943, 2247, 3952.

Vn-abaiste, *adj.* unabashed, not cast down, 1378.

Vnblysside, *adj.* unblest, not marked with the sign of the cross, 962.

Vnblythely, *adv.* sadly, 1434.

Vnbrydilles, *v. pl.* unbridle, 2509.

Vnclede, *p.p.* unclothed, 4202.

Vncouere, *v.* uncover, 2710; *pret.* vncouerde, 739.

Vncouthe, 1902, 3449, Vncowthe, 3514, *adj.* unknown, strange.

Vncowpylle, *v.* uncouple, 3999.

Vndir-takande, *i. p.* enterprising, 2723.

Vndone, *p.p.* 1722, 3752, 3966.

Vndrone, 2840, 3077, Vndroune, 462, *s.*

Vndyrtakynge, *s.* 3187.

Vne-made, *adj.* unmade, 2507.

Vnfaire, 303, 779, 1045, Vnfayre, 2171, *adv.* badly, ill, unpleasantly.

Vnfaye, *adj.* unharmed, sound, 2796.

Vnfers, *adj.* unfierce, tame, 4122.

Vnfondyde, *adj.* untried, 2485.

Vnfraistede, 2861, Vnfraystede, 2736, *adj.* untried.

Vnfrely, *adv.* (?) ignobly, 780.

Vnlordly, *adj.* 1313; *adv.* 1267.

Vnmete, *adj.* unmeet, 4070.

Vnquellyde, *adj.* unkilled, 3810.

Vnrekene, *adj.* (?) unpleasant, 3754.

Vnresonable, *adj.* 3452.

Vnryghttwyslye, *adv.* unrighteously, 329.

Vnsaughte, 1910, Vnsawghte, 1306, 1457, 4140, *adj.*

Vnsaughtely, 1501, Vnsaughtyly, 1847, *adv.*

Vnsekyrly, *adv.* unsafely, 966.

Vnsemly, *adv.* unseemlily, 1044.

Vnsene, *adj.* unseen, 3114.

Vnslely, *adv.* unskilfully, clumsily, 979.

Vnsownde, *adj.* 3290, 3931, 3942.

Vnsparely, 3160, Vnsparyly, 235, *adv.* unsparingly.

Vntenderly, 1144, Vntendirly, 2575, *adv.*

Vntrewe, *adj.* untrue, faithless, 4227.

Vntrewely, *adv.* dishonestly, 886.

Vnuenquiste, *adj.* unvanquished, 2049.

Vnwemmyde, *adj.* unspotted, spotless, 3801.

Vnwittyly, *adv.* unwisely, 3802.

Vnwynly, *adv.* unjoyfully, unpleasantly, 955, 1302, 1481, 3562.

Vnwyse, *adj.* 3817.

Voide, 309, Voyde, 215, 2049, 2094, *v.* pass out, pass away; 3 *s.* voydes, retreats, 3764, voydez, withdraws, 1974; *pl.* voydez, quit, 3168.

Voute, 137, Vowt, 3054, *s.* mien. Lat. *vultus.*

Voyde, *adj.* empty, vain, 10, (?) open, 911.

Voyde, Voydes, Voydez. *See* Voide.

Vpbrayde, *v.* 1930.

Vpcynes, *s. pl.* (?) 3675.

Vpe = up, 1119, 1877.

Vrayllede, *p.p.* 2568. Perhaps for "*Vervelled*, or *Varvelled*:—having small rings attached." *Boutell's Heraldry*, p. 88.

Digitized by Google

Vse, *v.* practise, 1843.

Vtas, *s.* 625. "The eighth day, or the space of eight days, after any festival." *Halliwell.*

Vttere, *adv.* further out, 2438.

Vtters, *v.* 3 *s.* dismisses, 418.

Vttirly, *adv.* 3966.

Vys, 3617, Vyse, 2424, *s.* screw. Crossbows were drawn back by means of a screw.

Wache, *v.* watch, 547; *inf.* wachene, 613; *p.p.* wachede, 1613.

Wache, *s.* watch, 2499; *pl.* waches, 1356.

Wafulle, *adj.* woeful, sorrowful, 950, 955.

Wagande, *i. p.* wagging, waving, 3660.

Wage, *s.* pay, 302.

Wage, 547, Wagge, 333, 1615, *v.* hire, engage; wage, stake, 2967.

Wagene, *v.* wager, 2445.

Wakkens, 2370, Wakkenyse, 257, Waknez, 806, *v.* 3 *s.* awakes; wakkenysse, wakens, 3562; *pret.* wakkenyde, awoke, 3392.

Walde, *v. pret.* would, 339, 342, wouldest, 876, 1035.

Wale, *s.* gunwale, 740.

Wale, *v.* choose, 181.

Wale, *adj.* choice, 2148.

Wale, *adj.* eddying, surging, 741, 763.

Walkande, *i. p.* walking, 762, 3479.

Walkyne, *s.* welkin, sky, 787.

Walle, *s.* wave, 493. Ger. *welle.*

Walopande, *i. p.* galloping, 2147, 2827.

Walowes, *v. pl.* wallow, roll, 1142; *pret.* walewede, 3838.

Walsche, *adj.* Welsh, 320, 2044.

Wandrethe, 323, 2370, Wanedrethe, 384, *s.* woe, sorrow.

Wandsomdly, *adv.* (?) sorrowfully, 4012.

Wandyrs, *v.* 3 *s.* wanders, 798; *i. p.* wanderande, 763.

Wane, *adj.* wan, dusky, dark, 492. A.S. *wan.*

Wane. *See* Wyne.

Wapene, 1106, Wapyne, 1119, *s.* weapon; *pl.* wapynez, 2137, wapyns, 312.

War. *See* Ware.

Warantizez, *s. pl.* guarantees, 1614.

Wardane, 3523, Wardayne, 650, 2494, *s.* warden.

Warde, *s.* ward, 2480, custody, 1613.

Wardede, *p.p.* guarded, 1614.

Wardrop, 4203, Wardrope, 901, 2622, *s.* wardrobe.

Ware = where, 1054.

Ware, *v. pret. pl.* were, 18, 177; *subj. pret.* 1 *s.* warre, 2647; 2 *s.* ware, 964; 3 *s.* ware, 73, war, 976; *pl.* ware.

Ware, 19, Warre, 1973, 2045, *adj.* wary, cautious, aware. A.S. *wǽr.*

Warely, *adv.* cautiously, 4026.

Waresche, *v.* be healed, recover, 2186.

Warlawe, 948, 958, Warlow, 1140, Werlaughe, 3771, *s.* warlock, wizard; also, a wicked man; *pl.* warlaws, 613.

Warnes, *v.* 3 *s.* refuses, denies, 700.

Warpe, 150, Werpe, 9, *v.* throw, cast; *pl.* warpes, 2746; warpes awaye = make off; *pret.* warpe, 901.

Was, *v. pret. pl.* were, 1415.

Wasternne, *s.* desert place, wilderness, 3233. See *Wasturne* in *Alliterative Poems*, B. 1674. A.S. *wéstern.*

Wate. *See* Wiet.

Digitized by Google

Wathe, *s.* way, path, 3233. See *Wo*þ*e*ȝ in *Alliterative Poems*, A. 151. A.S. *wáðu*.

Wathe, *s.* harm, hurt, 2668. See *Wo*þ*e* in *Alliterative Poems*, B. 855.

Wathely, *adv.* badly, 2090, 2186.

Watte. *See* Wiet.

Watyre, *s.* water, 1299, 1358.

Watyre-mene, *s. pl.* mariners, 741.

Wauerynge, *s.* 2224.

Wawarde, *s.* vanguard, 1767. *See* Avanttwarde.

Wawhte, (?) 3480.

Waxe, *v.* grow, 4322.

Wayfare, *s.* course, 1797.

Wayfe, *v.* wander, stray, 960.

Waykly, *adv.* weakly, 697.

Wayte, *v.* watch, look out for, 164, 1807; 3 *s.* wayttes, 2979; *inf.* wayttene, 1973.

Weches, *s. pl.* witches, 613.

Wedde, *p.p.* wedded, 700.

Wedes, 1365, Wedez, 168, 500, Wedys, 2429, *s. pl.* weeds, garments.

Wedirwyns. *See* Wyderwyne.

Wedowe, *s.* widow, 950, 4285; *pl.* wedewes, 3154.

Weende. *See* Wende.

Weife. *See* Wif.

Weilde. *See* Welde.

Weile. *See* Wele.

Weisely. *See* Wyesly.

Wekyrly, *adv.* watchfully; hence, in a lively manner, briskly, 2104. A.S. *wacorlice*, watchfully.

Welde, 3090, Weilde, 650, *v.* rule; possess, 2967.

Wele, *s.* riches, wealth, 401, 653, weal, 4100.

Wele, 170, 230, 321, Weile, 1788, *adv.* well.

Welle, *s.* spring, well, 540, 882.

Welle, *v.* spring up, bubble up, boil; 3 *s.* wellys, flows, 3819; *pret.* wellyde, 3377; *p.p.* wellyde, boiled, 1736.

Welte, *v. pret.* overturned, 3152.

Welters, 1140, Welterys, 890, *v.* 3 *s.* rolls; *pl.* welters, 1142; *i. p.* welterande, 2147.

Welthes, *s. pl.* 3157.

Wende. *See* Wene.

Wende, 302, 1299, Weende, 2445, 2493, *v.* go; 2 *s.* weyndez, 450; 3 *s.* wendes, 614, wendez, 701, weyndes, 2185; *pret.* went, 1301.

Wene, *v.* think, suppose; 2 *s.* wenes, 1806, wenez, 963; *pret.* wende, 2121.

Wenges, 768, Wengez, 819, 926, *s. pl.* wings.

Wepede, *v. pret.* wept, 1920; *i. p.* wepand, 2679, 3561.

Werdes, 3889, Weredes, 385, *s. pl.* fates, destinies

Werdez. *See* Werlde.

Were, *adv.* where, 3692.

Were, 22, 33, 257, Werre, 516, 621, *s.* war.

Weredes. *See* Werdes.

Weres = veers (?), 3054.

Weries. *See* Wery, *v.*

Werke, *s.* work; *pl.* werkes, 3, 19.

Werkkes, *v.* 3 *s.* aches, 2689; *i. p.* werkand, 1797, 2148.

Werlaughe. *See* Warlawe.

Werlde, *s.* world, 5, 708; *gen. sg.* werdez, 674.

Werpe. *See* Warpe.

Werraye, 546, Werreye, 657, *v.* make war, war upon; *pl.* werraves, 3447; *pret.* werrayede, 2045, 2215; *i. p.* werrayande, 2089, werreyand, 2599.

Werre. *See* Were.

Digitized by Google

Werryde, *v. pret.* wore, 3872; *p.p.* werede, worn, 2930.

Wery, 699, 3155, Werye, 4286, *v.* curse; 3 *s.* weries, 3888; *p.p.* weryd, 959.

Wery, *adj.* weary, 492, 3392.

Weryede, *p.p.* wearied, 796.

Wesche, *v. pret.* washed, 231; *p.p.* weschene, 1301.

Wetene, Wette. *See* Wiet.

Wette, *v. pret.* wetted, 2332.

Weyffe. *See* Wif.

Weyndes, Weyndez. *See* Wende.

Weyne = wine, *s.* 161.

Weysse. *See* Wiese.

Whame, 1202, Whayme, 770, *pron.* whom.

Whanne. *See* Wyne.

Whare, *adv.* where, 107, 302.

Whare = were, 174, 529.

Whas = was, 76, 634.

Whayme. *See* Whame.

Whedire, 3231, Whedyr, 2533, Whedyre, 962, *adv.* whither.

Whedyre, *conj.* whether, 1717.

Whene, 2044, Whenne, 63, *adv.* when.

Whethire, *pron.* which (of two), 350.

Whilde = wild, *adj.* 3232, 3446.

Whilke, *pron.* which, 4194.

Whilles, 1335, 1570, Whills, 1705, Whils, 1737, Whylez, 1597, *conj.* whilst; whilles, 1197, whills, 3908, whylles, 2132, 2511, until.

Whilome, *adv.* sometimes, 1145.

Whitte = white, *adj.* 3260.

Whoo = who, 1322.

Whydyrewyns. *See* Wyderwyne.

Whyeseste. *See* Wiese.

Whyne, why—not, 703. Whyne myghte I dye = O that I might die!

Wieffe. *See* Wif.

Wielde, *s.* (?) 2689.

Wiese, 3035, Weysse, 2514, Wyes, 149, Wyese, 1972, Wyesse, 2745, *adj.* wise; *superl.* wyseste, 290, whyeseste, 532.

Wiet, 420, Wette, 948, Wyt, 958, *v.* know, know of; 1 *s.* wate, 4203, watte, 533, 2224; 2 *s.* wate, 3393, watte, 692, 3549; *pl.* wotte (*properly a sg. form*), 4100; *pret.* wiste, 3231, wist, 4204, wyste, 339, 891; *p.p.* wetene, 2966, wytene, 869.

Wif, 993, Weife, 652, Weyffe, 674, Wieffe, 3550, Wyefe, 3575, Wyf, 986, Wyfe, 955, Wyffe, 3082, *s.* woman, wife; *pl.* wyfes, 294.

Wightenez. *See* Wyghtnesse.

Wile, *v.* get away by stealth, 3908.

Wilfully, *adv.* 151, 3835.

Wille, *s.* wildness, madness, 3836.

Willed, *p.p.* strayed, astray, 3230.

Wilne, *v.* desire; 2 *s.* willnez, 2224, wilnez, 3479, wylnez, 961; 3 *s.* wylnez, 384. A.S. *wilnian.*

Wirche. *See* Wirke.

Wirchipe, 2187, Wyrchip, 10, Wyrchipe, 150, *s.* honour; *pl.* wyrchippis, 22.

Wirchipe, Wyrchipe, 397, *v.* honour; 3 *s.* wyrscheppez, 1059; *p.p.* wirchipid, 320, wyrchipide, 257, 685.

Wirchipfulle, 1356, 2231, Wyrchipfulle, 333, 650, *adj.* worshipful, honourable.

Wirke, 339, 2187, Wyrke, 149, Wirche, 3008, Wyrche, 130, 1030, 1384, *v.* work, perform, do; 2 *s.* wirkkes, 2432; 3 *s.* wyrkez, 1267, wyrkkes, 1468; *pl.* wyrkes, 663; *pret.* wroghte, 1796; *pret. pl.* wroghtene, 2137; *p.p.* wroghte, 2622, 3495.

Wist, Wiste. *See* Wiet.

Wit, *v.* depart, 708. A.S. *witan.*

Digitized by Google

With-owtene, 997, With-owttyne, 114, 139, Wythowttyne, 225, 491, *prep.* without; except, 849.

Withstondene, *v. pl.* withstand, 1747; *p.p.* 1926.

With-thy, *conj.* provided, on condition, 2587, 2591.

Witter, *v.* certify, assure, 1239.

Witterly, 3549, Wytterly, 324, *adv.* plainly, clearly, certainly.

Wlonke, *adj.* proud, splendid, gay, 3154, 3338. A.S. *wlanc, wlonc.*

Wode, 1266, 1281, Wodde, 1359, 2219, *s.* wood; *pl.* woddez, 1974. A.S. *wudu.*

Wode, *adj.* mad, raging, 3837. A.S. *wód.*

Wodely, *adv.* madly, 2827.

Wodewyse, *adv.* madly, 3817.

Wokes, *s. pl.* weeks, 354. A.S. *wuce.*

Wold, 3835, Wolde, 1282, *v. pret.* would. *See* Walde.

Wolfes, 3446, Woluez, 3232, *s. pl.* wolves.

Wolf-heuede, *s.* wolf's head, 1093.

Wombe, *s.* belly, 768. A.S. *wamb.*

Wonde, 3494, Woonde, 1615, *v.* hesitate; 3 *s.* wondis, 3833. A.S. *wandian*, to fear, be awe-struck.

Wonde, *s.* wound; *pl.* wondes, 1469, 2148.

Wonde, *v.* wound; 3 *s.* wondes, 2090; *pret.* wondide, 2231; *p.p.* wondede, 1853, wonddede, 1558, wondyde, 1415, 1434.

Wondirliche, 3377, Wondyrlyche, 1357, *adv.* wonderfully.

Wondsome, *s.* misery, 3836.

Wondyre, *s.* 1166, 1342; *adv.* 2515.

Wone, *s.* dwelling, abode, 1300, 2472, 4204.

Wonene. *See* Wyne.

Wonne, *v.* dwell, 3910; 3 *s.* wonnys, 3551.

Wonne, Wonnene, Wonnyne. *See* Wyne.

Wonnynges, *s. pl.* dwellings, habitations, 3157.

Wonrydez, *s. pl.* sorrow, grief, 707. *See* Wandrethe.

Woo, *s.* woe, 2684, 3393.

Woonde. *See* Wonde.

Worde, *v.* 3393.

Worme, *s.* reptile, 796, 798.

Worows, *v.* 3 *s.* worries, kills, 958.

Worthe, *v.* become, be, 959 992, 1306.

Wortheliche, 2669, Worthilyche, 695, Worthily, 2191, *adj.* worthy.

Worthethy = worthy, 1302.

Worthily, 2231, Worthylye, 2547, *adv.*

Wotte. *See* Wiet.

Wraite, *v. pret.* wrote, 3904.

Wrakfulle, *adj.* vengeful, 3818.

Wrange, *adj.* wrong, left, 1480.

Wraythe. *See* Wrythe.

Wreche, 1273, Wriche, 1064, Wryche, 2778, *s.* wretch; *pl.* wreches, 1446.

Wrechyde, *adj.* wretched, 5.

Wreke, *s.* vengeance, 3839.

Wreke, *v.* avenge, 321, 385; 3 *s.* wrekes, 2213; *inf.* wrekene, 151; *p.p.* wrokene, 2968, wrokyne, 2225.

Wrethe, *s.* wrath, 151, 321, 385.

Wrethe, *s.* fold, wreath, 1093.

Wrethide, *v. pret.* angered, 2191.

Wriche. *See* Wreche.

Wristeles. *See* Wrystille.

Wroghte, Wroghtene. *See* Wirke.

Wrokene, Wrokyne. *See* Wreke.

Wrothely, *adv.* fiercely, 1141, 1480, 2214.

Digitized by Google

Wrotherayle, *s.* misery, wretchedness, ruin, 3154.

Wryche. *See* Wreche.

Wryngene, *v. pl.* wring, 3155; *p.p.* wryngande, 950, 2679.

Wrystille, *v.* wrestle, 1141; 3 *s.* wristeles, 890.

Wrythe, *v.* twist, writhe, turn about, 4322; wrythes, 1920, wrythis, 2214; *pl.* wrythyne, 1141; *pret.* wraythe, 1093.

Wy, 164, 695, Wye, 2669, *s.* man, person; *pl.* wyes, 56, 336, wyese, 1300, 2656, wysse, 685. A.S. *wiga*, warrior; *wig*, war.

Wyderwyne, *s.* adversary, 2045; *pl.* wedirwyns, 3818, wedirwynes, 3834, whydyrewyns, 2215. A.S. *wiðerwinna*.

Wye, *v.* weigh (anchor), 740.

Wyefe, Wyf, Wyfe, Wyffe. *See* Wif.

Wyes, Wyese. *See* Wy.

Wyes, Wyese, Wyesse. *See* Wiese.

Wyesly, 1974, Weisely, 1613, 2599, *adv.* wisely.

Wyghte, *s.* wight, man, person, 959.

Wyghte, *adj.* vigorous, strong, 1140; *comp.* wyghttere, 964; *superl.* wyghteste, 290, 336, 532.

Wyghtly, *adv.* vigorously, 553, 740.

Wyghtnesse, 258, 516, 796, Wightenez, 1806, *s.* vigour, strength.

Wykkyde, *adj.* evil, 3232.

Wylde, *s.* wild animals, 181, 657.

Wylde fyre, *s.* 797.

Wylez, *s. pl.* wiles, 1504.

Wylily, *adv.* in a wily manner, craftily, cunningly, 2746.

Wylnez. *See* Wilne.

Wynche, *v.* wink, wince, 2104.

Wyndowes, *s. pl.* some part of a helmet, probably the *windhole* or aventail, 911.

Wyne, *v.* win, gain, conquer; wynne, 516; wyne to hir speche, get to speak to her, 3908; wyne awaye, get away, 468; *pret.* wane, 33, 115, whanne, 22; *p.p.* wonnene, 1214, wonnyne, 26, 618, wonene, 3001, wonne, 887, 1805.

Wynly, *adv.* pleasantly, 671, 2185, 3338.

Wynlyche, *adj.* pleasant, 181.

Wyrche. *See* Wirke.

Wyrchip, Wyrchipfulle, &c. *See* Wirchipe, &c.

Wyrke, Wyrkkes. *See* Wirke.

Wysse, *v.* direct, guide, teach, 9, 813; 3 *s.* wysse, governs, 671.

Wysse. *See* Wy.

Wyste, Wyt, Wytene. *See* Wiet.

Wythowttyne. *See* With-owtene.

Wythsytte, *v.* resist, 104.

Wytt, 741, Wytte, 149, *s.* wit.

Wytterly. *See* Witterly.

Yare, 1901. *Read Th*are.

Yche, Ylke. *See* Ilke.

Ynewe, Ynowe. *See* Inowe.

Yryne. *See* Irene.

Yschewes, *v.* 3 *s.* issues, 610.

Ythez, *s. pl.* waves, 741, 747, 763.

ȝa, *adv.* yea, 993, 1033.

ȝaldsones, *s. pl.* (?) 3809.

ȝalowere, *adj. comp.* yellower, 3283.

ȝapely, *adv.* quickly, 1502.

ȝates, 2471, ȝatez, 2039, *s. pl.* gates.

ȝe, *pron.* ye, 12, 226.

ȝee, 3911. Perhaps a mistake for *ȝexes*, sobs. A.S. *giscian*, to sob.

Digitized by Google

ȝeffe, *conj.* if, 2859.

ȝelde, *v.* to yield, 1502; 3 *s.* ȝeldes, 3809; *p.p.* ȝoldene, 2334, 2482.

ȝeldene, *p.p.* 1870. Probably a mistake for 'ȝoldene.'

ȝeme, *v.* keep, guard; 3 *s.* ȝemes, 430, ȝemez, 938; *pl.* ȝemes, 647.

ȝerde, *s.* yard, 3254, 3280.

ȝere, *s.* year, 522, 552.

ȝermys, (?) laments, 3911. A.S. *gyrmian*, to roar.

ȝerne, *v.* yearn, desire, lust after; 2 *s.* ȝernez, 1502; 3 *s.* ȝernes, 1032; *p.p.* ȝernede, 2343.

ȝerne, *adv.* earnestly, eagerly, 1794, 3325, 4189.

ȝif, 340, ȝife, 1502, ȝiff, 104, ȝiffe, 4153, *conj.* if.

ȝif, 1567, ȝife, 1668, ȝiffe, 2323, *v.* give.

ȝis, 2324, ȝise, 2585, *adv.* yes.

ȝit, 1128, ȝitt, 1140, ȝitte, 2109, yet.

ȝofe, 1938, 2854. *Read* 'thofe,' though.

ȝoldene. *See* ȝelde.

ȝole, *s.* Yule, 2628.

ȝolke, *s.* yolk, 3283.

ȝomane, *s.* yeoman, 2628.

ȝon, 2935, ȝone, 299, 336, 341, *adj.* yon.

ȝondire, 3809, ȝondyr, 2720, *adv.* yonder.

ȝour, 95, 153, 222, ȝowre, 630, 683, *pron.* your.

ȝow, 15, 16, ȝowe, 1266, *pron.* you.

JOHN CHILDS AND SON, PRINTERS.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

RR1119
.A2
no. 8

A000004725213

JUN 16 1975
-CL-ILL

4-wk JUN 4 1976

SUBJECT
AUG 18 1976
TO RECALL

SUBJECT
NOV 15 1976
TO RECALL

APR 23 1977

Digitized by Google